

SUPPORTIVE WORK SUBMITTED

FOR

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

APRIL 1959

THE CLINICAL APPLICATION OF HORMONE ASSAY

Endocrine Research
Department of Medicine
St. Vincent's Hospital

This book is protected under the Berne Convention. It may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without permission. Application with regard to reproduction should be addressed to the Publishers.



E. & S. LIVINGSTONE LTD., January 1958.

THE CLINICAL APPLICATION OF HORMONE ASSAY

BY

JOHN A. LORAINÉ

M.B., Ph.D.(Ed.), M.R.C.P.(Ed.)

Member of Scientific Staff, Clinical Endocrinology Research
Unit (Medical Research Council), University of Edinburgh;
Associate in Endocrinology, Western General Hospital,
Edinburgh

WITH A FOREWORD BY

J. H. GADDUM

Sc.D., F.R.S.

Professor of Pharmacology and Materia Medica,
University of Edinburgh



E. & S. LIVINGSTONE LTD.
EDINBURGH AND LONDON

1958



THE CLINICAL APPLICATION OF HORMONE ASSAY

JOHN A. LORAIN

THIS BOOK

IS DEDICATED TO

PROFESSOR

GUY FREDERIC MARRIAN

TO WHOM THE SCIENCE

OF ENDOCRINOLOGY

OWES SO MUCH

J. H. CADDUM

2nd, Ed.

Professor of Pharmacology and Clinical Medicine,
University of Edinburgh

E. & S. LIVINGSTONE LTD.
EDINBURGH AND LONDON



FOREWORD

by J. H. GADDUM, Sc.D., F.R.S.

"When you can measure what you are speaking about and express it in numbers, you know something about it, but when you cannot measure it, when you cannot express it in numbers, your knowledge is of a meagre and unsatisfactory kind."—LORD KELVIN.

MANY of the most active physicians are rather specially interested in the glands of internal secretion. It is fascinating to think that these small specialised organs should produce such widespread effects and that some of their secretions should be associated with the strongest human emotions. Various dramatic diseases are directly due to derangements of these glands, and most diseases affect them to some extent. Methods of assessing their activities have therefore attracted widespread interest. Direct observations of their effects on the patients themselves can sometimes provide all the information that is needed, but such observations are often not enough, and an army of enthusiastic research workers has therefore sought to devise methods of estimating hormones and their metabolites in the blood and urine.

Various methods of diagnosing pregnancy by biological tests for gonadotrophins in urine were shown to give reliable results without elaborate precautions. It was natural to suppose that similar simple tests for other hormones would also give information of clinical importance but the results have, on the whole, been confusing. Some of the reasons for this have now become apparent. The pregnancy tests are successful because pregnancy causes enormous changes in the hormones in the urine, and quantitative estimates of the amounts present are unnecessary for the diagnosis. For other purposes quantitative results are needed and it is only lately that adequate quantitative methods have been devised.

It was thought at one time that it would be possible to estimate the total activity of various kinds in blood or urine. For example, urine was known to contain several substances which produced oestrogenic effects in small animals. Extracts of urine were therefore injected into mice and the smallest quantity to produce oestrus was called a mouse unit, so that the oestrogenic activity of urine could be estimated in mouse units per litre. There are several reasons why this convenient device gave results which were not reproducible. Since mice were found to vary, the dose for the average mouse was measured. Since one colony of mice gave different results from another and the same colony gave different results on different occasions, standard preparations of oestrogens were used in each

experiment, but even this precaution was not enough. Human urine contains a number of different substances with oestrogenic effects and the ratios of their activities vary enormously according to the exact design of the experiment. By one technique, for example, oestrone is one hundred times as active as oestriol and by another technique the activities of these two substances are about equal. If one of these substances were used as a standard to test urines whose activity was mostly due to the other substance the results in one laboratory might be one hundred times as large as the results in another. Such findings convinced those concerned that the measurement of the total activity of an extract had no real meaning, and that progress could only come from the estimation of the concentration of each of the substances contributing to the effect. This can be achieved by first separating the extract into fractions, each containing one active substance, and then estimating the concentration in each fraction by bio-assay, using a standard preparation of the appropriate substance, but in the case of the oestrogens in urine quicker and more precise results can be obtained by applying colorimetric methods to the fractions. The important point is that it is necessary to estimate the concentration of single substances and not the total activity ; this is true not only of the oestrogens but of all assays.

Chemical methods of assay are replacing biological methods. They are generally quicker and more precise and, if they can be shown to give an estimate of the concentration of a single substance, this estimate is just as valuable as a biological estimate. Some biological methods are still more sensitive than the best chemical methods, but the latter have improved much recently. Some of the simpler hormones can now be estimated in any department of clinical chemistry which has enough trained staff, but each assay involves much work. There is no immediate likelihood that it will be possible to estimate all the polypeptide hormones by simple chemical procedures, but some of them can be estimated by their effects on isolated tissues or tissue slices, and it is probable that the use of whole animals for hormone assays will eventually be abandoned.

Some hormone assays are an aid to diagnosis and a guide to treatment and can be regarded as routine procedures which should be generally available. For example, estimates of human chorionic gonadotrophin may assist in the diagnosis of pregnancy, chorion-epithelioma or hydatidiform mole ; and estimates of sympathomimetic amines may assist in the diagnosis of adrenal medullary tumours. The meaning of estimates of other hormones however is often not immediately obvious, and the purpose of most assays is to advance knowledge rather than to guide the doctor in the treatment of individual cases.

It is still important that researches in this field should be carefully planned with full knowledge of the limitations of the methods used, most of which are laborious and costly, and that the programme

should not be seriously interrupted by demands for isolated observations on interesting cases not connected with the main investigation. It has sometimes happened in the past that clinicians have employed biochemists to estimate hormones by some published method, and that the biochemists have been persuaded to earn their living by using methods in which they have no faith, in researches which seem to them to be badly planned. Such arrangements have been unfruitful.

Attempts have been made to establish central laboratories to carry out hormone assays for the doctors in a district. Such laboratories have at present only a limited use in connection with such things as pregnancy diagnosis. Their scope may widen with the advance of knowledge, but there is a danger that much of the money and effort spent on such laboratories may be wasted on unnecessary assays.

It is probable that all necessary hormone assays will eventually become part of the routine work of departments of clinical chemistry, but in the immediate future real progress is most likely to come from physicians working in the laboratories on problems arising in the wards. Time has justified what Sir Thomas Lewis said about the importance for medicine of the work of such people, to whom he gave the name of clinical scientists. This book provides many examples of the kind of work they can do.

A few years ago most of the best work in clinical endocrinology was being done in the U.S.A. More recently, however, important work on quantitative methods has been done in Great Britain. Dr Loraine is a member of the staff of the Clinical Endocrinology Research Unit (C.E.R.U.) which the Medical Research Council established in Edinburgh in 1946, and it is natural that his book should lay special emphasis on the work of this unit. Most such units have a single full-time director, but C.E.R.U. is directed by a committee consisting of the professors of biochemistry, gynaecology, pharmacology, surgery and therapeutics. This has meant that several departments have collaborated in support of a unit which belongs to them all. The Medical Research Council has allowed the unit to work for long periods on the development of reliable methods, without demanding quick publication. This policy has produced several new methods which are likely to add much to our knowledge of disease in the years to come. This book gives a clear and authoritative account of this work and of the great mass of other work in this field in all parts of the world. No clinical endocrinologist can afford to be without it: all who are interested in the clinical application of hormone assays will find it valuable. It gives a general account of the methods available, without wearisome details, and a full discussion of the ways in which these assays may be of value to those responsible for the care of patients.

PREFACE

THIS book has been written with a threefold purpose: firstly, to review the advantages and limitations of existing hormone assay methods and, where possible, to indicate the most suitable method or group of methods for use in clinical studies; secondly, to discuss the application of hormone assay procedures to clinical problems and to examine the value of these estimations in the diagnosis, prognosis and treatment of disease in man; and, finally, to suggest the fields of investigation to which assay methods might in the future be profitably applied.

The subject matter deals mainly with pituitary, placental, adrenal and gonadal hormones; a short chapter on insulin is also included. Consideration has not been given to the parathyroid hormone or to the gastro-intestinal hormones because the methods for the quantitative determination of these substances in body fluids are not yet in a sufficiently advanced state to merit their use in clinical investigations. A section on the thyroid has not been included because it was felt that, although the estimation of the concentration of protein-bound iodine in blood gives a reasonably reliable indication of the activity of this gland in health and disease, assay methods for the thyroid hormones themselves are not at present suitable for clinical application.

The field of hormone assay has been expanding so rapidly in recent years that it is clearly impossible to quote all the relevant literature. An attempt has therefore been made to present an outline only of the work done prior to 1947 and to concentrate more particularly on the literature published between 1947 and 1957.

In writing this book it has been a great privilege for me to express the views which the Edinburgh group as a whole share with regard to the clinical application of hormone assays. One of these views which deserves special mention concerns the question of methodology. We have always believed that, in clinical studies, only the best of the available techniques should be used and that, if unreliable assay methods are employed, the results obtained are liable to be misleading. Fortunately, within recent years, assay methods for many of the hormones have been greatly improved and it is now possible in many cases to employ techniques which satisfy the 'reliability criteria' discussed in Chapter I.

The Clinical Endocrinology Research Unit has been very fortunate throughout the years in being able to collaborate closely with investigators in various hormone laboratories in Europe, especially with those in Stockholm and Geneva. It is certain that, with the passage of time, this type of international collaboration will increase and should contribute greatly to further progress in clinical and experimental endocrinology. Two examples may serve to illustrate the value of the international approach to the subject. The first of these is the series of 'Colloquia on Endocrinology' held in London under the auspices of the Ciba Foundation. At these Colloquia it has been possible for research workers from many nations to meet and to discuss common problems in a pleasant and informal atmosphere. The second example is provided by the 'Gonadotrophin Club' which was formed in 1953, held its first meeting in Geneva in that year and has subsequently met in Birmingham in 1955 and in London in 1957. These meetings have been attended by colleagues from various laboratories in different parts of the world and have enabled those particularly interested in the assay of gonadotrophins to exchange ideas and to plan collaborative research.

I should like to take this opportunity of expressing my thanks to the many people who have helped me in the preparation of this book. I am especially grateful to Professors J. H. Gaddum, John Bruce, D. M. Dunlop, R. J. Kellar and G. F. Marrian—Directors of the Clinical Endocrinology Research Unit, Edinburgh—for their interest, encouragement and co-operation; the book was written at the suggestion of Professor R. J. Kellar, who felt that such a work might be of value to both clinicians and laboratory workers.

I am much indebted to Dr Rudi Borth (Geneva), Dr Egon Diczfalusy (Stockholm), Dr G. D. Matthew (Edinburgh), Dr J. A. Strong (Edinburgh), and the Directors of the Clinical Endocrinology Research Unit (Edinburgh), who have read large portions of the text and have made many useful suggestions and criticisms. Thanks are also due to various colleagues who have given me helpful advice on specific chapters, namely Dr W. S. Bauld, Montreal (oestrogens), Dr J. B. Brown, Edinburgh (oestrogens), Dr K. Fotherby, Edinburgh (corticosteroids and 17-ketosteroids), Dr K. C. Hooper, Edinburgh (protein hormones), Dr A. Klopfer, Edinburgh (progesterone and its metabolites), Dr J. K. Norymberski, Sheffield (corticosteroids), Dr M. Pickford, Edinburgh (antidiuretic hormone and antidiuretic substances) and Dr G. Sayers, Cleveland, U.S.A. (adrenocorticotrophic hormone).

My grateful thanks are due to Miss C. M. O'Connor (London) for her help in reading the proofs of the manuscript. The results

reported in Chapters II and III could not have been obtained without expert technical assistance in the laboratory, and it gives me great pleasure to acknowledge the help of my technicians, particularly of Miss M. A. Mackay.

Finally, I should like to express my gratitude to my publishers Messrs E. & S. Livingstone, for their very helpful collaboration and advice throughout the preparation of this book.

JOHN A. LORAINÉ

EDINBURGH

October 1957

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS OF ILLUSTRATIONS

THE author wishes to express his thanks to editors of journals and authors of books as listed below for permission to reproduce illustrations.

JOURNALS

- Acta Endocrinologica*, Copenhagen. Figs. 6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 56, 57, 62, 63.
Journal of Biological Chemistry. Fig. 50.
Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism. Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 30, 31, 51, 52, 58.
Journal of Endocrinology. Figs. 17, 53, 64. Tables XIII, XVI.
Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology of the British Empire. Figs. 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 26, 27, 28, 29, 47, 48, 49. Tables V, VI.
Journal of Physiology. Table XIII.
Klinische Wochenschrift. Table XVII.
Lancet. Figs. 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 59. Table XV.
Vitamins and Hormones. Tables I, II, III, IV, XIX.

BOOKS

- Ciba Foundation. *Colloquia on Endocrinology*. London: Churchill. Figs. 16, 23, 24, 25. Table X.
 Dorfman, R. I. and Shipley, R. A. *The Androgens*. New York: Wiley. London: Chapman & Hall. Table XVIII.
 Emmens, C. W., ed. *Hormone Assay*. New York: Academic Press. Table XI.
 Euler, U. S. v. *Noradrenaline*. American Lecture Series, No. 261. Springfield, Ill.: Thomas. Table XX.
 Gaddum, J. H., ed. *Polypeptides which Stimulate Plain Muscle*. Edinburgh: Livingstone. Table XII.
 Smith, R. W., Gaebler, O. H. and Long, C. N. H., eds. *Hypophyseal Growth Hormone, Nature and Actions*. New York: Blakiston Division, McGraw Hill Book Co. Fig. 66.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. GENERAL PRINCIPLES IN HORMONE ASSAY	I
II. PITUITARY GONADOTROPHINS	15
III. HUMAN CHORIONIC GONADOTROPHIN	65
IV. THYROTROPHIN	99
V. ADRENOCORTICOTROPHIN	110
VI. GROWTH HORMONE	125
VII. PROLACTIN	133
VIII. ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE AND ANTIDIURETIC SUBSTANCES	141
IX. OESTROGENS	154
X. PROGESTERONE AND ITS METABOLITES	205
XI. CORTICOSTEROIDS	244
XII. 17-KETOSTEROIDS AND ANDROGENS	287
XIII. ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE	322
XIV. INSULIN	338
INDEX OF AUTHORS	345
SUBJECT INDEX	359

CHAPTER I

General Principles in Hormone Assay

ASSAY methods for hormones and their metabolites can be divided into two groups—*biological methods* and *chemical methods*. Bio-assays are often more sensitive and more specific than chemical assays but the latter are usually more precise, less laborious, less expensive, and much more suitable for routine use in the clinical field. It can be confidently predicted that, in the future, chemical assay procedures will largely replace bio-assays for the quantitative determination of hormones and their metabolites in body fluids.

At the time of writing, biological assays must still be used for the estimation of pituitary gonadotrophins, human chorionic gonadotrophin (HCG), thyrotrophin, adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), growth hormone, prolactin, posterior pituitary hormones, thyroid hormones, parathyroid hormone and insulin. The chemical determination of these hormones in blood and urine is not possible at the present time. Chemical assay methods should now be used for the determination of oestrogens, progesterone and its metabolites, corticosteroids and 17-ketosteroids. In the case of adrenaline and noradrenaline, chemical methods of estimation have recently become much more reliable and should probably now replace bio-assays in clinical studies.

As indicated in the title this chapter deals mainly with matters of general interest to those concerned with the estimation of hormones for clinical purposes. In order to explain some of the terms which will be used in Chapters II to VIII a section dealing specifically with bio-assay is also included.

ESSENTIAL REQUIREMENTS IN HORMONE ASSAY PROCEDURES

This subject has been reviewed by various workers, including Borth (1952), Marrian (1955), Loraine (1957 *a*)

and Brown *et al.* (1957). It is generally agreed that the efficiency of a given method depends on two main factors—its *reliability* and its *practicability*.

1. 'Reliability Criteria' for Hormone Assays.

According to Borth (1952) there are four such criteria. These are *accuracy*, *precision*, *specificity* and *sensitivity*. Borth (1952) has stated that, in assessing the overall value of a given assay procedure, the four criteria are of equal importance. This conclusion appears to be justified in view of the fact that the criteria may vary greatly in the case of individual methods. Thus a method which shows a high degree of precision may not be highly specific, while a specific, accurate and precise technique may not be sufficiently sensitive for use in a particular set of circumstances.

Throughout this book the term *reliability*, when applied to a method, will be used in a general sense to embrace the four concepts of accuracy, precision, specificity and sensitivity.

(a) ACCURACY.—This term may be defined as the nearness with which a given analytical result approaches the 'true' result. The accuracy of a quantitative method can be studied by means of 'recovery experiments' in which determinations are made on the material being analysed before and after the addition of known amounts of the substance under investigation. Results are usually expressed in terms of the percentage of the added compound recovered. Accuracy can also be estimated by procedures involving radio-active compounds; it is probable that in the future techniques of this kind will become increasingly popular.

Some of the problems involved in evaluating the accuracy of the various 'steroid' methods have been discussed by Marrian, (1955). Ideally recovery experiments should be conducted by adding to blood or to urine pure steroids in the forms in which they are normally present. Unfortunately this is seldom practicable because the majority of the steroids occur in body fluids in the conjugated form and in most instances these conjugates are very difficult to obtain for investigative purposes. Accordingly, most workers have adopted the expedient of carrying out recovery experiments in which known amounts of the pure unconjugated steroids are added to blood or urine. Experiments of this type, although by no

means perfect in design, may give a reasonably good indication of the losses which occur during the performance of the method.

It is a matter of great difficulty to make a definite statement with respect to the permissible limits of accuracy in a given steroid method. This subject has been recently discussed by Marrian (1955), who suggested that a method might be regarded as satisfactory from the quantitative point of view when the recovery of added pure steroid was 75 per cent. or more. Marrian (1955) has also emphasised the necessity for investigators to determine *in their own laboratory* the accuracy of a given method; this should always be done before the technique is used for investigations in the clinical field.

In hormone assays depending on biological methods, recovery experiments of the type described above are often very laborious and this fact has prevented many workers from employing them as a means of assessing the accuracy of a method. Recently, however, particularly in the case of ACTH and of the pituitary gonadotrophins, data derived from such experiments have been reported in the literature (Sydnor and Sayers, 1952; Loraine, 1957 *b*). It is to be hoped that in the future similar information will be published for the other pituitary hormones.

(*b*) PRECISION.¹—An estimate of the precision of a chemical assay method can be obtained by carrying out multiple determinations on the same sample of blood or urine or by conducting multiple recovery experiments with the same concentration of the added compound. Precision is usually expressed as the standard deviation of replicate determinations.

As in the case of accuracy, it is very difficult to offer any definite opinion as to what degree of precision is acceptable in a given assay method. Marrian (1955) has suggested that, for steroid methods, a standard deviation of ± 10 per cent. at optimal steroid concentrations is the best that can reasonably be expected while, at sub-optimal concentrations, it may be necessary to be satisfied with a standard deviation of ± 25 to 30 per cent.

¹ It should be emphasised that the terms 'accuracy' and 'precision' when applied to assay methods should not be regarded as synonymous. The term 'precision' refers essentially to the reproducibility of a method and should only be used when repeated estimations have been made on the same sample of blood or urine.

In biological assays the labour involved in conducting replicate determinations is very considerable, and for this reason few investigators have so far attempted to estimate precision in this way. Methods which have been employed for calculating the precision of such assays are described below.

(c) SPECIFICITY.—In chemical assay methods specificity can be defined as the determination of one chemical entity to the exclusion of others; in bio-assays the term refers to the determination of one physiological activity to the exclusion of others. Usually the specificity of a method depends on the cumulative evidence that the technique measures what it is supposed to measure and nothing else.

Some of the factors which must be considered in assessing the specificity of a chemical assay method have recently been discussed by Brown *et al.* (1957). These workers attempted to evaluate the specificity of the method developed by Brown (1955) for the estimation of œstriol, œstrone and œstradiol-17 β in human urine (see p. 164). They concluded that, for the majority of urines from normal women during the menstrual cycle, normal men and normal post-menopausal women, there was good evidence to support the view that the substances being determined were indeed œstriol, œstrone and œstradiol-17 β . This conclusion was based on the following four kinds of evidence: (i) The known high specificity of the Kober reaction on which the final determination in the Brown method depends, (ii) the chromatographic behaviour of the urinary œstrogen fractions on alumina adsorption columns, (iii) the behaviour of these fractions in studies involving countercurrent distribution, and (iv) the comparison of the results obtained by chemical assay on the one hand and by bio-assay on the other.

Marrian (1955), Borth (1956) and others have emphasised that most of the methods used for the final determination of steroids in blood or urine extracts are not of themselves specific. For example, the Zimmermann reaction is not specific for 17-ketosteroids; the production of a yellow colour with sulphuric acid is not specific for 5 β -pregnane-3 α :20 α -diol (pregnanediol); and the Porter-Silber reaction (see p. 259) is not specific for the 17, 21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids. Accordingly, the specificities of methods in which such

non-specific reactions are used must largely depend on the techniques employed for the purification and fractionation of the crude extracts.

(d) SENSITIVITY.—This term may be conveniently defined as the minimum amount of a substance which can be detected by a particular method. As will be seen in later chapters, one of the chief difficulties in the estimation of many hormones in body fluids arises from the fact that available assay methods are not sufficiently sensitive to detect the small amounts of material present. This difficulty is particularly marked in the case of the pituitary hormones but is also found with certain of the steroid hormones such as progesterone.

Various attempts have been made to increase the sensitivity of assay methods for pituitary hormones in blood and urine. One of these which has been used by Coppedge and Segaloff (1951) for the assay of urinary prolactin, and by Gray and Parrott (1953) for the estimation of plasma ACTH, consists of the administration to the test animals of a so-called 'booster' dose of the hormone in order to bring the readings on to the 'working range' of the dose-effect curve. Procedures of this kind have not gained general acceptance, and it is unlikely that they will continue to be used in clinical studies. It is probable that, in the future, assay methods for pituitary hormones will be made more reliable by developing more satisfactory techniques for the extraction of these hormones from blood and urine and by administering such concentrates to the experimental animals.

2. Practicability of Hormone Assays.

Under this heading are included such factors as *speed*, *cost* and the *skill* required in the performance of a method. It is obvious that a method which satisfies the most stringent criteria of reliability may be quite unsuitable for routine use in the clinical field. This would occur if, as is the case with many biological assays, the technique were so laborious that many days were required before a result was obtained. Such a situation would also arise if the cost per estimation in terms of chemicals, technical assistance, animals and equipment were very high or if the method itself were so complicated that special skill on the part of the operator was required in order to obtain reproducible results. For further information on the question

of the practicability of hormone assays the reader is referred to articles by Borth (1952), Borth and de Watteville (1952), Marrian (1955) and Albert (1956).

It must be emphasised that, although the factors listed above are of importance in the clinical application of hormone assays, the practicability of a given method should always be dictated by its value in the diagnosis of disease. Thus even a very time-consuming procedure such as that recently described by Ayres *et al.* (1957) for the estimation of urinary aldosterone (see p. 261) may have a relatively wide clinical application provided that the information obtained by the use of such a method justifies the labour involved in its performance.

HORMONE ASSAYS BY BIOLOGICAL METHODS

A general discussion on the mathematical methods employed in biological assay is outside the scope of this book. For information on this subject, on which a large literature has accumulated in recent years, the reader is referred to publications by Thayer (1946), Emmens (1950), Burn *et al.* (1950), Finney (1952) and Gaddum (1953 *a, b*). The present section of this chapter is concerned with certain aspects of bio-assay which, in the opinion of the author, are especially relevant to the estimation of hormones in body fluids. The following factors will be considered:

1. Strain of animal.
2. Standard preparations.
3. Types of bio-assay.
4. Design of bio-assays.
5. Calculation of errors.

1. Strain of Animal.

This factor is of considerable importance in hormone assays. There are numerous instances in the literature of methods which give satisfactory results in some animal strains but not in others. Two examples may serve to illustrate this point:

(a) The assay method for HCG depending on the production of ovarian hyperæmia in intact immature rats has been used

with reasonable success in laboratories at the Mayo Clinic and Geneva (Albert and Berkson, 1951; Borth *et al.*, 1957), but in Edinburgh could not be made the basis of a reliable quantitative assay.

(b) The assay method for ACTH based on the depletion of adrenal ascorbic acid in hypophysectomised rats had a relatively high degree of precision when used by Sayers *et al.* (1948) in Salt Lake City and by Taylor *et al.* (1953) in Edinburgh, but was much less satisfactory in the hands of investigators in certain other centres in the United Kingdom and the United States.

The dependence of hormone assays on the strain of animal employed is important from the practical point of view. It makes it advisable that, prior to the establishment of a given method for clinical purposes, an investigator should satisfy himself that the strain which he proposes to use is indeed suitable for his purposes. Time spent in assessing the suitability of animal strains will not be wasted and may save much unnecessary expense.

It is the author's opinion that, if at all practicable, hormone assays should be conducted with animals bred in the investigator's own laboratory under environmental conditions which are as constant as possible. Animals purchased from dealers tend to be much less uniform, and for this reason frequently give unsatisfactory results. It is almost certain that many of the difficulties reported by investigators in obtaining valid bio-assays result from the fact that animals bought from dealers have been used. A good example of this point is provided by the differing experiences of Albert (1956) at the Mayo Clinic and of Loraine and Brown (1954, 1956) in Edinburgh with the bio-assay method for pituitary gonadotrophins in urine depending on the enlargement of the uterus in intact immature mice (see p. 27). Albert (1956) who bought his animals from dealers could not obtain reproducible results with this test, whereas, in the hands of Loraine and Brown (1954, 1956), who used animals bred in the laboratory, the method has yielded satisfactory results over a period of approximately seven years. In view of the importance of a uniform animal strain in the performance of the mouse uterus test, little quantitative significance can be attached to the results of assays in which animals obtained from diverse sources are used.

2. Standard Preparations.

In 1927 Trevan noted that the minimum dose of a substance producing an effect in one animal colony was liable to differ markedly from that in another, and that even in the same colony maintained under environmental conditions which were controlled as rigidly as possible, wide variations in sensitivity could occur at different times of the year. Trevan's observations have since been amply confirmed, and it is now generally agreed that the expression of results in 'animal units' without reference to a standard is a very unreliable procedure from the quantitative point of view. Gaddum (1953 *a*) has stated that the error of such estimations may be threefold or more.

In the past it has been necessary to express results of many hormone assays in terms of 'animal units,' and workers have generally defined the 'unit' as the amount of material required to produce a given effect. Examples of arbitrary units which should no longer be employed are the 'mouse uterine unit' for follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH),¹ the 'rat ovarian hyperæmia unit' for HCG and the 'Junkmann-Schoeller unit' for thyrotrophin. Within the last two decades standards have been established for the majority of the hormones; this has enabled investigators to report results in international units and has also made it possible to compare directly figures obtained from different laboratories. The use of 'animal units' in assays of hormones for which international standards are available is to be deplored; it is regrettable that publications still appear in which the data are presented in this way.

At the time of writing international standards are available for thyrotrophin, ACTH, prolactin, posterior pituitary hormones, HCG, pregnant mare's serum gonadotrophin (PMSG), insulin, œstrogenic hormones, progesterone and androgens. Standards have not yet been established for growth hormone or for parathyroid hormone. A standard preparation is urgently required for the assay of pituitary gonadotrophins in human urine. Recent work by Loraine and Brown (1956) has shown that urinary gonadotrophins from normal men and from normally menstruating women can be assayed in terms of an extract prepared from the urine of menopausal and

¹ As will be pointed out in Chapter II, the mouse uterus test is not specific for FSH, but measures a mixture of follicle-stimulating and interstitial cell-stimulating activities.

post-menopausal women (see Chapter II). This extract has been termed 'human menopausal gonadotrophin' (HMG) and it is possible that in the future HMG or some preparation like it will become an international standard for the comparative assay of the urinary gonadotrophins excreted by non-pregnant human subjects.

The standard preparations listed above differ considerably in their present sphere of usefulness. Those for the various steroid hormones are seldom used in clinical studies as these substances should now be determined by chemical rather than by biological methods of assay. On the other hand, standards for the pituitary and placental hormones will certainly continue to be used for many years in view of the great difficulties involved in the development of chemical assay methods for these substances.

Standard preparations for the hormones have been made from various sources. Thus those for thyrotrophin, ACTH, prolactin and the posterior pituitary hormones are derived from animal pituitary tissue while that for HCG is derived from pregnancy urine. As emphasised by Loraine (1957 *a*) this fact may cause difficulties when extracts prepared from human blood are assayed in terms of standard material prepared from sources other than blood. For example, Diczfalusy and Loraine (1955) found that under certain circumstances serum samples of HCG could not be assayed against the standard while a similar conclusion was reached by Parrott (1955) in the case of ACTH. Difficulties of a similar nature will almost certainly arise when blood extracts containing thyrotrophic and growth-promoting activities are assayed against the corresponding standards prepared from anterior pituitary tissue. Accordingly, it is essential for investigators to determine by statistical methods whether a given assay procedure which they propose to use for estimations in blood satisfies the recognised criteria of validity as described by Gaddum (1953 *a*). Only assays which satisfy such criteria should be employed in clinical studies.

3. Types of Bio-assay.

Hormone assays are of two main types:

- (a) Assays depending on graded effects.
- (b) Assays depending on quantal effects.

(a) GRADED EFFECTS (MEASURED EFFECTS).—In this type of assay the effect of the hormone on each animal is measured. The majority of hormone assays fall into this category. Familiar examples are the estimation of HCG by its ability to cause enlargement of the prostate in intact immature rats (p. 71), the assay of growth hormone by its effect on body weight in hypophysectomised rats (p. 127) and the determination of prolactin by its action in increasing the weight of the crop gland in pigeons (p. 135).

(b) QUANTAL EFFECTS.—In hormone assays of this type the result depends on the percentage of animals which show some definite response such as œstrus or ovulation. The effect produced in each animal is said to be quantal or 'all-or-none' (Gaddum, 1933). Examples of hormone assays depending on quantal responses are the test for œstrogenic activity based on vaginal cornification in oöphorectomised rodents (p. 160), the ovarian hyperæmia test for HCG (p. 67) and the assay method for gonadotrophins depending on the expulsion of spermatozoa in amphibia (p. 68).

Quantal assays are less suitable as routine procedures than are assays depending on graded effects. The reason for this is twofold. In the first place the statistical methods involved in calculating the error of such tests are often complicated and laborious. Secondly, it has been shown by Gaddum (1933, 1953 *a*) and by Perry (1950) that, other things being equal, the number of animals required in a quantal assay for any given degree of precision is approximately double that required in assays based on a graded response.

4. Design of Bio-assays.

It is generally agreed that the most satisfactory bio-assays are those in which a comparison is made of the potency of the unknown or test preparation (U) with that of the standard preparation (S). In hormone estimations, as in all other types of assay, the design should be selected with care; bad designs frequently cause great wastage of both time and animals.

Gaddum (1953 *a*) has recently reviewed the various experimental designs which have been used in bio-assays, and his excellent article should be consulted by those interested in this problem. In hormone estimations in patients the two most popular types of assay have been those employing a three-point

or a four-point design.¹ Assays depending on a six-point design¹ are more reliable than either of the preceding but are too cumbersome for use in the clinical field.

(a) (TWO + ONE) DOSE ASSAYS (THREE-POINT ASSAYS).—This is the simplest design which is acceptable for routine use. Three groups of animals are used; two groups receive the standard and one the unknown preparation. The dose of the unknown should have an effect intermediate between the two doses of the standard. The design can be used in assays depending either on graded or on quantal responses. The three-point assay provides no information regarding either slope difference (parallelism) or curvature; such tests of validity can be performed only when more complex designs are employed.

Because of their simplicity three-point assays have been much used in routine clinical studies. In the opinion of the author this is justifiable if, at an early stage of the investigation, more complex designs have been employed in order to establish that the assay in question satisfies the recognised criteria of validity.

(b) (TWO + TWO) DOSE ASSAYS (FOUR-POINT ASSAYS).—This design was first described by Gaddum in 1933, and since then it has been much used in quantitative work. Four groups of animals are employed; two groups receive the standard and two the unknown preparation. The design can be applied to assays depending either on a graded or on a quantal response. Four-point assays enable the investigator to calculate whether or not the log dose-response curves of S and U differ significantly in slope; if lack of parallelism is demonstrated the assay is invalid and the result has no meaning. The four-point design can be conveniently used in the majority of hormone assays and is probably the formula of choice for clinical studies.

5. Calculation of Errors.

There are many ways of estimating the precision of bioassays. These have been reviewed by Finney (1952), Gaddum (1953 *a*, *b*), Diczfalusy (1954) and others. One of the most convenient methods is to express the errors of the various tests in terms of the index of precision (λ) and this procedure will be adopted in subsequent chapters.

¹ Three-point design = two doses of S and one of U.

Four-point design = two doses of both S and U.

Six-point design = three doses of both S and U.

INDEX OF PRECISION (λ).—This term was introduced by Gaddum in 1933 and is an estimate of the standard deviation of the logarithms of the individual effective doses (S.D. log tolerance). In assays depending on graded effects the index is calculated by dividing the standard deviation of the responses (usually termed s) by the slope of the line connecting the response with the logarithm of the dose (usually termed b), i.e., $\lambda = \frac{s}{b}$; in quantal assays the symbol b has a slightly different

meaning and λ is estimated from the expression $\frac{1}{b}$. The precision of a given assay is high when s is small and b is large. From this it follows that the lower the figure for λ the more precise the assay and the higher the λ the less precise the assay.

The great advantage of λ lies in the fact that it is independent of such factors as the design of the assay and the number of animals employed. For this reason the index serves as a very satisfactory means of comparing the precision of one test with that of another. In the opinion of Gaddum (1953 *a*) all statements of errors of tests should include an estimate of λ in addition to any other information that may be thought desirable.

It is very difficult to make a definite statement as to what degree of precision is acceptable in clinical bio-assays. It may, however, be useful to divide the tests into three groups:

- (a) ASSAYS IN WHICH THE λ IS 0.2 OR LESS.—Such assays are very precise and are well suited for clinical studies.
- (b) ASSAYS IN WHICH THE λ LIES BETWEEN 0.2 AND 0.3.—Such tests are less precise than those in (a) but can still be used with reasonable confidence.
- (c) ASSAYS IN WHICH THE λ IS 0.3 OR MORE.—Such assays have a low degree of precision and are unsuitable for quantitative work.

THE RELATIVE MERITS OF BLOOD AND URINE DETERMINATIONS

This subject has been recently reviewed by Marrian (1955), and the subsequent two paragraphs dealing with steroid hormones are quoted directly from his article.

‘Following the administration of certain steroid hormones to human subjects only small and somewhat variable proportions of the doses administered can be recovered from the urine in the form of identifiable metabolites or in the form of the unchanged hormones. Such findings suggest that the amounts of the steroid hormones and their metabolites which are excreted in the urine may represent in these cases only small and variable fractions of the amounts of these hormones which are secreted in the body. Because of this some authorities have questioned the value of urinary steroid hormones as a means of assessing the secretory activities of the steroid hormone-secreting glands and have urged that blood determinations are to be preferred where suitable methods are available.’

‘While the drawbacks of a urinary steroid determination as a means of accurately assessing hormone secretion must be admitted, there would seem to be no justification for regarding a blood determination as a preferable alternative for this purpose. A urine determination will yield a value which may be accepted as bearing some approximate proportionality to the total amount of hormones secreted during a certain period of time—usually from eight to twenty-four hours. On the other hand, a blood determination will provide information about the amount of hormone or its metabolites which are present in the blood at one particular instant of time—the instant when the blood sample is withdrawn. This information may, of course, be just as valuable as, or in some circumstances even more valuable than that provided by a urine determination, but it must be emphasised that it is information of a different kind. Accordingly, λ blood and urine determinations should not be regarded as alternatives, whose relative merits can be argued about, but rather as sources of different kinds of information which may be supplementary to one another.’

As will be seen in subsequent chapters methods for the determination of hormones and their metabolites in urine are, with a few exceptions, more reliable than those for the estimation of the corresponding substances in blood. At the time of writing the only hormones which can be estimated with reasonable accuracy in both blood and urine are HCG and some steroids, but only in the case of HCG have reliable

calculations been made of the renal clearance in health and disease (Gastineau *et al.*, 1949; Loraine, 1950).

REFERENCES

- ALBERT, A. (1956). *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* **12**, 227.
 ALBERT, A. & BERKSON, J. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 805.
 AYRES, P. J., GARROD, O., SIMPSON, S. A. & TAIT, J. F. (1957). *Biochem. J.* **65**, 639.
 BORTH, R. (1952). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 2, p. 45. London: Churchill.
 BORTH, R. (1956). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **22**, 125.
 BORTH, R., LUNENFELD, B. & DE WATTEVILLE, H. (1957). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **24**, 119.
 BORTH, R. & DE WATTEVILLE, H. (1952). *Vitam. & Horm.* **10**, 141.
 BROWN, J. B. (1955). *Biochem. J.* **60**, 185.
 BROWN, J. B., BULBROOK, R. D. & GREENWOOD, F. C. (1957). *J. Endocrin.* In press.
 BURN, J. H., FINNEY, D. J. & GOODWIN, L. G. (1950). *Biological Standardisation*. London: Oxford University Press.
 COPPEDGE, R. L. & SEGALOFF, A. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 465.
 DICZFALUSY, E. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **17**, 58.
 DICZFALUSY, E. & LORAIN, J. A. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 424.
 EMMENS, C. W. (1950). *Hormone Assay*. New York: Academic Press.
 FINNEY, D. J. (1952). *Statistical Methods in Biological Assay*. London: Charles Griffin.
 GADDUM, J. H. (1933). *Spec. Rep. Ser. med. Res. Coun., Lond.* No. 183.
 GADDUM, J. H. (1953 a). *Pharmacol. Rev.* **5**, 87.
 GADDUM, J. H. (1953 b). *J. Pharm. Pharmacol.* **6**, 345.
 GASTINEAU, C. F., ALBERT A. & RANDALL, L. M. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 615.
 GRAY, C. H. & PARROTT, D. M. V. (1953). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 153. London: Churchill.
 LORAIN, J. A. (1950). *Quart. J. exp. Physiol.* **36**, 11.
 LORAIN, J. A. (1957 a). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 11, p. 19. London: Churchill.
 LORAIN, J. A. (1957 b). *Acta endocr. Kbh.*, Suppl. 31, p. 75.
 LORAIN, J. A. & BROWN, J. B. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **17**, 250.
 LORAIN, J. A. & BROWN, J. B. (1956). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **16**, 1180.
 MARRIAN, G. F. (1955). In *Proceedings of Third International Congress in Biochemistry*, p. 205, Brussels.
 PARROTT, D. M. V. (1955). *J. Endocrin.* **12**, 120.
 PERRY, W. L. M. (1950). *Spec. Rep. Ser. med. Res. Coun., Lond.* No. 270.
 SAYERS, M. A., SAYERS, G. & WOODBURY, L. A. (1948). *Endocrinology*, **42**, 379.
 SYDNOR, K. L. & SAYERS, G. (1952). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **79**, 432.
 TAYLOR, N. R. W., LORAIN, J. A. & ROBERTSON, H. A. (1953). *J. Endocrin.* **9**, 334.
 THAYER, S. A. (1946). *Vitam. & Horm.* **4**, 311.
 TREVAN, J. W. (1927). *Proc. roy. Soc. B.* **101**, 483.

CHAPTER II

Pituitary Gonadotrophins

INTRODUCTION

THREE gonadotrophic substances are elaborated by the anterior lobe of the pituitary. These are the *follicle-stimulating hormone* (FSH), the *interstitial cell-stimulating* or *luteinising hormone* (ICSH or LH) and *luteotrophin*. The present chapter deals with assay methods for FSH and ICSH, with methods of extraction of these hormones from urine, and with their excretion in normal and pathological conditions in man. Luteotrophin is considered in Chapter VII while the placental gonadotrophin, *human chorionic gonadotrophin* (HCG), is discussed in Chapter III.

Chemical Nature of Pituitary FSH and ICSH.

Workers in two independent laboratories have stated that pituitary ICSH has been obtained in the pure state and that the preparation when subjected to electrophoretic, ultracentrifuge and solubility tests behaves as a homogeneous protein (Li *et al.*, 1940; Shedlovsky *et al.*, 1940). According to Li *et al.* (1940) sheep ICSH has a molecular weight of 40,000 and an iso-electric pH of 4.6. The hormone is insoluble in 66 per cent. acetone; it contains carbohydrate in its molecule and is therefore referred to as a glycoprotein. Shedlovsky *et al.* (1940) showed that swine ICSH is also a glycoprotein. This substance has a molecular weight of 100,000 and an iso-electric pH of 7.45. Highly purified preparations of both sheep and pig FSH have been made, but it has not yet been claimed that the hormones have been isolated in the pure state. Sheep FSH is believed to be a glycoprotein with a molecular weight of 70,000 and an iso-electric pH of 4.5. The properties of pig FSH are very similar. For a fuller discussion of the chemical properties of the pituitary gonadotrophins the reader is referred to

publications by Fevold (1937), Li and Evans (1948), Morris (1955) and Loraine (1956).

Little is at present known regarding the chemical nature of the gonadotrophins in human non-pregnant urine. Most workers have assumed that two gonadotrophic hormones, FSH and ICSH, are excreted and that these substances are similar in their chemical and biological properties to the hormones isolated from animal pituitaries. However, in view of the fact that human urinary FSH has not yet been separated from human urinary ICSH, it would appear that the evidence for the existence of two separate gonadotrophic substances in non-pregnant urine is by no means conclusive. Indeed, the suggestion has recently been made (Segaloff *et al.*, 1954) that such urine contains a single gonadotrophin with both follicle-stimulating and luteinising activities. Definite information regarding the number of gonadotrophic hormones excreted by non-pregnant subjects must await further work on the chemical nature and biological properties of these substances.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF PITUITARY GONADOTROPHINS IN URINE

It is generally believed that men, non-pregnant women and children excrete gonadotrophins with both follicle-stimulating and luteinising activities and that these hormones are elaborated by the anterior pituitary. The urinary excretion is relatively high at and beyond the menopause but is low in children, in men and in women during reproductive life. At present no available assay method is sufficiently sensitive to detect FSH and ICSH activity with any regularity in blood and accordingly the great majority of studies have been conducted on urine which has been extracted and concentrated by a variety of procedures. The test animals employed have generally been rats or mice which are more sensitive to stimulation by gonadotrophic hormones than are, for example, rabbits, guinea-pigs or amphibia. Ideally, assays should be performed in hypophysectomised animals in order that the endogenous production of gonadotrophins should not interfere with the results. The subject of gonadotrophin assay in relation to clinical problems has recently been reviewed (Loraine, 1956 ; Albert, 1956).

1. Human Menopausal Gonadotrophin (HMG) as a Standard Preparation for the Assay of Pituitary Gonadotrophins in Urine.

One of the great difficulties in the estimation of pituitary gonadotrophins in urine is the fact that no International Standard preparation is available for the comparative assay of these substances. It has therefore been necessary to express results of clinical assays in arbitrary 'rat' and 'mouse units,' a 'unit' being defined as that quantity necessary to produce a given effect. Arbitrary units employed in intact and hypophysectomised rats have included the doses necessary to cause vaginal cornification, to produce histological changes in the ovaries and to cause 50 to 100 per cent. increase in weight of the ovaries, uterus, seminal vesicles and ventral lobe of the prostate. In intact immature mice most investigators have adopted as a 'unit' the quantity of extract producing 100 to 200 per cent. increase in uterine weight. A 'mouse hyperæmia unit' has also been proposed (Lloyd *et al.*, 1949) and defined as the dose necessary to cause hyperæmia in 25 per cent. of eight ovaries.

Trevan (1927) was among the first to note that the threshold dose of a substance varies enormously even when an animal colony is kept under relatively constant environmental conditions. It is now generally recognised that the error of estimations expressed in 'animal units' without reference to a standard preparation may be threefold or more and that results calculated in this way have little quantitative significance.

Recent work by Loraine and Brown (1955, 1956 *a*) has shown that urinary gonadotrophins from men and from normally menstruating and post-menopausal women can be assayed in terms of human menopausal gonadotrophin (HMG).¹ The standard preparation (HMG-20) was prepared by Messrs Organon (Newhouse, Scotland) from the urine of menopausal and post-menopausal women. The kaolin-acetone method of extraction was employed (see p. 31) and the crude material obtained by this procedure was treated with tricalcium phosphate in order to reduce toxicity. The final

¹ This term will be used to designate the gonadotrophic activity in the urine of menopausal and post-menopausal women. Such urine extracts contain both FSH and ICSH activity. The term HMG was introduced at the first meeting of the Gonadotrophin Club in Geneva (August 1953).

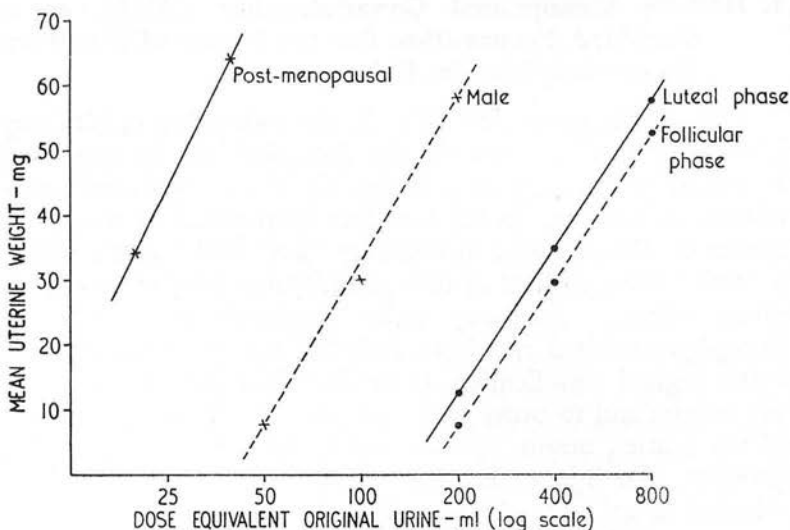


FIG. 1

Dose-response curves for urinary gonadotrophins from post-menopausal women, normal men and cyclic women—uterine weight test in intact mice. (From Loraine and Brown, 1956 a.)

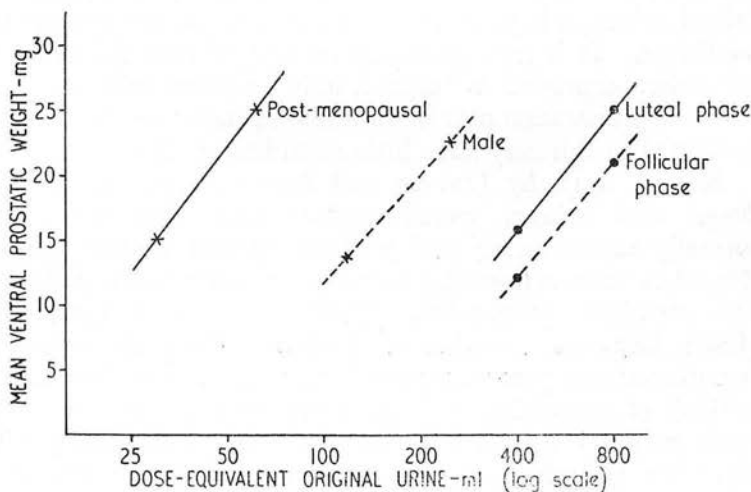


FIG. 2

Dose-response curves for urinary gonadotrophins from post-menopausal women, normal men and cyclic women—ventral prostatic weight test in hypophysectomised rats. (From Loraine and Brown, 1956 a.)

powder was freely soluble in water; it was relatively non-toxic and could be administered to intact mice and to hypophysectomised rats up to a total dose of 16 mg. Pooled urine was collected from normal male subjects, from normally menstruating women during the follicular and luteal phases of the cycle, and from post-menopausal subjects. The method of extraction of the gonadotrophins from urine was similar to that adopted for the preparation of the standard.

Two bio-assay methods were used, one depending on the enlargement of the uterus in intact immature mice and the other on the enlargement of the ventral lobe of the prostate in hypophysectomised immature rats.

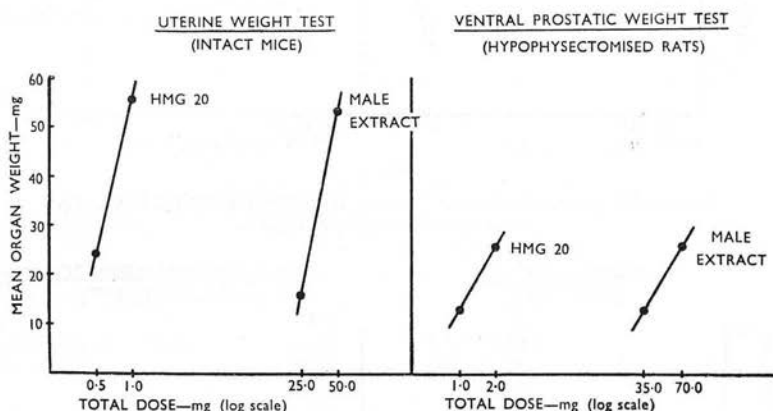


FIG. 3

Four-point assays of male gonadotrophin against HMG-20.
(From Loraine and Brown, 1956 *a.*)

In Figs. 1 and 2, which are taken from a paper by Loraine and Brown (1956 *a.*), are shown dose-response curves for male, post-menopausal female and cyclic female gonadotrophins using the mouse uterus and rat prostate tests.

It will be noted (Fig. 1) that over the dosage range used there was a linear relationship between the log dose and the effect. By both tests the post-menopausal urine extract was approximately five times more active than pooled male urine, and male urine was approximately four times more active than pooled follicular phase and luteal phase urine.

In Figs. 3 to 5 are shown typical four-point assays in which the various gonadotrophins were compared with HMG-20 using the same two bio-assay methods. Statistical calculations

by the techniques recommended by Finney (1952) and by Gaddum (1953 *a, b*) demonstrated that there was no significant difference between the slopes of the various log dose-effect curves. Accordingly it is justifiable to conclude

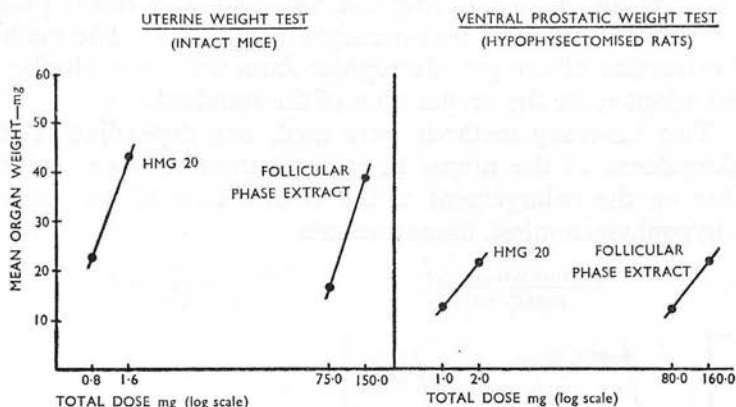


FIG. 4

Four-point assays of follicular phase gonadotrophin against HMG-20.
(From Loraine and Brown, 1956 *a.*)

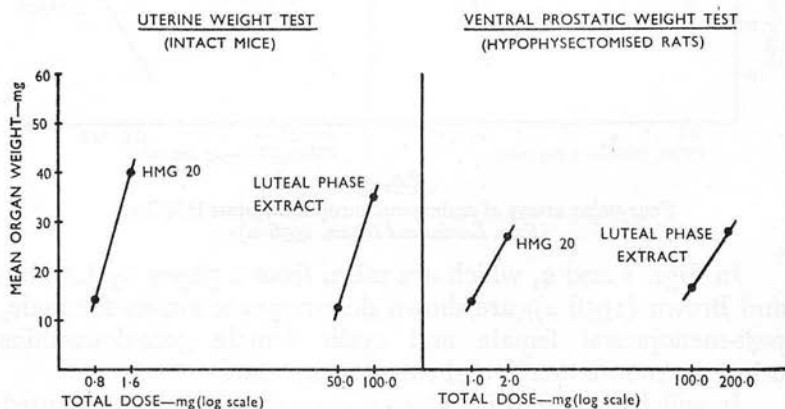


FIG. 5

Four-point assays of luteal phase gonadotrophin against HMG-20.
(From Loraine and Brown, 1956 *a.*)

that urinary gonadotrophins from normal men and from normally menstruating and post-menopausal women can be assayed in terms of HMG and that the latter substance can be used as a standard for the assay of all human non-pregnant urinary gonadotrophins.

In Table I the activity of HMG-20 is compared with that of the other urinary gonadotrophins by both assay methods.

With the mouse uterus test the mean ratio of activities (S/U) for male urine was 45, for follicular phase urine 112 and for luteal phase urine 97. The corresponding figures using the rat prostate test were respectively 35, 86 and 84. In the assays conducted on post-menopausal urine the mean ratios were 4.9 for the mouse uterus test and 3.8 for the rat prostate test. It will be seen that there is no significant

TABLE I

COMPARISON OF URINARY GONADOTROPHINS FROM MALES AND FROM NORMALLY MENSTRUATING AND POST-MENOPAUSAL WOMEN WITH HMG-20 USING DIFFERENT ASSAY METHODS

(From Lorraine, 1956)

Urinary Extract Administered.	Ratio of Activities, Standard/Unknown Uterine Weight Test (Mice).	Ratio of Activities, Standard/Unknown Ventral Prostatic Weight Test (Rats).	Mean Index of Discrimination, Uterus/Ventral Prostate.
Male	54/1	33/1	...
	36/1	36/1	1.30
Follicular phase female	114/1	80/1	...
	110/1	91/1	1.31
Luteal phase female	125/1	87/1	...
	68/1	80/1	1.15
Post-menopausal female	3.0/1	2.8/1	...
	6.8/1	4.8/1	1.28

difference between the estimations obtained by the two assay methods for the relative potency of the four different gonadotrophic extracts.

Gaddum (1955) has recently suggested that data of this type can conveniently be expressed in terms of the *index of discrimination*. This is equal to the ratio of the two results which would be obtained if one of the substances were used to assay an unknown extract containing the other. In Table I the index of discrimination is shown in column 4 and is obtained by dividing the mean of the ratios in column 2 by the corresponding figure in column 3. It will be noted that with all types of urinary extract the index is approximately equal

to unity. This suggests that the active principle measured by the two tests is identical and provides evidence that there is no qualitative difference between the various non-pregnant urinary gonadotrophins when these substances are extracted from urine by the kaolin-acetone method.

2. Tests claimed to be Specific for FSH.

Most investigators agree that any specific assay method for FSH must employ hypophysectomised animals and that in intact animals the secretion of gonadotrophins from the animal's own pituitary will interfere with the response of the end organs. In general, methods have depended on observations of the ovaries and testes of rats after hypophysectomy. Recently, however, an assay method for FSH has been described using the ovarian weight test in intact immature rats which have been primed with relatively large doses of HCG.

Three assay methods for FSH will be considered:

- (a) Follicular growth in hypophysectomised immature female rats (Evans *et al.*, 1939).
- (b) Increase in testicular weight in hypophysectomised immature male rats treated with an excess of HCG (Paesi *et al.*, 1951).
- (c) Increase in ovarian weight in intact immature rats treated with HCG (Steelman and Pohley, 1953).

(a) FOLLICULAR GROWTH IN HYPOPHYSECTOMISED IMMATURE FEMALE RATS.—In the technique described by Evans *et al.* (1939) hypophysectomised immature rats were injected subcutaneously once per day for three days. The animals were killed seventy-two hours after the first injection and the ovaries examined histologically. A 'unit' was arbitrarily defined as the minimum quantity of extract necessary to produce healthy non-atretic follicles with small antra. This method is claimed to be highly specific for FSH but no information is available about its precision. It has the additional advantage that the presence of ICSH in pituitary or urine extracts can be detected by the effect of this hormone on the ovarian interstitial tissue.

So far assays by this technique have been mainly restricted to pituitary tissue. In the few attempts that have been made to estimate FSH activity in human urine using hypophysectomised female rats the test has been found to be relatively

insensitive. It is therefore necessary to prepare highly concentrated extracts from urine which, in dosages required to produce follicular growth in the ovaries, are frequently toxic to the experimental animals. In view of this fact there is little likelihood that this assay method will prove of much value for the estimation of FSH activity in clinical practice.

(b) INCREASE IN TESTICULAR WEIGHT IN HYPOPHYSECTOMISED IMMATURE RATS TREATED WITH AN EXCESS OF HCG.—This test was described by Paesi *et al.* (1951) and was used to estimate the FSH content of rat pituitaries. Hypophysectomised immature male rats were implanted intra-abdominally with pituitary tissue from castrated male and female rats. The right testis was removed on the day of implantation. All animals received 10 i.u. of HCG per day for seven days. They were killed on the eighth day and the left testis was weighed. The difference in weight between right and left testes was taken as an index of the FSH activity of the implanted pituitaries.

This assay method was employed by Diczfalusy (1953) to determine whether placental extracts contained demonstrable quantities of FSH, but the technique has not so far been employed to assay the FSH content of human urine extracts. The method is laborious and tedious and its specificity is somewhat questionable in view of the finding of Simpson *et al.* (1944) that both FSH and ICSH are capable of causing testicular growth in hypophysectomised rats.

(c) INCREASE IN OVARIAN WEIGHT IN INTACT IMMATURE FEMALE RATS TREATED WITH HCG.—This method depends on the observation that HCG will augment the action of FSH on the rat ovary. It has been used by Steelman and Pohley (1953) to assay FSH in pituitary glands. Neal *et al.* (1954) using rats and Brown (1955) using mice have attempted to adapt the method for studies on human urine. In the procedure described by Steelman and Pohley (1953) the animals were injected subcutaneously thrice per day for three days with swine FSH and with HCG. The autopsy was performed seventy-two hours after the first injection at which time the ovaries were dissected out and weighed. A total dose of 20 i.u. of HCG per animal was found to produce a satisfactory degree of augmentation of ovarian weight and thereby to increase the sensitivity of the animals to exogenous FSH.

This test appears promising as a relatively simple means of

determining FSH activity in human urine. Further information should be accumulated regarding its accuracy, precision, specificity and sensitivity.

3. Tests claimed to be Specific for ICSH.

As in the case of FSH most assays for ICSH have been conducted on hypophysectomised animals. The following methods will be considered:

- (a) Repair of the interstitial tissue in the ovaries of hypophysectomised immature female rats (Evans *et al.*, 1939).
- (b) Enlargement of the prostate in hypophysectomised immature male rats (Greep *et al.*, 1942; McArthur, 1952; Loraine and Brown, 1954).
- (c) Enlargement of the seminal vesicles in hypophysectomised immature male rats (McArthur, 1952; Loraine and Brown, 1954).
- (d) Increase in activity of prostatic alkaline phosphatase in hypophysectomised immature male rats (Schaffenburg and McCullagh, 1951).

(a) REPAIR OF THE INTERSTITIAL TISSUE IN HYPOPHYSECTOMISED IMMATURE FEMALE RATS.—This test was used by Evans *et al.* (1939) to estimate the ICSH content of sheep pituitary extracts. The injection schedule was similar to that described for the assay of FSH except that injections were given intraperitoneally instead of subcutaneously. ICSH has a specific action in repairing the degenerated interstitial cells resulting from hypophysectomy. This is indicated by the reappearance of a normal nuclear pattern and by the disappearance of the characteristic 'wheel cells' in the ovaries. The test is claimed to be highly specific for ICSH but no information is available about its precision. The assay method when applied to the estimation of ICSH in human urinary extracts has been shown to be very insensitive, and in view of this fact it is unlikely that the technique will be of any value in the estimation of ICSH activity for clinical purposes.

(b) ENLARGEMENT OF THE PROSTATE IN HYPOPHYSECTOMISED IMMATURE MALE RATS.—According to Greep *et al.* (1942) this is a unique test in that it is specific for ICSH and is not affected by the presence of FSH. The assay method has been used

to estimate ICSH activity in animal pituitaries, in male urine and in urine from normally menstruating and post-menopausal women (Simpson *et al.*, 1943; McArthur, 1952; Loraine and Brown, 1954, 1956 *a*). The design of the assay has varied somewhat in different laboratories. Greep *et al.* (1942) commenced injections on the third day after hypophysectomy, while Loraine and Brown (1954) employed a five-day rest period between hypophysectomy and the start of injections. Most workers inject the animals subcutaneously once or twice per day for four days and kill them ninety-six hours after the first injection. In the experience of Loraine and Brown (1954) the precision of the method is greater when the ventral lobe of the prostate, rather than the total gland, is weighed. These investigators found that, with the ventral lobe of the prostate as end point, the figure for the index of precision (λ) was generally less than 0.2; this value would appear to be satisfactory for quantitative work.

This assay method is sufficiently sensitive to estimate urinary ICSH activity in normal and pathological conditions in man. Although the technique is too tedious and too laborious for routine studies, it is probable that valuable information will be obtained by its use in selected patients. Recently Segaloff (1955) has stated that prolactin sensitises the prostate to the action of ICSH and that the assay method may not be as specific as was previously believed. Segaloff's observation has not been confirmed by Diczfalusy and Loraine (1957).

(c) ENLARGEMENT OF THE SEMINAL VESICLES IN HYPOPHYSECTOMISED IMMATURE MALE RATS.—This method has been used to estimate ICSH activity in human urine (McArthur, 1952; Loraine and Brown, 1954). The technique of assay is similar to that described for the prostate. The test is less sensitive than that depending on prostatic weight and is therefore not to be recommended for the assay of urinary ICSH in man.

(d) INCREASE IN ACTIVITY OF THE PROSTATIC ALKALINE PHOSPHATASE IN HYPOPHYSECTOMISED IMMATURE MALE RATS.—This method was described by Schaffenburg and McCullagh (1951) and was used by McCullagh *et al.* (1953) to estimate urinary ICSH activity in patients with eunuchoidism. As described by the authors, the method was at best semi-quantitative and probably did not satisfy the criteria of a valid bio-assay.

TABLE II
METHODS OF ASSAY OF PITUITARY GONADOTROPHINS IN INTACT ANIMALS
(From Loraine, 1956.)

Primary Group.				Secondary Group.			
Animal.	Index of Response.	Material Administered.	Reference.	Animal.	Index of Response.	Material Administered.	Reference.
Immature rat	Ovarian weight	Sheep pituitary extracts	Wallen - Lawrence and Van Dyke (1931)	Immature rat	Uterine weight	Rat pituitary extracts	Heller <i>et al.</i> (1938)
Immature rat	Formation of corpora lutea	Bovine pituitary extracts	Janssen and Loeser (1930)	Immature rat	Vaginal opening	Ox, sheep and swine pituitary extracts	Wallen - Lawrence and Van Dyke (1931)
Immature rat	Ovarian hyperaemia	Human urine	Farris (1946)	Immature rat	Vaginal cornification	Sheep pituitary extracts	D'Amour and (1938)
Immature mouse	Histological changes in ovary	Sheep pituitary extracts	Thomopoulos and Li (1954)	Immature rat	Seminal vesicle weight	Sheep pituitary extracts	Fevold (1939)
Immature mouse	Ovarian hyperaemia	Human urine extracts	Lloyd <i>et al.</i> (1949)	Immature mouse	Uterine weight	Human urine extracts	Levin and Tyndale (1937)
Immature mouse	Ovarian weight	Human urine extracts	Levin and Tyndale (1937)	...	...	...	...
Estrus rabbit	Ovulation	Ox pituitary extracts	Hill <i>et al.</i> (1934)	...	...	...	...
Ring dove	Testicular weight	Ox and dove pituitary extracts	Riddle and Flemion (1928)	...	...	...	...
<i>Xenopus laevis</i>	Expulsion of spermatozoa	Ox pituitary extracts	Hobson and Landgrebe (1954)	...	...	...	...
		Human urine extracts					

4. Non-specific Assay Methods for Pituitary Gonadotrophins.

Such tests generally depend on observations in intact immature rats and mice. Assays can be divided according to whether the effect is primary or secondary. In the primary group the gonads themselves are inspected while in the secondary group the effects result from the liberation of oestrogens or androgens from the gonads. Some of the tests proposed by various investigators are shown in Table II.

Many of these assay methods are not sufficiently sensitive to measure gonadotrophic activity in human non-pregnant urine and will not be discussed by the author. Consideration will be given to the following three methods:

- (a) The mouse uterus test.
- (b) The ovarian hyperæmia test in rats and mice.
- (c) The test depending on the expulsion of spermatozoa in *Xenopus laevis*.

(a) **MOUSE UTERUS TEST.**—This assay method has gained wide popularity for the routine estimation of pituitary gonadotrophins in human urine. It is a highly sensitive test and gives positive results with the majority of urine extracts. Most centres have used the technique described by Klinefelter *et al.* (1943) or some modification thereof. Intact immature mice weighing 8 to 10 g. are injected subcutaneously once or twice per day for three days and are killed approximately seventy-two hours after the first injection. Results of clinical assays are expressed in 'mouse uterine units' of 'FSH' per twenty-four hours, a 'unit' being defined as that quantity necessary to produce a given effect—usually 100 to 150 per cent. increase in uterine weight. The disadvantages of expressing results in 'animal units' has already been mentioned. In addition, it should be emphasised that the mouse uterus test measures a mixture of FSH and ICSH activities and should not be regarded as in any way specific for urinary FSH.

Few estimates are at present available in the literature regarding the precision of this method. In the experience of Loraine and Brown (1954, 1956 *a*) the figure for the index of precision (λ) was generally less than 0.2; this would appear to be satisfactory for quantitative work. In four-point assays in which urinary extracts from males and from non-pregnant

females were compared with HMG there was no significant difference between the slopes of the various log dose-effect curves. This finding supports the view that, when assays are conducted by the mouse uterus test, HMG can be used as a standard preparation for all estimations involving non-pregnant urine.

(b) OVARIAN HYPERÆMIA TEST IN RATS AND MICE.—This technique in rats has been used both for the diagnosis of pregnancy and for the estimation of urinary and serum HCG throughout normal pregnancy (see Chapter III). Farris (1946) has suggested that the test may also be employed in non-pregnant subjects to determine the time of ovulation. Unextracted urine was administered subcutaneously to intact immature rats and the ovaries examined for hyperæmia two hours later. In normal subjects positive reactions were found on three or four successive days of the cycle at a time at which ovulation generally occurs. Other investigators, however, have been unable to confirm Farris's findings and the technique is now little used as a test for ovulation.

Lloyd *et al.* (1949) claim that the mouse is ten to twenty times more sensitive than the rat and have used the mouse hyperæmia test as an assay method for urinary ICSH in non-pregnant individuals. Intact immature mice were injected subcutaneously with urine extracts and the ovaries were examined for hyperæmia after an interval of seven hours. 'Hyperæmia-producing material' was found in relatively large quantities at the time of ovulation. Males excreted less 'hyperæmia-producing material' than normal females and the output was also relatively low in castrate women.

Tests depending on hyperæmia can be criticised mainly on grounds of specificity. Spontaneous reactions are relatively frequent, and the success of the method appears to be largely conditioned by the strain of animal employed. It has been shown by Payne (1951) and by Smith (1955) that cortisone and cortisol interfere significantly with the hyperæmia response to HCG; a similar interference may well occur in the case of FSH and ICSH. Finally, the technique depends on an all-or-none (quantal) rather than a graded response (see Chapter I). Gaddum (1933) and Perry (1950) have shown that for any given degree of accuracy, quantal assays require approximately twice as many observations as assays depending on graded effects.

(c) EXPULSION OF SPERMATOOA IN *XENOPUS LAEVIS*.—Although amphibia are now widely used in the diagnosis of pregnancy, few studies on non-pregnant urine have so far been reported. Recently Hobson and Landgrebe (1954), using male *Xenopus laevis*, have demonstrated gonadotrophic activity in an extract of menopausal urine prepared by the kaolin-acetone method. Further observations with this technique in male and cyclic female urine will be awaited with interest.

EXTRACTION OF GONADOTROPHINS FROM HUMAN NON-PREGNANT URINE

Many methods have been proposed for the preparation of gonadotrophins from human urine. The procedures differ considerably in nature and complexity. Usually, however, they suffer from the common disadvantages that they are laborious and tedious, that considerable loss of gonadotrophic activity may occur during their performance and that the final extracts obtained are often toxic to the experimental animals. The following methods will be briefly discussed:

1. Alcohol precipitation.
2. Acetone precipitation.
3. Tannic acid precipitation.
4. Benzoic acid adsorption.
5. Kaolin adsorption with acetone precipitation.
6. Aluminium hydroxide adsorption.
7. Permutit adsorption.
8. Ultrafiltration.

1. Alcohol Precipitation.

This technique with various modifications has been used by numerous investigators, including Zondek (1931), Heller and Heller (1939) and Klinefelter *et al.* (1943). The pH of the urine is adjusted to 4 to 6, aliquots of urine are precipitated with 4 or 5 volumes of 95 per cent. alcohol and are left to stand overnight. On the following morning the supernatant fluid is removed, the residue centrifuged and the precipitate washed with ether. The powder is dried and is then eluted several times with tap water, the suspension being centrifuged each time and the supernatant fluid retained. Varney and Koch

(1942) found that the yield of gonadotrophic material was greater with alcohol than with tannic acid precipitation. They also showed that crude extracts prepared by alcohol precipitation were less toxic to experimental animals than those prepared by the tannic acid or benzoic acid methods.

In general, the alcohol precipitation technique has given satisfactory results in high-titre urines such as are found at the menopause and in various types of ovarian and testicular failure. However, in low-titre urines, *e.g.*, in males and in normally menstruating women, the crude alcohol extracts are frequently too toxic for routine use. Attempts to reduce toxicity, *e.g.*, by dialysis of the final solution against tap water, may seriously interfere with the yield of gonadotrophins and for this reason are not to be recommended in clinical studies.

2. Acetone Precipitation.

Investigators in the United Kingdom have generally preferred acetone to alcohol as a precipitating agent for reasons of economy (Loraine, 1949, 1950 ; Dekanski, 1949). The technique of extraction is very similar to that described for the alcohol method. In clinical studies satisfactory results are obtained when the excretion of gonadotrophins is high, but in low-titre urines extracts prepared by simple acetone precipitation are frequently toxic to the experimental animals. Attempts to reduce toxicity, *e.g.*, by dialysis, may seriously interfere with the yield of gonadotrophins.

3. Tannic Acid Precipitation.

In the method described by Levin and Tyndale (1936) the *pH* of the urine was adjusted to 5, aliquots of urine were precipitated with an aqueous 10 per cent. tannic acid solution and were centrifuged after standing. The precipitate, which was called the 'crude tannate powder,' was extracted repeatedly with 80 to 95 per cent. alcohol and was washed several times with acetone. The crude material could be purified by repeated extraction with a barium hydroxide-boric acetate mixture at *pH* 9 to 10 followed by acetone precipitation.

Some investigators including Pedersen-Bjergaard (1936) and Levin (1941) have used extracts prepared by tannic acid precipitation in clinical studies. Other workers, however (Heller and Heller, 1939; Varney and Koch, 1942), were

unable to obtain quantitative yields of gonadotrophin by the tannic acid method and found that extracts prepared in this way were too toxic for routine use. In the opinion of the author the tannic acid procedure is more laborious and time-consuming than techniques depending on alcohol precipitation and kaolin adsorption. For this reason tannic acid precipitation cannot be recommended as a routine procedure for the extraction of gonadotrophins from non-pregnant urine.

4. Benzoic Acid Adsorption.

In the procedure described by Katzman and Doisy (1934) the urine was precipitated with acetone saturated with benzoic acid. The precipitate was washed with an aqueous solution of benzoic acid and was dissolved in cold acetone. The acetone-insoluble material containing the gonadotrophins was washed with acetone and dissolved in dilute NaOH. Any insoluble material was removed by centrifugation. The extract was further concentrated by acetone precipitation: the precipitate was dried and was dissolved in the desired volume of water.

Various workers, including Katzman (1937) and Varney and Koch (1942) have compared the alcohol precipitation and benzoic acid adsorption techniques. They found that the yield of gonadotrophins obtained by the benzoic acid method was considerably lower than that by alcohol precipitation. It is evident that the benzoic acid procedure cannot be recommended for the extraction of gonadotrophins from human non-pregnant urine when quantitative assays are required. The method is, however, simple and rapid and is well adapted to industrial conditions where it may be necessary to prepare large quantities of active material.

5. Kaolin Adsorption with Acetone Precipitation.

In 1941, Scott described a method for the extraction of HCG from pregnancy urine. The hormone was adsorbed on kaolin at pH 4 and eluted by 0.1 N-NaOH. Extracts prepared by the original kaolin method are not, however, sufficiently concentrated to permit the estimation of gonadotrophins in non-pregnant urine. Accordingly various workers, including Bradbury *et al.* (1949), Loraine (1949, 1950) and Dekanski (1949) have, after adsorption and elution, precipitated the gonadotrophins by acetone or alcohol. Extracts prepared by

the kaolin-acetone or kaolin-alcohol techniques have proved suitable for administration to intact mice or hypophysectomised rats (McArthur, 1952; Loraine and Brown, 1954, 1956 *a*).

The kaolin-acetone extraction method has recently been reinvestigated by a series of recovery experiments in which HMG and HCG were added to pooled male urine (Loraine

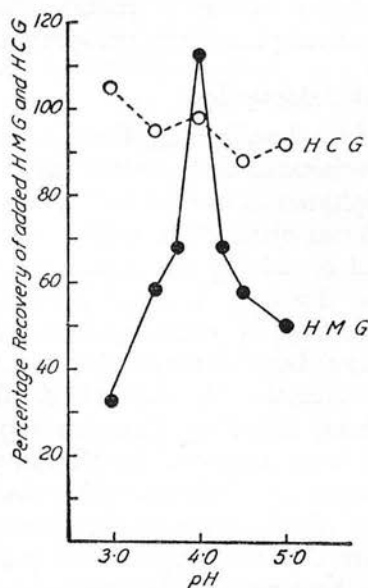


FIG. 6

Relationship between the pH of adsorption on kaolin and the recovery of HMG and HCG added to male urine; pH of elution 11 to 11.5. (From Loraine and Brown, 1954.)

and Brown, 1954). Urine extracts were assayed biologically by the mouse uterus test. The results are shown in Figs. 6 and 7.

It will be noted that, in the case of HMG, accurate control of the pH was essential at both adsorption and elution stages of the procedure. The critical pH for adsorption is 4; when the pH falls to 3.5 or rises to 4.5 approximately 40 per cent. of the material is not adsorbed (Fig. 6). For elution of HMG a pH of 11 to 11.5 is critical; losses of approximately 50 per cent. are encountered at pH's of 10 and 12 (Fig. 7). These results indicate that figures obtained by the kaolin-acetone method

for the excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins in normal and pathological conditions have little quantitative significance unless the optimal pH 's for adsorption and elution have been employed. It is apparent from Figs. 6 and 7 that, for HCG, the pH range for maximal adsorption and elution is wider. Accordingly, when this hormone is extracted from pregnancy urine by the kaolin method the pH 's need not be controlled so accurately.

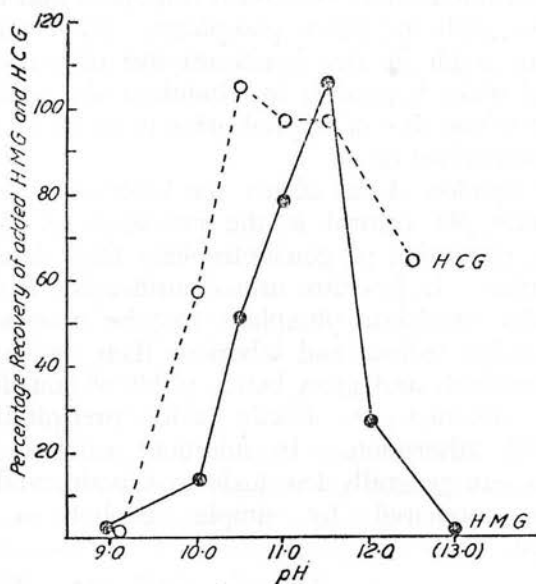


FIG. 7

Relationship between the pH of elution from kaolin and the recovery of HMG and HCG added to male urine; pH of adsorption 3.9 to 4. (From Loraine and Brown, 1954.)

In subsequent studies Loraine and Brown (1956 *a*) extracted gonadotrophins from pooled male urine and from urine collected during the follicular and luteal phases of the normal menstrual cycle. A similar series of recovery experiments were undertaken in which these extracts were added to pooled male urine and their biological activity determined using the mouse uterus test at different stages of the kaolin-acetone procedure. The importance of accurate control of the pH was again emphasised, and it was shown that the optimal pH 's for adsorption and elution of male and cyclic female gonadotrophins were very similar to those for HMG.

Kaolin-acetone powders from low-titre urines are sometimes toxic to experimental animals, especially hypophysectomised rats, since they contain relatively large quantities of inactive substances which are sparingly soluble in water. Further purification of these extracts is therefore necessary and such a procedure has recently been described (Loraine and Brown, 1956 *a*). This involves elution of the crude kaolin-acetone powders with water under controlled conditions and treatment of the eluate with tricalcium phosphate. These purification steps do not result in any significant loss of gonadotrophic activity and make it possible to administer the equivalent of approximately one litre of original urine to an intact mouse or a hypophysectomised rat.

In the opinion of the author the kaolin-acetone method with accurate *pH* control is the procedure of choice for the routine extraction of gonadotrophins from human non-pregnant urine. In low-titre urines purification of the crude material with tricalcium phosphate may be necessary. The technique is less tedious and laborious than the majority of published methods and gives better yields of gonadotrophins than are obtained by tannic acid precipitation and benzoic acid adsorption. In addition, extracts prepared in this way are generally less toxic to experimental animals than those prepared by simple alcohol or acetone precipitation.

6. Aluminium Hydroxide Adsorption.

This technique, which has been described by Malburg and Goodman (1954), is similar in many respects to the kaolin-acetone method. The urinary gonadotrophins were adsorbed on 10 per cent. aluminium hydroxide at *pH* 4 and were eluted by normal NaOH at *pH* 10. The *pH* of the eluant was adjusted to 6 and the hormones precipitated by acetone. The precipitate was separated by centrifugation, washed with ether and taken up in water.

Malburg and Goodman (1954) found this technique both simple and rapid; the yields of gonadotrophins were almost identical with those obtained by the alcohol precipitation-dialysis technique. This procedure appears worthy of a trial as a routine method for the extraction of gonadotrophins from non-pregnant urine.

7. Permutit Adsorption.

Katzman *et al.* (1943) described a chromatographic procedure for the preparation of HCG from pregnancy urine in which the hormone was adsorbed on to permutit and was eluted by ammonium acetate in alcohol. Johnsen (1955 *a, b*) has slightly modified the method and has applied it to the extraction of gonadotrophins from pooled post-menopausal urine. The method is both simple and rapid and yields highly active extracts of low toxicity. In its present form the technique is not suitable for the quantitative extraction of gonadotrophins from twenty-four-hour urine specimens but may be of value for the large-scale preparation of active material.

8. Ultrafiltration.

Gorbman (1945) described a method in which the urinary gonadotrophins were ultrafiltered through a collodion membrane under pressure. When filtration was completed the membrane, along with the protein hormone residue which had not passed through the pores of the membrane, was removed from the filter and placed in an alcohol-ether solution in a centrifuge tube. The alcohol-ether dissolved the collodion membrane and precipitated the gonadotrophins. The solution was then centrifuged, the supernatant fluid discarded, and the residue washed repeatedly with alcohol and with ether. Before bio-assay the dry precipitate was taken up in water or saline. Van Gilse (1955) has recently investigated the role of adsorption in the ultrafiltration procedure and has estimated that 80 to 90 per cent. of the gonadotrophic activity is adsorbed on to the collodion membrane.

Jungck *et al.* (1947) compared the relative merits of the ultrafiltration and alcohol precipitation-dialysis methods. They concluded that the former technique was preferable in that it was less complex, less laborious and less expensive.

POSSIBILITIES OF SEPARATING THE DIFFERENT GONADOTROPHIC FACTORS BY TRICALCIUM PHOSPHATE

1. Separation of HCG from HMG.

Crooke, Butt and their collaborators were the first to fractionate crude kaolin-acetone extracts of urine on tricalcium

phosphate columns (Crooke and Butt, 1952; Crooke *et al.*, 1954). These workers eluted the gonadotrophins from the columns by disodium hydrogen phosphate (Na_2HPO_4) and by trisodium phosphate (Na_3PO_4). The material eluted by disodium hydrogen phosphate was referred to as Gonadotrophin A (GA) and that eluted by trisodium phosphate as Gonadotrophin B (GB).¹ Assays of the eluates by biological methods showed

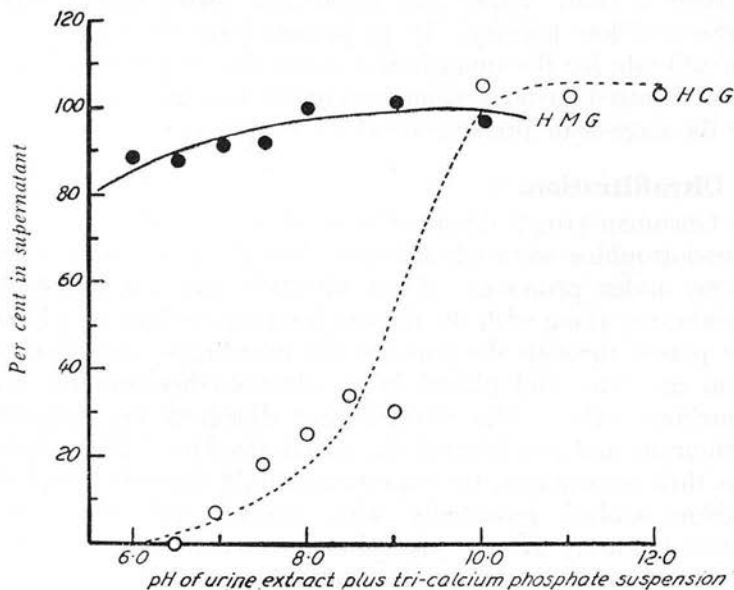


FIG. 8

Relationship between the pH and the adsorption of HMG and HCG on tricalcium phosphate. (From Loraine and Brown, 1954.)

that GA was excreted predominantly at the menopause and at certain times during the normal menstrual cycle while GB was the main gonadotrophin in the urine of pregnant women.

Loraine and Brown (1954) have recently studied the tricalcium phosphate procedure as a means of separating HMG from HCG. For the assay of HCG the test depending on the enlargement of the prostate in intact immature rats was used: HMG activity was estimated by the mouse uterus test. The results are shown in Fig. 8.

¹ In the opinion of the author the terms 'GA' and 'GB' are unfortunate in that they may be confused with 'prolan A' and 'prolan B' to which they bear no relationship.

It will be noted that the adsorption of the gonadotrophins on tricalcium phosphate was influenced markedly by the pH of the solutions. HMG was not adsorbed to any appreciable extent on tricalcium phosphate at pH 's above 6 and HCG was adsorbed completely below pH 7. The adsorption of HCG on tricalcium phosphate decreased as the pH increased and no adsorption occurred at pH 10 and above. These results indicated that the separation of HMG from HCG was possible by differential adsorption on tricalcium phosphate.

It is possible that this separation technique might prove of value in testing for the presence of pituitary gonadotrophins in pregnancy urine and in assessing whether the pituitary contributes significantly to the very high gonadotrophin titre in human urine in the first trimester of normal pregnancy and to the abnormally high excretion of gonadotrophin found in some patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia and pregnancy complicated by diabetes. Various workers, including Hasenbein (1952) and Lyon *et al.* (1953), have claimed that human pregnancy urine contains FSH activity. This interesting observation requires confirmation.

2. Separation of Human Urinary FSH from Human Urinary ICSH.

In their earlier communications Crooke and his co-workers suggested that the tricalcium phosphate technique might be a means of separating human urinary FSH from human urinary ICSH. This suggestion was not borne out by the findings of Loraine and Brown (1954, 1956 *a*) who prepared crude kaolin-acetone powders from post-menopausal urine, from male urine and from follicular phase and luteal phase female urine and treated the crude extracts with tricalcium phosphate. These workers found that all the extracts prepared in this way contained relatively large amounts of ICSH activity as estimated by the ventral prostatic weight test in hypophysectomised immature rats. A typical dose-effect curve for HMG is shown in Fig. 9.

In view of these observations it appears reasonable to conclude that treatment of urine extracts with tricalcium phosphate does not effect any separation of human urinary FSH from human urinary ICSH.

As emphasised previously the tricalcium phosphate

purification step is of considerable value in reducing the toxicity of crude kaolin-acetone extracts. By incorporating this step in

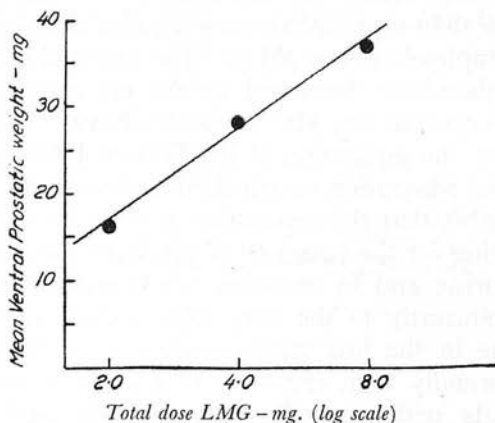


FIG. 9

Relationship between the log dose of HMG and the ventral prostatic weight in hypophysectomised immature rats—weight of ventral prostate in uninjected animals=8 mg. (From Loraine and Brown, 1954.)

the extraction procedure it is possible to administer to intact mice and to hypophysectomised rats total doses equivalent to approximately one litre of original urine.

CHEMICAL ESTIMATION OF URINARY GONADOTROPHINS

Many investigators have emphasised the desirability of estimating urinary gonadotrophins by chemical means in order to avoid laborious and time-consuming bio-assay procedures, and with this end in view various attempts have been made to find some chemical property which consistently parallels biological activity. For example, Bowman (1941) studied the oxidation-reduction characteristics of HCG. He found that the hormone became biologically inactive when treated with oxidising agents and that activity could be restored by reducing agents; it was suggested that the reducing capacity of HCG might be used as the basis of a chemical test for the diagnosis of pregnancy. Maxwell and Bischoff (1935) showed that reagents known to react with amino groups caused partial or

complete inhibition of the biological activity of pituitary gonadotrophins. Various workers, including Li (1949), have stated that the hexose content of the gonadotrophin molecule is important in relation to biological activity. Stran and Jones (1954) and Crooke *et al.* (1954) have attempted to estimate gonadotrophins by testing urinary extracts for proteins and sugars, but there is at present no evidence to support the view that the excretion of these groups of substances in the urine does in any way reflect the output of gonadotrophins as measured by bio-assay.

Until chemical methods of assay become more specific they cannot replace biological techniques in the estimation of urinary gonadotrophins for clinical purposes.

A QUANTITATIVE METHOD FOR THE ROUTINE DETERMINATION OF GONADOTROPHINS IN HUMAN NON-PREGNANT URINE

Such a technique has recently been developed by Loraine and Brown (1956 *a, b*). The main steps are as follows :

1. Extraction of the urine by the kaolin-acetone method with accurate control of the pH at all stages of the procedure.
2. In low-titre urines treatment of the crude kaolin-acetone powders with tricalcium phosphate in order to reduce the toxicity of the extracts.
3. Bio-assay by the mouse uterus test.
4. Expression of results in terms of human menopausal gonadotrophin (HMG) as 'HMG units per twenty-four hours.' At the second meeting of the Gonadotrophin Club (Birmingham, England, 1955) it was suggested that the Organon preparation HMG-20A might be adopted as a provisional standard and that one unit should be defined as the activity contained in 1 mg. of HMG-20A.

The technique is sufficiently sensitive to measure the gonadotrophin excretion in normal and pathological conditions in man. The end point of the bio-assay is not specific for either FSH or ICSH and gives a measure of what may be conveniently termed 'total gonadotrophic activity.' In the

experience of the authors the bio-assay method is relatively precise and has an index of precision (λ) which is generally below 0.2. In experiments in which HMG was added to pooled male and cyclic female urine and extracted and assayed as described above, the recoveries for the whole method varied from 52 to 92 per cent. with a mean figure of 76 per cent. (Loraine, 1957 *a*). This figure was considered to be reasonably satisfactory considering the many steps involved in the extraction procedure and the additional inherent error of the bio-assay.

THE EXCRETION OF GONADOTROPHINS IN NORMAL NON-PREGNANT SUBJECTS

Existing methods of estimation of pituitary gonadotrophins for clinical purposes are very unsatisfactory and take the form of qualitative tests rather than quantitative assays. Most workers express results in 'animal units'—usually 'mouse uterine units'—and for this reason it is not possible to compare results from different laboratories. Accordingly, at the time of writing it would be misleading to quote normal figures in units for the excretion of gonadotrophins in non-pregnant subjects. The introduction of a standard preparation such as HMG-20A should increase considerably the reliability of such determinations and should make it possible to compare directly results from different centres.

1. Children.

All investigators agree that the gonadotrophic activity in the urine of children and adolescents is very low. One of the most detailed studies in the literature is that of Nathanson *et al.* (1941). These workers extracted gonadotrophins from urine by alcohol precipitation and their bio-assay end point depended on the production of follicular stimulation in the ovaries of intact immature mice. In boys no activity was detected before the age of thirteen, but in girls positive results were generally obtained at the age of eleven. It was noted that in girls activity was often detected approximately one year before the onset of menstruation. In a study of the gonadotrophin excretion in young and adolescent boys Catchpole *et al.* (1938) concluded that the titre was related to developmental status rather than to chronological age.

It would be of considerable interest to study the gonadotrophin excretion before and during puberty using the more reliable methods of extraction and bio-assay now available.

2. Normally Menstruating Women.

The gonadotrophin excretion during the normal menstrual cycle has been studied by numerous investigators including Smith and Smith (1936), Klinefelter *et al.* (1943) and Pedersen-Bjergaard and Tønnesen (1948). It is generally stated that the output is low in the follicular and luteal phases and that a peak of excretion occurs at or about the time of ovulation. D'Amour (1943) attempted to determine the time of ovulation by a variety of tests including basal temperature records, vaginal smears and the excretion of oestrogens, pregnanediol and gonadotrophins. He claimed that the gonadotrophin peak was the most reliable index that ovulation had occurred. This view has been challenged by Heller *et al.* (1944) who found that the pattern of gonadotrophin excretion was very variable from one patient to another and concluded that the stage of the ovarian cycle and the time of ovulation could not be predicted by estimating the output of urinary gonadotrophins. A similar conclusion was reached by Main *et al.* (1943) who reported the presence of two gonadotrophin peaks in a proportion of their cases.

It is evident that little is at present known regarding the normal pattern of excretion of gonadotrophins during the menstrual cycle. Much further work with improved methods of extraction and bio-assay is required before the range of normal is definitely established. Single random estimates of gonadotrophin output are of little value and may even be misleading; they should be replaced by serial determinations in individual cases.

On the basis of assays involving histological changes in the ovaries of hypophysectomised immature rats it has been stated that female urine is predominantly follicle-stimulating in nature (Bahn *et al.*, 1953). More recent work by McArthur (1952) and by Loraine and Brown (1956 *a*), using the prostate test in hypophysectomised rats, has demonstrated that normal female urine at all stages of the cycle contains significant amounts of ICSH activity.

3. Normal Men.

Gonadotrophic activity has been detected in male urine by numerous investigators including Leatham and Levin (1941) and Klinefelter *et al.* (1943). The amount excreted is generally somewhat higher than that in normally menstruating women during the follicular and luteal phases of the cycle.

Few reports are available in the literature regarding the excretion of gonadotrophins in men at different ages, but there is no evidence to suggest that the output rises significantly with advancing years. The most careful study is probably that of Schou (1951) who found that the output remained relatively constant in normal men between the ages of thirty-nine and sixty-three. This worker concluded that in the male there was no equivalent of the female menopause at which time the excretion of gonadotrophins generally rises steeply.

Male gonadotrophins resemble female gonadotrophins in their biological properties, and most workers have stated that they are predominantly follicle-stimulating in nature (Fraenkel-Conrat *et al.*, 1940). More recent work by Loraine and Brown (1956 *a*) has shown that a relatively large amount of ICSH activity is also present.

4. Post-menopausal Women.

All investigators agree that the gonadotrophin titre in blood and urine is greatly elevated at and beyond the menopause. This is believed to represent an attempt on the part of the pituitary to stimulate unresponsive ovaries; a similar effect occurs after castration in men and women. The relationship between the gonadotrophin excretion and the development and severity of menopausal symptoms will be discussed later in this chapter.

Few studies have so far been reported of the gonadotrophin excretion in post-menopausal subjects. One of the more detailed investigations is that of Heller and Shipley (1951). These workers were unable to show any correlation between the gonadotrophin output on the one hand and the chronological age of the patient on the other. They did, however, find that a relationship existed between the amount excreted and the duration of time since the onset of the menopause. In patients who were less than twenty-five years beyond the menopause the mean excretion was significantly higher than

in those in whom the menopause occurred more than twenty-five years before the investigation. The mean output in the latter group, however, was still considerably higher than that found in women during reproductive life.

Much experimental work has been carried out on the biological properties of menopausal and post-menopausal gonadotrophins. In intact and hypophysectomised rats these hormones are potent stimulators of follicular growth without much effect on the interstitial tissue and this has led to the assumption that the material is predominantly, if not entirely, follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH). Borth *et al.* (1954) and Loraine and Brown (1954), using the prostate test in hypophysectomised rats, have recently demonstrated that HMG is, in addition, a relatively rich source of ICSH activity.

THE EXCRETION OF PITUITARY GONADOTROPHINS IN PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

1. Disorders of Menstruation.

At the present time no reliable information is available in the literature regarding the gonadotrophin excretion in patients with menstrual abnormalities. In the few studies which have been undertaken the methods of extraction and bio-assay employed have been far from satisfactory, and it is debatable whether the results reported are of any value whatsoever from the quantitative point of view. It must be emphasised that many difficulties have been encountered by investigators who have attempted to assay urinary gonadotrophins in these patients. The chief of these has been the lack of a method sufficiently sensitive to detect activity in such low-titre urines, while another formidable obstacle to clinical progress has been the necessity for conducting serial determinations instead of single random estimations in individual cases.

In view of these problems it is not surprising that until now urinary gonadotrophin assays have proved of little value to the gynaecologist in the differential diagnosis of patients with various types of menstrual abnormalities. However, the outlook for the future is not unpromising. During recent years methods for the determination of pituitary gonadotrophins in urine have become more sensitive and more precise (see p. 39) and, as a consequence, it should soon be possible to obtain

reliable and useful information by assays conducted on low-titre as well as on high-titre urines. Accordingly, it can be stated with some confidence that, with the passage of time, gonadotrophin assays will play an increasingly important role in gynæcological practice. The information obtained from such assays will almost certainly be of considerable clinical value in relation to the diagnosis, prognosis and treatment of patients with gynæcological disorders.

(a) AMENORRHŒA.—Gonadotrophin assays in such patients may be expected to provide information which is of value in differentiating amenorrhœa resulting from pituitary failure from amenorrhœa due to ovarian deficiency. In 'pituitary amenorrhœa' the excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins is generally very low and often no activity can be detected even by the mouse uterus test; on the other hand 'ovarian amenorrhœa' is usually associated with a greatly increased output of urinary gonadotrophins.

Fluhmann (1929) found gonadotrophic activity in the blood of six out of seventeen patients with amenorrhœa. In the ten patients studied by Frank *et al.* (1937) four showed abnormally high blood levels and in six no activity could be detected. Pedersen-Bjergaard and Tønnesen (1951) estimated the urinary excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins in 110 patients with primary amenorrhœa and in 221 cases of secondary amenorrhœa. These workers extracted the hormones from urine by tannic acid precipitation and conducted bio-assays using the mouse uterus test. They found that in the patients with primary amenorrhœa 35 per cent. had abnormally high readings, and that in 65 per cent. the excretion was within or below the normal range. In cases of secondary amenorrhœa the corresponding figures were 34 and 66 per cent.

It is not known whether, in amenorrhœic subjects, the gonadotrophin output remains relatively constant over long periods of time or shows evidence of cyclical variations. Serial determinations in such patients might well give information of clinical importance.

(b) DYSFUNCTIONAL UTERINE HÆMORRHAGE.—This is a general term used to denote all forms of abnormal menstrual bleeding for which no organic cause can be found. The subject is discussed more fully in Chapter IX.

The condition known as *metropathia hæmorrhagica* is a member

of this group which occurs relatively frequently in clinical practice. In this disease the main symptom is continuous bleeding which may last for many weeks; ovulation does not occur and the endometrium shows cystic hyperplasia without any evidence of secretory activity. The ætiology of the condition is not known with certainty. It has, however, been suggested that, in metropathia, there may be an abnormally low secretion of pituitary FSH and ICSH and that this deficiency may result in failure of ovulation and lack of formation of the corpus luteum. Swyer (1950) has put forward the alternative view that in this disease the mode of secretion of the pituitary gonadotrophins may be different from that in normal individuals. He suggests that, in normally menstruating women, FSH and ICSH are produced in a cyclic fashion while in patients with metropathia there is a relatively constant secretion of FSH which eventually causes bleeding from a proliferative endometrium. It must be emphasised that neither of these hypotheses has as yet been substantiated by hormone assay findings in blood and urine. The suggestions are of interest, but in the present state of our knowledge they should be accepted with some reserve.

There have been few reports on the gonadotrophin excretion in patients with the various forms of dysfunctional uterine hæmorrhage. The field is one which would repay careful study. The most extensive investigation at present available is probably that of Pedersen-Bjergaard and Tønnesen (1951) who determined the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins in 222 patients with various types of menstrual anomaly other than amenorrhœa. Great variations in output in individual cases were noted, but the majority of the readings lay within the normal range. Unfortunately the precision of the bio-assay method employed by these investigators was probably not high and it is doubtful if much quantitative significance can be attached to the results they obtained.

(c) **DYSMENORRHŒA.**—Gonadotrophin assays by reliable methods have not yet been reported in patients with this condition.

2. The Menopausal Syndrome.

There is a great body of evidence in the literature to support the view that, at the menopause, the urinary excretion and

serum concentration of pituitary gonadotrophins are greatly increased. As early as 1929 Fluhmann, using the Aschheim-Zondek test, demonstrated that the serum of menopausal and oöphorectomised subjects contained relatively large amounts of gonadotrophic activity. A similar conclusion was reached by Zondek (1930) who conducted assays on urine extracts rather than blood.

Numerous theories have been advanced with respect to the relationship of hormone secretion to menopausal symptoms, particularly flushings. One of these suggests that the symptoms result from a decrease in the levels of circulating oestrogens. This theory is discussed in Chapter IX. Another view is that the symptoms are caused directly by the over-production of pituitary gonadotrophins. The evidence for and against this 'theory of gonadotrophin excess' will now be briefly considered.

According to Albright (1936) there is a definite correlation between the gonadotrophin titre on the one hand and the severity of symptoms on the other. This worker, using rather unreliable assay methods, claimed that in patients with very high gonadotrophin levels in blood and urine hot flushes were more severe and occurred more frequently. This finding has not been confirmed by other investigators and there is now much evidence to support the view that high gonadotrophin levels play little or no part in the genesis of menopausal symptoms. The main objections to the 'theory of gonadotrophin excess' have been reviewed by Fluhmann (1944) and are as follows:

(a) High gonadotrophin readings occur in menopausal and post-menopausal women in the absence of symptoms. The titre remains high long after menopausal symptoms have disappeared.

(b) Various conditions which usually show high gonadotrophin levels in blood and urine are not associated with menopausal symptoms. These conditions include Turner's syndrome, Klinefelter's syndrome and pre-pubertal gonadal failure.

(c) Improvement of menopausal symptoms can be produced by small doses of oestrogens, by sedatives or by pituitary irradiation without affecting the gonadotrophin levels in blood and urine.

(d) Menopausal symptoms have occasionally been observed in patients with gonadal failure secondary to pituitary failure. In cases of this type the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins is abnormally low.

The biological properties of menopausal and post-menopausal gonadotrophins have already been discussed (see p. 43). It is probable that, at the menopause, both FSH and ICSH are excreted in relatively large quantities.

3. Ovarian Deficiency.

It has already been emphasised that the excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins in urine is abnormally high in the presence of ovarian failure such as occurs at the menopause or after irradiation of the ovaries. Ovarian deficiency is, however, probably best exemplified by the rare condition known variously as 'ovarian agenesis,' 'ovarian dwarfism' or *Turner's syndrome*. Since the original description of this disease by Turner (1938) the clinical features and hormone excretion in such patients have been studied by numerous investigators. In classical cases the main clinical features include sexual infantilism, short stature, diminished pubic and axillary hair, rudimentary or absent ovaries, amenorrhœa and various congenital defects such as webbing of the neck, ocular lesions, mental retardation, congenital deafness, coarctation of the aorta, cubitus valgus, pes cavus and spina bifida. Polani *et al.* (1954) have recently demonstrated that the skin of patients with Turner's syndrome has a chromosomal pattern which is characteristically seen in males. These workers have suggested that in fact such patients are genetic males.

Hormone studies have generally shown (a) diminished output of urinary oestrogens, (b) diminished output of urinary 17-ketosteroids, (c) abnormally high levels of urinary gonadotrophins. In some patients studied the urinary gonadotrophin titre has been in the same range as that encountered in menopausal and post-menopausal subjects.

Little or no information is at present available on the biological nature of the gonadotrophins excreted in Turner's syndrome since most assays have been made with the mouse uterus test which is not specific either for FSH or for ICSH activity. Studies in hypophysectomised male and female rats will be awaited with interest.

4. Ovarian Tumours.

Gonadotrophin assays by reliable methods have not yet been reported in patients with these neoplasms. Greene (1950) states that in cases of feminising ovarian tumour, *e.g.*, granulosa-cell tumour, the excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins is very low and that after removal of the neoplasm the urinary titre rises. Hain (1949) conducted hormone excretion studies on a child with a dysgerminoma of the ovary ; the only abnormality found was an increased output of urinary gonadotrophin as indicated by a strongly positive Aschheim-Zondek test.

It is obvious that much further work is required before any conclusions can be drawn regarding the clinical value of gonadotrophin assays in patients with ovarian tumours. The field is one which might repay careful investigation.

5. Testicular Deficiency.

Pituitary gonadotrophin assays in patients with testicular deficiency can be used to differentiate primary testicular failure from testicular failure secondary to lesions of the pituitary. In the latter group of patients the output of urinary gonadotrophins is usually very low, while in the former abnormally large quantities are generally excreted. Nelson (1948), Howard *et al.* (1950) and others have stated that this subdivision into primary and secondary gonadal failure may be of importance from the therapeutic point of view. Cases of secondary gonadal failure might, in theory at least, be expected to respond favourably to treatment with such preparations of gonadotrophins as are at present available ; cases of primary gonadal failure, on the other hand, already show abnormally high gonadotrophin levels in blood and urine and should probably be treated *ab initio* by androgens. For further information on the various aspects of testicular failure the reader is referred to a recent review by Bishop (1954).

Albright and his collaborators in Boston, and Nelson and his associates in Iowa, have studied the urinary excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins in a large number of patients with various types of testicular failure. In 142 cases observed by the Albright group (Howard *et al.*, 1950) the gonadotrophin excretion was below normal in 26 per cent., normal in 28 per cent. and abnormally high in 46 per cent. These three

groups were termed respectively 'eunuchoidism with low FSH,' 'eunuchoidism with normal FSH' and 'eunuchoidism with high FSH.' This classification is rather unsatisfactory in view of the fact that the bio-assay method used by these investigators (the mouse uterus test) is not specific for urinary FSH.

Nelson (1953) divides cases of testicular deficiency with the clinical features of eunuchoidism into two groups, depending on the gonadotrophin excretion. These groups he terms respectively 'hypogonadotrophic eunuchoidism' and 'hypergonadotrophic eunuchoidism.' In a study of 148 patients Heller and Nelson (1948) reported that 62 per cent. of their cases showed an abnormally low excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins while the remaining 38 per cent. showed raised excretion figures.

Two special syndromes associated with testicular failure merit special consideration. These are the conditions which have been termed respectively *Klinefelter's syndrome* and the *male climacteric*.

KLINEFELTER'S SYNDROME.—In 1942 Klinefelter *et al.* described a group of patients in whom the presenting features were gynæcomastia, small testes and sterility in association with varying degrees of impairment of androgenic function. Testicular biopsy showed hyalinisation of the seminiferous tubules with destruction of the Sertoli cells, apparently normal Leydig cells and azoöspemia. The condition, which is relatively rare, occurs at puberty or during adolescence; the male climacteric supervenes in all cases by the age of twenty-five. Hormone assay studies showed that the urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids was within or slightly below the normal range and that the output of pituitary gonadotrophins as measured by the mouse uterus test was greatly increased. The cause of the disease is unknown, and none of the theories suggested for the endocrine abnormalities in these patients is entirely satisfactory. A similar syndrome without gynæcomastia has been reported by Heller and Nelson (1945), while del Castillo *et al.* (1947) have described a group of patients in whom absence of spermatogenesis without impairment of Leydig cell function was associated with normal levels of urinary gonadotrophins.

No information is at present available on the biological nature of the gonadotrophins excreted in Klinefelter's syndrome,

since most assays have been made using the mouse uterus test. Such information can only be obtained by the use of hypophysectomised animals.

THE MALE CLIMACTERIC.—In this condition the functional activity of the Leydig cells is impaired and the production of testicular androgen diminished. The main clinical features are hot flushes, impotence, loss of libido, weakness and excessive fatigue. Numerous investigators including Howard *et al.* (1950) have claimed that in cases of this syndrome the urinary excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins is abnormally high.

6. Testicular Tumours.

Careful and detailed studies of the gonadotrophin excretion in over 400 patients with testicular tumours have been made by Hamburger and his co-workers in Copenhagen (Hamburger and Godtfredsen, 1941; Hamburger, 1946). The bio-assay methods employed by these investigators to differentiate the various types of gonadotrophins depended on histological changes in the ovaries of intact immature mice and on the increase in ovarian weight in intact immature rats. The following account is based on Hamburger's observations.

Certain malignant tumours, *e.g.*, chorionepithelioma and related tumours classified as mixed epitheliomas, contain syncytial trophoblastic-like cells and were shown to excrete human chorionic gonadotrophin (HCG). Gonadotrophin assays in patients with this type of tumour are discussed in Chapter III. Cases of seminoma, on the other hand, excreted abnormally large quantities of gonadotrophins which were qualitatively indistinguishable from those excreted by menopausal and post-menopausal subjects. The excretion of these hormones did not cease after removal of the tumour and bore no relationship to the presence or absence of metastases. In addition, gonadotrophic activity could not be detected either in extracts of the seminoma itself or in metastatic deposits from the primary tumour. In view of these findings it was concluded that the anterior pituitary and not the tumour tissue was responsible for the elaboration of the hormones. The cause of the increased excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins in cases of seminoma is not yet known. Hamburger (1946) has suggested that this effect may be secondary to the decreased production of androgenic hormones by the testis.

7. Acromegaly.

There are few reports in the literature regarding the excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins in patients with this condition. Klinefelter *et al.* (1943) conducted assays in ten such patients and found the excretion to be very variable in that normal, low and high readings were found. It is reasonable to assume that the amount of gonadotrophin excreted depended greatly on the stage in the evolution of the disease at which the determination was made. In early cases, when the clinical features are those of hyperpituitarism, high urinary readings are to be expected. On the other hand, in the later stages of the condition, when symptoms of hypopituitarism supervene, the excretion will tend to be below the normal range.

8. Panhypopituitarism.

All investigators agree that in this condition the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins is abnormally low. Usually no activity can be detected even when highly concentrated urine extracts are assayed by relatively sensitive biological methods such as the mouse uterus test. The largest series of cases reported is probably that of Klinefelter *et al.* (1943) who, in fourteen patients, found that the mean excretion of urinary gonadotrophins was much lower than that obtained in normal men or in normally menstruating women of a comparable age group. Results similar to those of Klinefelter *et al.* (1943) were obtained by Easterling *et al.* (1951). It has been rightly emphasised by many workers that the diagnosis of panhypopituitarism should be made only if no gonadotrophic activity is detected in the urine by the mouse uterus test. If such activity is present the diagnosis should be carefully reviewed and probably discarded.

9. Mammary Carcinoma.

Segaloff *et al.* (1954) have claimed that the gonadotrophin excretion may be of prognostic significance in patients suffering from mammary carcinoma. These workers have stated that, if, prior to treatment, the urinary gonadotrophin output is below the range normally expected for the age of the patient, the response to various forms of therapy tends to be unsatisfactory. It must be emphasised that the assay methods used



by Segaloff *et al.* (1954) are open to criticism, and for this reason their claims must be accepted with some reserve.

In a recent study in Edinburgh the gonadotrophin excretion has been estimated in approximately fifty post-menopausal subjects with mammary carcinoma before treatment with stilbœstrol (Loraine, 1957 *b*; Loraine *et al.*, 1957). After a course of therapy lasting six weeks the patients were classified into three groups depending on their response; these groups were designated (*a*) 'worse,' (*b*) 'no apparent change' and (*c*) 'improved.' It was found that in patients classified as 'worse' the mean gonadotrophin excretion before treatment was significantly higher than that obtained in patients classified either as 'no apparent change' or 'improved.' A comparison was also made of the gonadotrophin output in patients with mammary carcinoma with that of a group of subjects of similar age suffering from diseases other than cancer. It was found that the mean excretion value in the 'worse' group was significantly higher than that in the 'control series,' while in the groups designated 'no apparent change' and 'improved' such a difference was not demonstrated. The reason for the abnormally high gonadotrophin output in the group of patients classified as 'worse' is obscure. The problem is one for future elucidation.

THE EFFECTS OF VARIOUS FORMS OF TREATMENT ON THE URINARY EXCRETION OF PITUITARY GONADOTROPHINS

1. Œstrogens.

It is well established that œstrogens, if administered to patients in sufficiently large dosage, will inhibit the secretion of pituitary gonadotrophins and thereby cause a decreased urinary excretion of these hormones. Typical responses are shown in Figs. 10 and 11 (Loraine, 1957 *a, c*) which demonstrate the effect of relatively large dosages of oral stilbœstrol on the gonadotrophin excretion in two post-menopausal subjects suffering from mammary carcinoma. Bio-assays were conducted, using the mouse uterus test, and results were expressed in terms of HMG-20A.

It will be noted that stilbœstrol produced a rapid fall in the gonadotrophin output and that this fall persisted as long

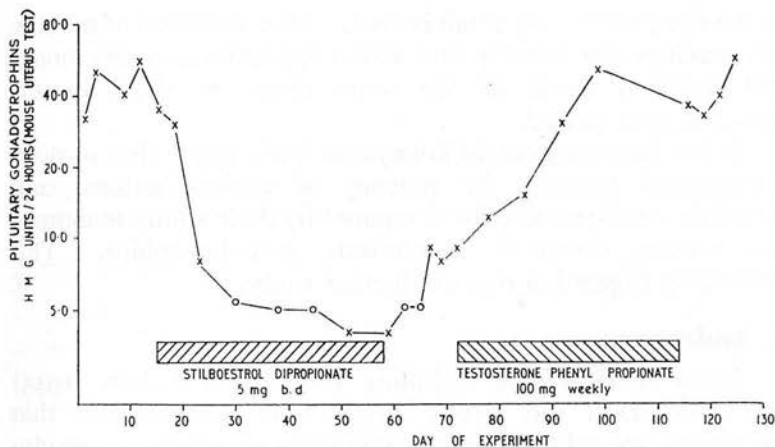


FIG. 10

The effect of stilboestrol and testosterone on the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins in a post-menopausal subject with mammary carcinoma. (Mrs M. F., *et. 62.*) The open circles denote that the reading was actually "less than" the figure quoted. (From Loraine, 1957 c.)

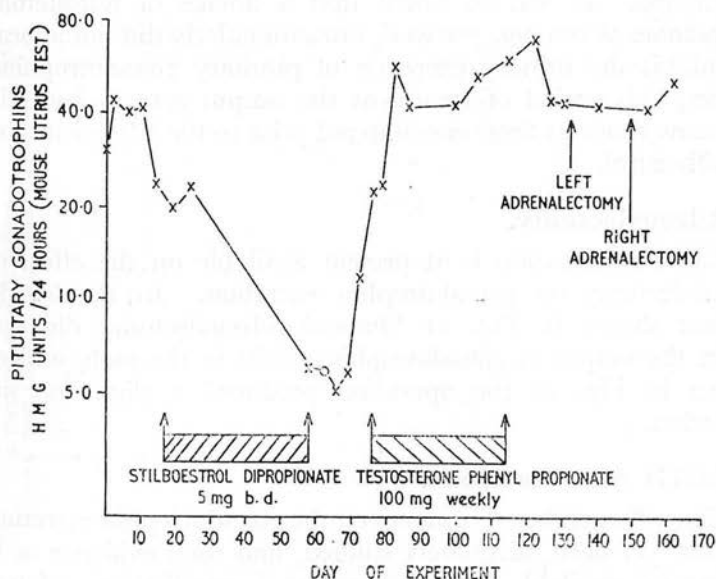


FIG. 11

The effect of stilboestrol, testosterone and bilateral adrenalectomy on the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins in a post-menopausal subject with mammary carcinoma. (Miss J. D., *et. 57.*) The open circle denotes that the reading was actually "less than" the figure quoted. (From Loraine, 1957 a.)

as the drug was being administered. After cessation of therapy the readings rose steadily and within approximately one month had reached levels in the same range as those in the pre-treatment period.

It has been suggested (Tokuyama *et al.*, 1954) that in post-menopausal patients the potency of various natural and synthetic oestrogens may be compared by their ability to depress the urinary excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins. This interesting suggestion requires further study.

2. Androgens.

Many investigators, including Heller and Nelson (1945) and McCullagh and Hruby (1949) have demonstrated that androgens are relatively weak inhibitors of pituitary gonadotrophin secretion. This observation is borne out by the results presented in Figs. 10 and 11 which show the effect of testosterone as well as stilboestrol on the gonadotrophin excretion in two post-menopausal subjects with mammary carcinoma. It will be noted that a dosage of testosterone propionate of 100 mg. per week intramuscularly did not appear to inhibit the urinary excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins. During this period of treatment the output rose to levels in the same range as those encountered prior to the administration of stilboestrol.

3. Adrenalectomy.

Little information is at present available on the effect of adrenalectomy on gonadotrophin excretion. In the female patient shown in Fig. 11 bilateral adrenalectomy did not affect the output of gonadotrophins while in the male subject shown in Fig. 12 the operation produced a slight rise in excretion.

4. ACTH and Cortisone.

The effect of these hormones on the gonadotrophin excretion has not yet been adequately studied, and such evidence as is at present available in the literature is conflicting. Mason *et al.* (1948) and Sprague *et al.* (1950) conducted assays in a very small number of subjects before and after therapy with ACTH and cortisone and stated that these hormones had no demonstrable effect on the gonadotrophin output. On the

other hand Sohval and Soffer (1951), in a more detailed study involving twenty-two patients, found that both ACTH and cortisone produced an increase in the gonadotrophin excretion in approximately 50 per cent. of cases.

Now that more reliable methods are available for the quantitative determination of gonadotrophins in non-pregnant urine, this subject should be reinvestigated.

5. Thyroid Hormone.

Statland and Lerman (1950) reported that, in post-menopausal subjects with myxœdema, treatment with thyroid extract produced a rise in the gonadotrophin excretion. This observation was not confirmed by Beierwaltes and Bishop (1954), who could demonstrate no consistent change in gonadotrophin levels in a comparable group of subjects so treated. It is probable that these divergent findings can be explained on a methodological basis.

6. Castration.

It is well known that the gonadotrophin excretion rises after both oöphorectomy and orchidectomy. In Fig. 12

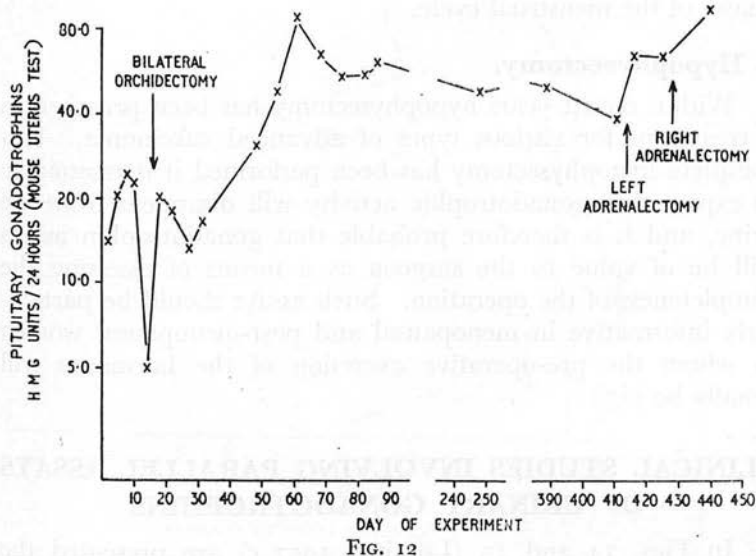


FIG. 12

The effect of bilateral orchidectomy and bilateral adrenalectomy on the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins in a male patient with mammary carcinoma. (Mr J. C., *et. 70.*) (From Loraine, 1957 *a.*)

(Loraine, 1957 *a*) is shown the effect of bilateral orchidectomy on the gonadotrophin output in a male patient with mammary carcinoma.

It will be noted that the level began to rise approximately one month after the operation and that after two months a threefold increase in excretion values had occurred over those in the pre-operative period.

7. Ovarian Irradiation.

The effect on gonadotrophin excretion is similar to that produced by oöphorectomy. A typical example in a pre-menopausal patient with mammary carcinoma is shown in Fig. 13.

In this subject the excretion was studied first during a normal menstrual cycle and secondly subsequent to ovarian irradiation. It will be noted that readings in the follicular and luteal phases of the cycle were very low and that a peak of excretion occurred at approximately mid-cycle. Immediately after ovarian irradiation the excretion values rose steeply and approximately one month after radiotherapy were some twenty times higher than those found in the follicular and luteal phases of the menstrual cycle.

8. Hypophysectomy.

Within recent years hypophysectomy has been practised as a treatment for various types of advanced carcinoma. If a complete hypophysectomy has been performed it is reasonable to expect that gonadotrophic activity will disappear from the urine, and it is therefore probable that gonadotrophin assays will be of value to the surgeon as a means of assessing the completeness of the operation. Such assays should be particularly informative in menopausal and post-menopausal women in whom the pre-operative excretion of the hormones will usually be high.

CLINICAL STUDIES INVOLVING PARALLEL ASSAYS OF URINARY GONADOTROPHINS

In Figs. 14 and 15 (Loraine, 1957 *c*) are presented the results obtained when urinary gonadotrophin estimations are performed in the same patients using two different assay

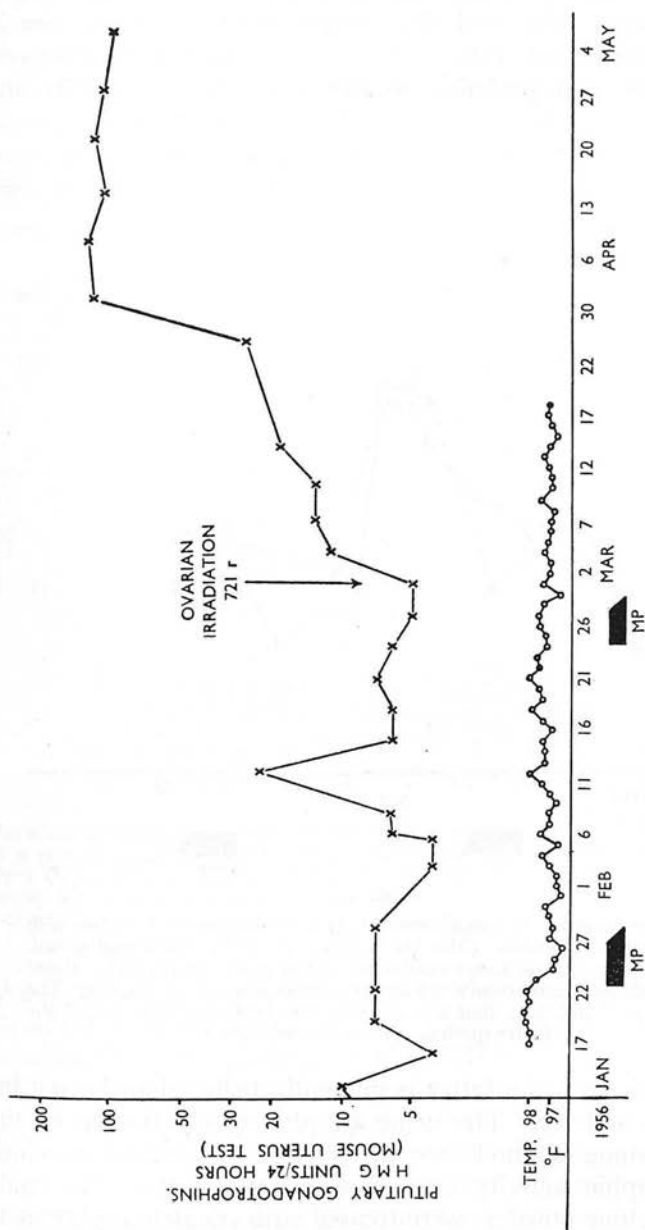


FIG. 13

The effect of ovarian irradiation on the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins in a pre-menopausal subject with mammary carcinoma. (Mrs A. R., *et. al.* 41.) M.P. = menstrual period. (From *Loraine*, 1957 *a.*)

methods. The methods employed were the uterine weight test in intact mice and the ventral prostatic weight test in hypophysectomised rats. The former method is relatively non-specific and probably measures a mixture of FSH and

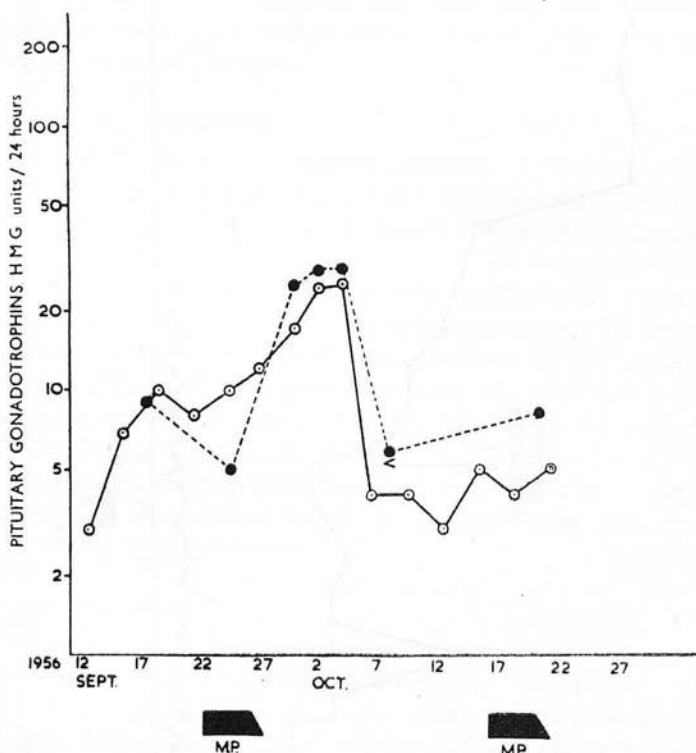


FIG. 14

Urinary excretion of gonadotrophins in a pre-menopausal subject with mammary carcinoma. (Mrs W. N. *act.* 47.) M.P. = menstrual period. Open circles denote assays conducted by the mouse uterus test; closed circles denote assays conducted by the ventral prostatic weight test. The sign "<" indicates that the reading was actually "less than" the figure quoted. (From Loraine, 1957 *c.*)

ICSH activity; the latter is generally believed to be specific for ICSH activity. The urine samples were extracted by the kaolin-acetone method (see p. 31) and, in extracts in which gonadotrophic activity was expected to be low, the crude kaolin-acetone powders were treated with tricalcium phosphate in order to reduce toxicity. Results of both assays were expressed in terms of HMG-20A as 'HMG units per twenty-four hours.'

Fig. 14 shows the gonadotrophin excretion in a premenopausal subject with mammary carcinoma but without any previous history of menstrual abnormalities. It will be noted that the results obtained by the two assay procedures at all stages of the cycle agree very closely. In the early follicular phase the gonadotrophin excretion was low, being usually less than 10 units per twenty-four hours. In the late follicular

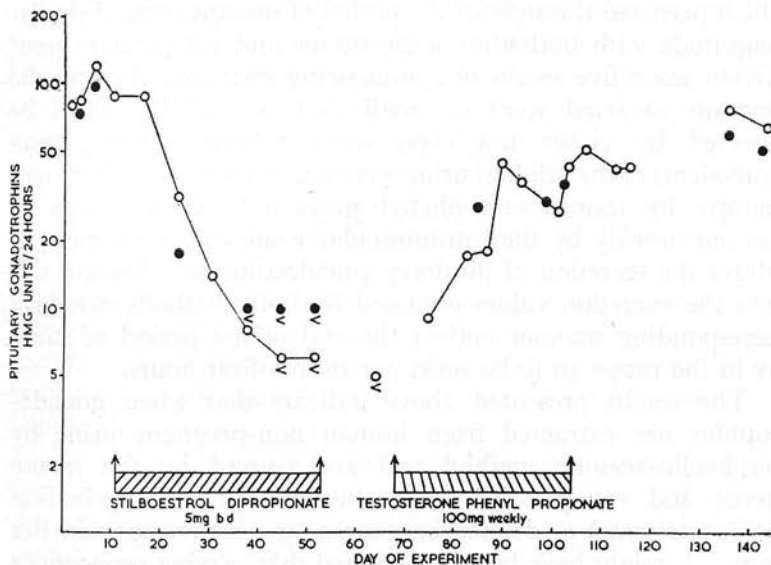


FIG. 15

The effect of stilboestrol and testosterone on the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins in a post-menopausal subject with mammary carcinoma. (Mrs M. S., *et. al.* 61.) Open circles denote assays conducted by the mouse uterus test; closed circles denote assays conducted by the ventral prostatic weight test. The sign "<" indicates that the reading was actually "less than" the figure quoted. (From Loraine, 1957 c.)

phase the levels started to rise and reached a maximum at about the sixteenth day of the cycle. This maximum is probably associated with the occurrence of ovulation and may be termed the 'ovulation peak.' At this time readings by the two methods lay between 25 and 30 units per twenty-four hours. Subsequent to ovulation the excretion values decreased rapidly, and in the luteal phase and at the time of menstruation were again less than 10 units per twenty-four hours.

Fig. 15 shows the effect of œstrogens and androgens on the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins as estimated by the same

two assay methods. The patient studied was a post-menopausal subject with mammary carcinoma. It will be noted that prior to oestrogen therapy the readings obtained by both methods were relatively high, lying in the range 70 to 120 units per twenty-four hours. The oral administration of stilboestrol in a dosage of 5 mg. twice daily produced a prompt fall in the urinary gonadotrophin output. This decrease, which persisted throughout the period of therapy, was of similar magnitude with both the mouse uterus and rat prostate tests. Within some five weeks of commencing oestrogen therapy the amounts excreted were so small that no activity could be detected by either test even when relatively large dose-equivalents of the original urine were administered. Subsequent therapy by testosterone phenyl propionate in a dosage of 100 mg. weekly by the intramuscular route did not appear to inhibit the secretion of pituitary gonadotrophins. During this time the excretion values obtained by both methods rose in a corresponding manner and at the end of the period of study lay in the range 40 to 60 units per twenty-four hours.

The results presented above indicate that when gonadotrophins are extracted from human non-pregnant urine by the kaolin-acetone method and are assayed by the mouse uterus and rat prostate tests, the index of discrimination (uterus/prostate) as defined on page 21 generally approximates unity. It might have been anticipated that varying proportions of urinary FSH to urinary ICSH might have been reflected in differences in this index. The finding of an index in the neighbourhood of unity suggests either that the material prepared by the kaolin-acetone method contains a single gonadotrophin with two activities or that it contains two gonadotrophins which are usually present in the same relative proportions.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Urinary gonadotrophins from normal men and from normally menstruating and post-menopausal women can be assayed in terms of human menopausal gonadotrophin (HMG). It is proposed that a preparation of HMG be used as a standard for the assay of human non-pregnant urinary gonadotrophins.

For the routine determination of pituitary gonadotrophin excretion in clinical practice the mouse uterus test is the

bio-assay method of choice. This test is not specific for either FSH or ICSH and gives a measure of total gonadotrophic activity. Results of the assay should be expressed in terms of HMG as 'units per twenty-four hours.' The prostatic weight test in hypophysectomised immature male rats is sufficiently sensitive to estimate ICSH activity in clinical conditions but is probably too tedious and laborious for routine studies.

The kaolin-acetone method with accurate pH control is a suitable procedure for the extraction of gonadotrophins from human non-pregnant urine. Treatment of the crude kaolin-acetone powders with tricalcium phosphate makes it possible to administer without toxic effects the equivalent of one litre of original urine to intact mice and hypophysectomised rats.

Chemical methods of assay of gonadotrophins are relatively non-specific and should not at present replace biological techniques.

Both FSH and ICSH activity are present in post-menopausal urine, in normal male urine, and in urine from normally menstruating women. It is not yet clear whether the effects are due to two separate substances or to a single substance with both activities.

In normal individuals the excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins is low in children, in men and in women during reproductive life. In menopausal and post-menopausal women, on the other hand, high excretion values are found.

The main indication for pituitary gonadotrophin assays in the clinical field is in the differentiation of primary gonadal failure from gonadal failure secondary to lesions of the pituitary. In addition, assays may sometimes be helpful in certain types of testicular tumour and in various gynaecological conditions. It is probable that, in the future, gonadotrophin determinations will be of value to the surgeon as a means of assessing the completeness of a hypophysectomy.

REFERENCES

- ALBERT, A. (1956). *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* **12**, 227.
ALBRIGHT, F. (1936). *Endocrinology*, **20**, 24.
BAHN, R. C., LORENZ, N., BENNETT, W. A. & ALBERT, A. (1953). *Endocrinology*, **52**, 605.
BEIERWALTES, W. H. & BISHOP, R. C. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 928.
BISHOP, P. M. F. (1954). In *Recent Advances in Endocrinology*, 7th ed., chap. vi. London: Churchill.

- BORTH, R., LUNENFELD, B. & DE WATTEVILLE, H. (1954). *Experientia*, **10**, 266.
- BOWMAN, D. E. (1941). *J. biol. Chem.* **137**, 293.
- BRADBURY, J. T., BROWN, E. & BROWN, W. E. (1949). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **71**, 228.
- BROWN, P. S. (1955). *J. Endocrin.* **13**, 59.
- CATCHPOLE, H. R., GREULICH, W. W. & SOLLENBERGER, R. T. (1938). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **123**, 32.
- CROOKE, A. C. & BUTT, W. R. (1952). *Proc. R. Soc. Med.* **45**, 305.
- CROOKE, A. C., BUTT, W. R., INGRAM, J. D. & ROMANCHUCK, L. E. (1954). *Lancet*, **1**, 379.
- D'AMOUR, F. E. (1943). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **3**, 41.
- D'AMOUR, M. C. & D'AMOUR, F. E. (1938). *J. Pharmacol.* **62**, 263.
- DEKANSKI, J. (1949). *Brit. J. exp. Path.* **30**, 272.
- DEL CASTILLO, E. B., TRABUCCO, A. & DE LA BALZE, F. A. (1947). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **7**, 493.
- DICZFALUSY, E. (1953). *Acta endocr. Kbh. suppl.* 12.
- DICZFALUSY, E. & LORAIN, J. A. (1957). Unpublished observations.
- EASTERLING, W. S., SALMON, A. A., DAVIES, C. D. & HAMBLIN, E. C. (1951). *Southern Med. J.* **44**, 47.
- EVANS, H. M., SIMPSON, M. E., TOLKSDORF, S. & JENSEN, H. (1939). *Endocrinology*, **25**, 529.
- FARRIS, E. J. (1946). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **52**, 14.
- FEVOLD, H. L. (1937). *Cold Spr. Harb. Symp. quant. Biol.* **5**, 93.
- FEVOLD, H. L. (1939). *Endocrinology*, **24**, 435.
- FINNEY, D. J. (1952). *Statistical Methods in Biological Assay*. London: Griffin.
- FLUHMAN, C. F. (1929). *J. Amer. med. Ass.* **93**, 672.
- FLUHMAN, C. F. (1944). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **4**, 586.
- FRAENKEL-CONRAT, H., SIMPSON, M. E., LI, C. H. & EVANS, H. M. (1940). *Endocrinology*, **27**, 793.
- FRANK, R. T., GOLDBERGER, M., SALMON, U. J. & FELSHIN, G. (1937). *J. Amer. med. Ass.* **109**, 1863.
- GADDUM, J. H. (1933). *Spec. Rep. Ser. med. Res. Coun., Lond.* No. 183.
- GADDUM, J. H. (1953 a). *Pharmacol. Rev.* **5**, 87.
- GADDUM, J. H. (1953 b). *J. Pharm. Pharmacol.* **6**, 345.
- GADDUM, J. H. (1955). *Polypeptides which Stimulate Plain Muscle*, p. 133. Edinburgh: Livingstone.
- GORBMAN, A. (1945). *Endocrinology*, **37**, 177.
- GREENE, R. R. (1950). In *Progress in Clinical Endocrinology*, p. 358. Ed., S. Soskin. New York: Grune & Stratton.
- GREEP, R. O., VAN DYKE, H. B. & CHOW, B. F. (1942). *Endocrinology*, **30**, 635.
- HAIN, A. M. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 1349.
- HAMBURGER, C. (1946). *J. Endocrin.* **5**, proc. xxiv.
- HAMBURGER, C. & GODTFREDSEN, E. (1941). *Acta path. microbiol. scand.* **18**, 485.
- HASENBEIN, G. (1952). *Z. Gynäkol.* **74**, 1048.
- HELLER, A. L. & SHIPLEY, R. A. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 945.
- HELLER, C. G., FARNEY, J. P., MORGAN, P. N. & MYERS, G. B. (1944). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **4**, 95.
- HELLER, C. G. & HELLER, E. J. (1939). *Endocrinology*, **24**, 319.
- HELLER, C. G., LAWSON, H. & SEVERINGHAUS, E. L. (1938). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **121**, 364.
- HELLER, C. G. & NELSON, W. O. (1945). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **5**, 1.
- HELLER, C. G. & NELSON, W. O. (1948). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **8**, 345.
- HILL, R. T., PARKES, A. S. & WHITE, W. E. (1934). *J. Physiol.* **81**, 335.
- HOBSON, B. M. & LANDGREBE, F. W. (1954). *Quart. J. exp. Physiol.* **39**, 23.
- HOWARD, R. P., SNIFFEN, R. C., SIMMONS, F. A. & ALBRIGHT, F. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 121.
- JANSSEN, S. & LOESER, A. (1930). Naunyn-Schmeideberg's *Arch. exp. Path. Pharmacol.* **151**, 188.
- JOHNSON, S. G. (1955 a). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **20**, 101.
- JOHNSON, S. G. (1955 b). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **20**, 106.
- JUNGCK, E. C., MADDOCK, W. O. & HELLER, C. G. (1947). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **7**, 1.

- KATZMAN, P. A. (1937). *Endocrinology*, **21**, 89.
- KATZMAN, P. A. & DOISY, E. A. (1934). *J. biol. Chem.* **106**, 125.
- KATZMAN, P. A., GODFRID, M., CAIN, C. K. & DOISY, E. A. (1943). *J. biol. Chem.* **148**, 501.
- KLINEFELTER, H. F., Jr., ALBRIGHT, F. & GRISWOLD, G. C. (1943). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **3**, 529.
- KLINEFELTER, H. F., Jr., REIFENSTEIN, E. C., Jr. & ALBRIGHT, F. (1942). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **2**, 615.
- LEATHEM, J. H. & LEVIN, L. (1941). *Endocrinology*, **29**, 8.
- LEVIN, L. (1941). *Endocrinology*, **28**, 378.
- LEVIN, L. & TYNDALE, H. H. (1936). *Proc. Soc. exp. Med., N.Y.* **34**, 516.
- LEVIN, L. & TYNDALE, H. H. (1937). *Endocrinology*, **21**, 619.
- LI, C. H. (1949). *Vitam. & Horm.* **7**, 223.
- LI, C. H. & EVANS, H. M. (1948). In *The Hormones*, vol. 1, pp. 631-693. Ed., G. Pincus & K. V. Thimann. New York: Academic Press.
- LI, C. H., SIMPSON, M. E. & EVANS, H. M. (1940). *Endocrinology*, **27**, 803.
- LOYD, C. W., MORLEY, M., MORROW, K., LOBOSKY, J. & HUGHES, E. C. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 636.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1949). Ph.D. Thesis. University of Edinburgh.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1950). *J. Endocrin.* **6**, proc. ii.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1956). *Vitam. & Horm.* **14**, 305.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1957 a). *Acta endocr. Kbh. suppl.* **31**, p. 75.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1957 b). In *Conference on Endocrine Aspects of Breast Cancer*, Glasgow, July 1957. Edinburgh: Livingstone.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1957 c). Unpublished observations.
- LORAIN, J. A. & BROWN, J. B. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **17**, 250.
- LORAIN, J. A. & BROWN, J. B. (1955). *J. Endocrin.* **13**, proc. i.
- LORAIN, J. A. & BROWN, J. B. (1956 a). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **16**, 1180.
- LORAIN, J. A. & BROWN, J. B. (1956 b). *J. Endocrin.* **14**, proc. xxxi.
- LORAIN, J. A., STRONG, J. A. & DOUGLAS, M. (1957). *Lancet*, **2**, 575.
- LYON, R., SIMPSON, M. E. & EVANS, H. M. (1953). *Endocrinology*, **53**, 674.
- MCCARTHER, J. W. (1952). *Endocrinology*, **50**, 304.
- MCCULLAGH, E. P., BECK, J. C. & SCHAFFENBURG, C. A. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13-1**, 489.
- MCCULLAGH, E. P. & HRUBY, F. J. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 113.
- MAIN, R., COX, W., O'NEAL, R. & STOECKEL, J. (1943). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **3**, 331.
- MALBURG, R. F. & GOODMAN, J. R. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 666.
- MASON, H. L., POWER, M. H., RYNEARSON, E. H., CIARAMELLI, L. C., LI, C. H. & EVANS, H. M. (1948). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **8**, 1.
- MAXWELL, L. C. & BISCHOFF, F. (1935). *J. biol. Chem.* **112**, 215.
- MORRIS, C. J. O. R. (1955). *Brit. med. Bull.* **11**, 101.
- NATHANSON, I. T., TOWNE, L. E. & AUB, J. C. (1941). *Endocrinology*, **28**, 851.
- NEAL, L. M., BARTON, R. C., HOLMSTROM, E. G. & SALHANICK, H. A. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **142**, 792.
- NELSON, W. O. (1948). *Med. Clin. N. Amer.* **32**, 97.
- NELSON, W. O. (1953). *J. Amer. med. Ass.* **151**, 449.
- PAESI, F. J. A., WIJNANS, M. & DE JONGH, S. E. (1951). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **8**, 251.
- PAYNE, R. W. (1951). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol.* **77**, 242.
- PEDERSEN-BJERGAARD, K. (1936). *Z. Gynäkol.* **60**, 372.
- PEDERSEN-BJERGAARD, K. & TØNNESSEN, M. (1948). *Acta endocr.* **1**, 38.
- PEDERSEN-BJERGAARD, K. & TØNNESSEN, M. (1951). *Acta endocr.* **7**, 270.
- PERRY, W. L. M. (1950). *Spec. Rep. Ser. med. Res. Coun., Lond.* No. 270.
- POLANI, P. E., HUNTER, W. F. & LENNOX, B. (1954). *Lancet*, **2**, 120.
- Report of the first meeting of the Gonadotrophin Club, Geneva, Switzerland, 1953.
- Report of the second meeting of the Gonadotrophin Club, Birmingham, England, 1955.
- RIDDLE, O. & FLEMION, F. (1928). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **87**, 110.
- SCHAFFENBURG, C. A. & MCCULLAGH, E. P. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 765.
- SCHOU, H. I. (1951). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **8**, 149.
- SCOTT, L. D. (1941). *Brit. J. exp. Path.* **21**, 320.
- SEGALOFF, A. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 847.

- SEGALOFF, A., GORDON, D., CARABASI, R. A., HORWITT, B. A., SCHLOSSER, J. V. & MURISON, P. J. (1954). *Cancer*, **7**, 758.
- SHEDLOVSKY, T., ROTHEN, A., GREEP, R. O., VAN DYKE, H. B. & CHOW, B. F. (1940). *Science*, **92**, 178.
- SIMPSON, M. E., LI, C. H. & EVANS, H. M. (1943). *Endocrinology*, **33**, 261.
- SIMPSON, M. E., LI, C. H. & EVANS, H. M. (1944). *Endocrinology*, **35**, 96.
- SMITH, E. K. (1955). *Endocrinology*, **56**, 567.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1936). *New Eng. J. Med.* **215**, 908.
- SOHVAL, A. R. & SOFFER, L. J. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 677.
- SPRAGUE, R. C., POWER, M. H., MASON, H. L., ALBERT, A., MATHIESON, D. R., HENCH, P. S., KENDALL, E. C., SLOCUMB, C. H. & POLLEY, H. F. (1950). *Arch. int. Med.* **85**, 199.
- STATLAND, H. & LERMAN, R. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 1401.
- STEELMAN, S. L. & POHLEY, F. M. (1953). *Endocrinology*, **53**, 604.
- STRAN, H. M. & JONES, G. E. S. (1954). *Johns Hopk. Hosp. Bull.* **95**, 162.
- SWYER, G. I. M. (1950). *Brit. med. J.* **1**, 626.
- THOMOPOULOU, H. & LI, C. H. (1954). *Acta endocr.* **15**, 97.
- TOKUYAMA, I., LEACH, R. B., SHEINFELD, S. & MADDOCK, W. O. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 509.
- TREVAN, J. W. (1927). *Proc. roy. Soc. B.* **101**, 483.
- TURNER, H. H. (1938). *Endocrinology*, **23**, 566.
- VAN GILSE, H. A. (1955). *Nature, Lond.* **175**, 686.
- VARNEY, R. F. & KOCH, F. C. (1942). *Endocrinology*, **30**, 399.
- WALLEN-LAWRENCE, Z. & VAN DYKE, H. B. (1931). *J. Pharmacol.* **43**, 93.
- ZONDEK, B. (1930). *Klin. Wschr.* **9**, 393.
- ZONDEK, B. (1931). *Klin. Wschr.* **10**, 2121.

CHAPTER III

Human Chorionic Gonadotrophin

INTRODUCTION

IN 1927 Aschheim and Zondek demonstrated that the blood and urine of pregnant women contained a gonad-stimulating substance which, when injected subcutaneously into intact immature female mice, produced follicular maturation, luteinisation and hæmorrhage into the ovarian stroma. Aschheim and Zondek believed that this gonadotrophic substance was produced by the anterior pituitary, but subsequent work by other investigators proved beyond all doubt that the placenta and not the pituitary was responsible for the elaboration of the hormone. Probably the most conclusive evidence in favour of the placental origin of HCG comes from the work of Jones *et al.* (1943) and of Stewart *et al.* (1948) who showed that the gonadotrophin was produced *in vitro* in placental tissue culture and that this property was exhibited by the chorionic villi being especially marked in the Langhans cells.

The chorionic hormone should be termed *chorionic gonadotrophin* (CG) or *human chorionic gonadotrophin* (HCG). Names such as 'pregnancy prolan' or 'anterior pituitary-like substance' (APL) are of historical interest only and should no longer be used. HCG and pituitary ICSH are different chemical substances but resemble one another in their biological properties. Both hormones are predominantly luteinising in action.

1. Chemical Nature of HCG.

HCG is a glycoprotein with a relatively high carbohydrate content in the form of galactose. Gurin *et al.* (1940) stated that its molecular weight was 100,000. Purified preparations of HCG have been made by Gurin *et al.* (1940), by Lundgren *et al.* (1942) and by others, but it is doubtful if the hormone

has yet been isolated in the pure state. The most active preparations of HCG so far described are those of Gurin *et al.* (1940) and of Katzman *et al.* (1943). The potency of these preparations ranged from 6,000 to 8,000 i.u. per mg.

2. The International Standard for HCG.

This was established in 1939 under the auspices of the League of Nations. By definition 1 i.u. is the activity contained in 0.1 mg. of the standard preparation. All assay results should now be expressed in international units, and in this way results from different laboratories can be compared directly. There is no longer any excuse for measuring HCG activity in 'animal units,' and it is regrettable that publications still appear in which 'rat' and 'mouse units' are employed.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF HCG

Assay methods for HCG are very numerous. The subject has been reviewed by Emmens (1939), Thayer (1946), Loraine (1952, 1954, 1956 *a*) and Diczfalusy (1953, 1954). For quantitative determinations of HCG in blood and urine, intact immature rats and mice have been favoured as test animals, but for pregnancy diagnosis rats, mice, rabbits and amphibia have been widely used. As in the case of pituitary gonadotrophins it is possible to classify the tests according to whether the effect is *primary* or *secondary*. Tables III and IV, which are largely based on data calculated by Diczfalusy (1954), show some of the methods used and compare their relative precision in terms of Gaddum's λ .

1. Assays depending on Primary Effects.

Many of these methods have considerable disadvantages when applied to the quantitative assay of HCG in the blood and urine of human subjects. The method based on the formation of *corpora lutea* in the rat ovary is relatively sensitive; it has, however, a very large error and is little better than a qualitative test. This was the technique used by Smith and Smith (1934, 1936, 1941) in studies of the serum concentration of HCG in pre-eclamptic toxæmia and also

by White (1947, 1949) in similar estimations in pregnant diabetics. *Ovarian weight in rats* is now little used as an assay method because it lacks precision and is insensitive. Using this technique, Evans *et al.* (1937) constructed one of the earliest curves for the urinary excretion of HCG during normal pregnancy. Methods depending on *ovulation in rabbits* and in *toads* have generally proved reliable as pregnancy tests but are too insensitive to be of great value in quantitative assays.

Within the last five years the two methods in this group which have been most extensively employed in the clinical

TABLE III

PRECISION OF ASSAY METHODS FOR HCG—
PRIMARY EFFECTS
(From Loraine, 1956 a)

Index of Response.	Index of Precision λ .	Reference.
Ovarian weight (rat) . .	0.139	Sealy and Sondern (1940)
Ovarian weight (rat) . .	0.230	Diczfalusy and Loraine (1955)
Ovarian hyperæmia (rat) .	0.450	Albert and Berkson (1951)
Ovarian hyperæmia (rat) .	0.123	Borth <i>et al.</i> (1957)
Expulsion of spermatozoa (toad)	0.120 to 0.176	Wohlzogen (1953)

field are those depending on (a) *ovarian hyperæmia in rats* and (b) *expulsion of spermatozoa in amphibia*.

(a) OVARIAN HYPERÆMIA IN RATS.—The ovarian hyperæmia test was introduced by Zondek *et al.* (1945) for the diagnosis of pregnancy, and Albert and his co-workers (Albert, 1948; Albert and Berkson, 1951) have used the technique for the quantitative determination of HCG in blood and urine. The method is sensitive but may have a low degree of precision as indicated by a figure for the index of precision (λ) of 0.45 (Table III). The chief advantage of the ovarian hyperæmia test lies in the fact that the total time required for the assay is only four hours; this is in marked contrast to most other procedures involving multiple injections

into rats and necessitating seventy-two-hour to ninety-six-hour injection periods. The main disadvantages of the test are as follows:

- (i) The success of the assay appears to depend greatly on the strain of animal employed and in certain strains spontaneous reactions are relatively frequent. In a number of laboratories, including that of the author, the technique could not be used as a quantitative assay method for HCG.
- (ii) The assay depends on a quantal (all-or-none) rather than on a graded response. In a quantal assay the effect on each individual animal is not measured, and the result depends on the percentage of animals which show a definite reaction at a given dose level. For any given degree of precision quantal assays require approximately twice the number of animals required by assays depending on graded effects. This subject is discussed in Chapter I.
- (iii) The specificity of the test is questionable in view of the finding that cortisone and cortisol will affect the response of the ovary to injected HCG (Payne, 1951; Smith, 1955). It is possible that blood and urine contain other substances which may also interfere with the reaction.

(b) EXPULSION OF SPERMATOZOA IN AMPHIBIA.—In 1947 Galli-Mainini described a new pregnancy test, depending on spermiation in the male toad, *Bufo arenarum*. Since then it has become evident that several other male amphibia can be used for pregnancy diagnosis. Recently attempts have been made to adapt the method for the quantitative assay of HCG in blood and urine. The amphibia used for this purpose have included *Rana pipiens* (Haskins and Sherman, 1952), *Bufo Bufo* (Thorborg and Hansen, 1951), *Xenopus laevis* (Hobson, 1952) and *Bufo viridis* (Wohlzogen, 1953).

The main advantages of the test are as follows:

- (i) The method is both simple and rapid; quantitative estimations of HCG potency can be obtained in twenty-four hours or earlier.
- (ii) In the hands of most investigators the test has been reasonably precise (Table III).

- (iii) The same animal can be used repeatedly. Most authors state that a week's rest is sufficient after a positive response.

The chief disadvantages of the assay method include the following:

- (i) Amphibia are relatively insensitive. This may necessitate concentration of urine extracts and the use of large quantities of the standard preparation in order to elicit a positive response.
- (ii) The response of the animals to HCG is subject to marked seasonal variation. It is usually stated (Thorborg, 1950) that the sensitivity is at a maximum late in winter and in early spring and is at a minimum in the autumn.
- (iii) In individual estimations relatively large numbers of animals are required because the assay depends on a quantal rather than on a graded response.

2. Assays depending on Secondary Effects.

In this group the majority of assays have been performed using intact immature rats. The following indices of response will be considered:

- (a) Uterine weight.
- (b) Vaginal smears.
- (c) Prostatic weight.
- (d) Seminal vesicle weight.
- (e) Weight of the total accessory reproductive organs.

(a) UTERINE WEIGHT.—According to Emmens (1939) this test is sensitive but has a low degree of precision. The technique has been used by Jones *et al.* (1944) to estimate the serum concentration of HCG during normal pregnancy and by Dorfman and Rubin (1947) for studies on pregnancy urine. Diczfalusy and Loraine (1955) found the test reasonably precise, but showed that the effect of HCG on the uterine weight in rats was increased approximately twofold when the hormone was dissolved in serum or in plasma instead of saline. In view of this fact these workers concluded that the method was unsuitable for HCG assays conducted on serum or plasma. When the rat uterus test is employed for estimations in pregnancy urine the latter must first be precipitated with alcohol

or acetone in order to remove the oestrogenic hormones. These substances, if present in the material to be injected, would interfere significantly with the response and would probably cause an overestimate of HCG potency.

(b) VAGINAL SMEARS.—This method was used by Browne and Venning (1936) and by Venning (1948) to study the urinary excretion of HCG during normal pregnancy, and was employed by Bruner (1951, to determine the distribution of

TABLE IV

PRECISION OF ASSAY METHODS FOR HCG—SECONDARY EFFECTS

(From Loraine, 1956 a)

Index of Response.	Index of Precision λ .	Reference.
Uterine weight (rat) . .	0.329	Delfs (1941)
Uterine weight (rat) . .	0.149	Dorfman and Rubin (1947)
Uterine weight (rat) . .	0.240	Sealy and Sondern (1940)
Vaginal smears (rat) . .	0.276	Loraine (1950 a)
Vaginal smears (vitamin B-deficient rat)	0.115	Heard and Winton (1939)
Total prostatic weight (rat)	0.139	Loraine (1950 a)
Total prostatic weight (rat)	0.100	Loraine (1956 b)
Ventral prostatic weight (hypophysectomised rat)	0.150	Diczfalusy <i>et al.</i> (1950)
Seminal vesicle weight (rat)	0.200	Watts and Adair (1943)
Seminal vesicle weight (rat)	0.195	Loraine (1950 a)
Seminal vesicle weight (hypophysectomised rat)	0.495	Diczfalusy <i>et al.</i> (1950)
Total accessory reproductive organs (rat)	0.210	Diczfalusy (1953)
Total accessory reproductive organs (rat)	0.105	Diczfalusy (1954)

the hormone in the mother and foetus at different stages of normal pregnancy. The main disadvantage of the method lies in the fact that it depends on a quantal rather than a graded response. Loraine (1950 a) found the vaginal smear test to be less precise than that depending on prostatic weight (Table IV). According to Heard and Winton (1939) the error of the method can be reduced by using adult aneurine-deficient rats which are probably more uniform in response than are intact immature animals.

For studies on pregnancy urine the vaginal smear test

cannot be used unless the oestrogens are removed, *e.g.*, by acetone or alcohol precipitation, prior to bio-assay.

(c) PROSTATIC WEIGHT.—This method (Loraine, 1950 *a*) has been shown to be suitable for the quantitative assay of HCG in urine, serum and placenta of patients. In the technique used in Edinburgh intact immature rats are injected subcutaneously once per day on three consecutive days at approximately twenty-four-hour intervals. They are killed on the fourth day, at which time the prostates are dissected out and are fixed for twenty-four hours. On the fifth day the organs are freed from fat, dried and weighed.

The test is reasonably precise, the index of precision (λ) being usually below 0.15 (Table IV). The oestrogens in pregnancy urine do not interfere with the response, and for this reason unextracted urine can be injected. The effect of HCG on the prostatic weight of intact or hypophysectomised rats is not increased when the hormone is dissolved in serum or plasma instead of saline and, accordingly, the technique can be used to assay HCG in untreated serum or plasma (Diczfalusy and Loraine, 1955).

(d) SEMINAL VESICLE WEIGHT.—The sensitivity of this test is comparable to that of (c), but the method is less precise (Table IV). The method has been used by Watts and Adair (1943) to estimate the urinary excretion of HCG in cases of pre-eclamptic toxæmia and essential hypertension in pregnancy. As in the case of (c) the oestrogens in pregnancy urine do not affect the response and for this reason untreated urine can be injected.

(e) WEIGHT OF TOTAL ACCESSORY REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS (total prostate plus seminal vesicles).—Diczfalusy (1954) found that in his strain of animals this test was somewhat more precise than that depending on prostatic weight alone (Table IV). This worker used the method to estimate the placental concentration of HCG at different stages of normal pregnancy.

PREGNANCY DIAGNOSIS TESTS

In early pregnancy very large quantities of HCG are elaborated by the placenta, and most biological tests for pregnancy depend on the demonstration of this hormone in body fluids, usually in urine. A great number of such tests

have been proposed using different animal species, and reliability of the various procedures has been thoroughly investigated in the course of the last twenty-five years. The methods which have been most widely used are as follows:

1. The Aschheim-Zondek Test.

This was the first test to be developed, and it depends on the fact that HCG causes the development of hæmorrhagic follicles and corpora lutea in the ovaries of intact immature mice. The method gives a reliable diagnosis of pregnancy in the vast majority of cases. Its chief disadvantage lies in the fact that five days are required for its performance.

2. The Friedman Test.

In this method rabbits are used. The urine is injected intravenously and the end point of the assay is the production of ovulation. The result can be obtained within twenty-four to forty-eight hours. The reliability of the procedure is comparable with that of the Aschheim-Zondek test.

3. The Kupperman Test.

This method has as its end point ovarian hyperæmia in rats. In the original method described by Kupperman *et al.* (1943) the ovaries were examined two hours after the intra-peritoneal injection of unextracted urine. This test is reasonably reliable and has the great advantage of rapidity of performance. The original method or some modification thereof is in routine use in many centres.

4. The Hogben Test.

This method depends on the ability of HCG to cause ovulation in the South African clawed toad, *Xenopus laevis*. The test is reliable and relatively rapid (positive responses are obtained within twenty-four hours). The test animals can be used repeatedly. The chief disadvantage is the fact that *Xenopus* is rather insensitive to stimulation with HCG, and for this reason it is usually necessary to concentrate the urine prior to administration.

5. The Galli-Mainini Test.

HCG will cause expulsion of spermatozoa in male amphibia, and this has been made the basis of a pregnancy test which is

now in routine use in many laboratories. Tests depending on male amphibia are generally accurate and very rapid ; results can usually be read within two hours. As in the case of female amphibia the same animal can be used repeatedly.

In his original experiments Galli-Mainini (1947) employed *Bufo arenarum*. Since then it has been demonstrated that many other species of amphibia are suitable for pregnancy diagnosis tests. For example, successful results have been reported with *Rana pipiens* (Haskins and Sherman, 1949), *Bufo Bufo* (Thorborg, 1950), *Bufo marinus* (Wannan, 1952) and *Xenopus laevis* (Hobson, 1952).

For fuller information on the subject of pregnancy diagnosis the reader is referred to articles by Robbins and Parker (1948), Cowie (1948), Thorborg (1950) and Hobson (1955).

EXTRACTION OF HCG FROM URINE

The methods used are very similar to those which have been described in Chapter II for pituitary gonadotrophins and include:

1. Alcohol precipitation.
2. Acetone precipitation.
3. Benzoic acid adsorption.
4. Tungstic acid precipitation.
5. Kaolin adsorption with or without acetone precipitation.
6. Permutit adsorption.

The end point of the bio-assay largely determines whether or not extraction methods for HCG should be employed. With relatively insensitive techniques, *e.g.*, those depending on male or female amphibia, it is often necessary to prepare concentrated extracts in order to elicit a biological response. With more sensitive techniques, *e.g.*, those employing ovarian hyperæmia or prostatic weight, concentration of the urine is not required. Assays depending on uterine weight and vaginal smears are relatively sensitive but will not yield valid results unless the œstrogens are removed from pregnancy urine by alcohol or acetone precipitation prior to bio-assay. As mentioned previously the great advantage of the assay method, depending on the prostatic weight in rats, lies in the fact that untreated urine

can be injected as the oestrogens do not interfere with the response of the end organs to HCG.

HCG ASSAYS IN HUMAN SERUM

Many investigators have estimated the serum concentration of HCG in normal and abnormal pregnancy, and in the course of these studies many different bio-assay techniques have been employed. Recently it has become apparent that in such estimations on untreated serum the end point of the test must be selected with care in order that valid results are obtained. Maddock and his collaborators reported that the effect of HCG on the rat uterus was increased fivefold to tenfold when the hormone was administered in human plasma instead of in saline (Maddock and Leach, 1952; Maddock *et al.*, 1953; Leach *et al.*, 1954). In this series of papers, however, no attempt was made to calculate the error of the assays, and it is doubtful if the results have much quantitative significance. Diczfalusy and Loraine (1955) also found that serum and plasma increased the effect of HCG on the rat uterus but reported only an approximate doubling of potency. From these results it is apparent, however, that bio-assays of HCG in serum and plasma by the uterine weight method as recommended by Jones *et al.* (1944) and by Dorfman and Rubin (1947) will most probably give an overestimate of the real potency and will thus yield erroneously high serum levels.

Diczfalusy and Loraine (1955) have shown that the effect of HCG on the weight of the accessory reproductive organs of immature male rats is not influenced appreciably when the hormone is dissolved in human serum or plasma instead of saline. These workers concluded that for clinical bio-assays on human serum satisfactory results from the quantitative point of view can be obtained if the prostatic weight, seminal vesicle weight and weight of the total accessory reproductive organs are used as indices of response.

THE CLINICAL APPLICATION OF HCG ASSAYS

1. Normal Pregnancy.

Several investigators have estimated the urinary excretion and serum concentration of HCG throughout normal pregnancy, but only in the papers of Jones *et al.* (1944), Wilson

et al. (1949), Loraine (1950 *a*), Albert and Berkson (1951) and Hobson (1955) are the results expressed in terms of the international standard for HCG. The curves obtained are of the same general shape as those reported by previous investigators who expressed results in 'rat' and 'mouse units,' but are much more meaningful from the quantitative point of view.

In Fig. 16 are shown the mean urinary and serum levels of HCG throughout normal pregnancy. Fig. 17 presents observations of the urinary excretion made in a small number of individual subjects.

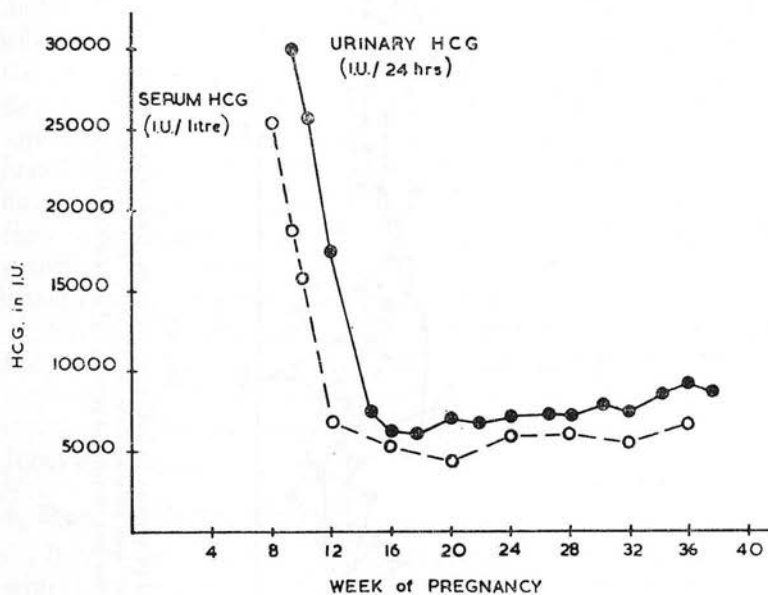


FIG. 16

Mean estimations of urinary and serum HCG throughout normal pregnancy.
(From Loraine, 1957.)

Very large amounts of HCG appear in blood and urine during the first trimester of normal pregnancy. This constitutes the so-called 'peak period.' Readings obtained at this time are very variable from one subject to another and may vary from 20,000 to 100,000 i.u. per twenty-four hours of urine or per litre of serum. The time at which the HCG readings begin to decrease is also very variable, but usually the peak period has passed by the fifteenth week of pregnancy. In the second and third trimesters the figures for both serum and

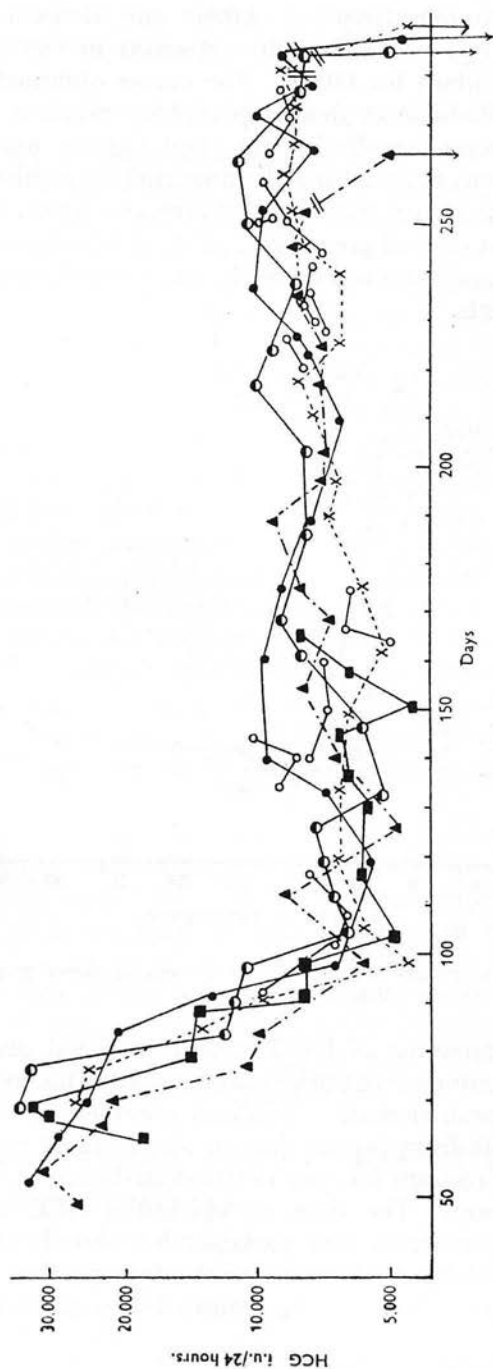


FIG. 17

Urinary excretion of HCG throughout normal pregnancy in individual subjects. Open circles denote scattered readings in various patients; other signs denote individual cases; transverse lines indicate date of delivery. The duration of pregnancy is calculated from the first day of the last menstrual period. (From Loraine, 1950 a.)

urine are much more constant than in early pregnancy. Loraine (1950 *a*, 1957) found that at this time the values lay in a range between 4,000 and 11,000 i.u. ($P=0.99$) and suggested that readings consistently outside these limits should be regarded as pathological. Fig. 16 illustrates the very close quantitative relationship between urine and serum levels of HCG. This subject will be more fully discussed in the section dealing with the renal clearance of the hormone (p. 91).

The exact time of appearance of HCG in the blood and urine of pregnant women is not yet known with certainty. Aschheim and Zondek (1927) originally reported that the substance could be detected in urine within two weeks after the first missed menstrual period. Levin (1941) studied the gonadotrophin excretion in a patient in whom pregnancy supervened in the course of a normal menstrual cycle. He found that the titre began to increase on the twenty-fourth day of the cycle and that by the thirtieth day the output had risen approximately a hundredfold; twelve days later the excretion was some 3,000 times higher than that usually encountered in normally menstruating women.

At the time of writing, HCG assays by reliable methods have been reported in only a few cases of multiple pregnancy. In a proportion of the cases studied the excretion has been significantly higher than in single pregnancy (Fosco, 1943; Jones *et al.*, 1944).

2. Hydatidiform Mole.

It has been known for over twenty-five years that patients with hydatidiform mole tend to excrete abnormally large quantities of HCG. Earlier investigations suggested that such cases could be differentiated from normally pregnant women on the basis of HCG assays alone. For many years the criteria proposed by Zondek (1931) were generally accepted. These stated (*a*) that a concentration of HCG in a morning specimen of urine greater than 50,000 'mouse units' per litre was suggestive of either mole or chorionepithelioma, (*b*) that levels between 100,000 and 200,000 'units' made the diagnosis probable, and (*c*) that concentrations of 200,000 'units' or more were virtually diagnostic of one or other of these conditions. Later work, however, in which results of HCG assays were expressed in international units showed beyond all doubt

that the overlap of readings between normally pregnant women on the one hand and cases of mole and chorion-epithelioma on the other was greater than was previously supposed and that for this reason Zondek's original classification could no longer be regarded as valid.

One of the most detailed investigations so far reported is that of Hamburger (1944) who studied the HCG excretion in twenty patients with hydatidiform mole and expressed his results in international units. He found that the output in individual subjects ranged from 6,000 to 20,000,000 i.u. per litre, but that in over 80 per cent. of the cases the readings were above 300,000 i.u. per litre. In a series of normally pregnant women studied at the same time the mean excretion was much lower than in the cases of hydatidiform mole. However, the difference between the two groups was by no means clear cut, as indicated by the fact that a small proportion of the normal subjects (8 per cent. of the series) showed urinary HCG readings greater than 300,000 i.u. per litre. From these observations Hamburger (1944) concluded that the quantitative determination of HCG in urine was of only limited value in the diagnosis of hydatidiform mole. The information obtained by such assays may be suggestive but cannot be definitely diagnostic of the condition.

In uncomplicated cases of mole, removal of the latter causes a sharp decrease in the urinary excretion of HCG. In Hamburger's series of cases assays were conducted one month, three months and six months after evacuation of the mole. In one month the titre had fallen considerably compared with the pre-operative values and was generally well below 30,000 i.u. per litre; in three months activity had disappeared from the urine in 91 per cent. of cases, and in six months this figure had risen to 100 per cent. In a large series of cases recently studied by Hobson (1955) complete evacuation of the mole caused disappearance of gonadotrophic activity from the urine within one month.

The pattern of HCG excretion is very different in cases of hydatidiform mole in whom complications such as retained molar fragments or chorionepithelioma supervene. Under such circumstances serial HCG assays may be of considerable diagnostic and prognostic value. According to Hamburger (1944) the presence of complications should be suspected if

the excretion of HCG one month post-operatively exceeds 30,000 i.u. per litre. If such a titre is found serial HCG determinations at weekly intervals should be performed, and if a steady rise in excretion occurs it is reasonable to assume that complications have developed. If the output of HCG one month after removal of the mole is already higher than the pre-operative value, the presence of a complication is almost certain and appropriate treatment should be instituted.

3. Chorionepithelioma of the Uterus.

This is a relatively rare uterine tumour. Fifty per cent. of cases follow hydatidiform mole, 25 per cent. follow abortion and 25 per cent. occur after a full-time pregnancy. The tumour consists of actively proliferating chorionic tissue and is associated with abnormally high levels of HCG in blood and in urine. From the quantitative point of view the HCG excretion in cases of chorionepithelioma is similar to that found in patients with hydatidiform mole, and it is not possible to differentiate the two conditions by hormone assay alone. The diagnostic value of HCG assays in cases of hydatidiform mole complicated by chorionepithelioma has been discussed above.

4. Chorionepithelioma of the Testis.

This is a rare highly malignant tumour which is rapidly invasive. Metastases may occur from a relatively small primary growth, and these may produce the first symptoms which call attention to the disease. The tumour is derived from pluripotential undifferentiated epithelial cells.

All investigators agree that in patients with this type of neoplasm large quantities of HCG appear in blood and urine. The subject of hormone excretion in the various types of testicular tumour has been reviewed by Twombly (1944) and by Hamburger (1946). According to Twombly (1944) the presence of HCG in urine usually provides evidence that the tumour is radio-resistant and that the prognosis for the patient is very poor. Hamburger (1946) succeeded in demonstrating HCG activity in extracts of tumour tissue and concluded that the neoplasm itself and not the anterior pituitary was responsible for the elaboration of the hormone.

Various workers have reported that patients with chorionepithelioma of the testis excrete quantities of HCG comparable

to those found in cases of hydatidiform mole (Ferguson, 1933; Furuhjelm, 1940). However, at the time of writing, little quantitative information is available in the literature regarding HCG excretion in this type of tumour. The subject requires reinvestigation using more reliable assay methods.

5. Foetal Death.

Quantitative assays of HCG may be of diagnostic and prognostic value in relation to the fate of the foetus (Chosson and Donnet, 1934; Rakoff, 1940). Foetal death is indicated by a progressive fall in excretion values to levels not detectable by current assay methods. In the investigation of a case of suspected foetal death serial estimations should be undertaken. HCG may continue to be secreted by the chorionic tissue for some time after the foetus has died. Accordingly a positive pregnancy test obtained at or near the time of suspected foetal death is not of itself proof that the foetus is still viable.

6. Pre-eclamptic Toxæmia.

Numerous workers have estimated HCG in the blood and urine of toxæmic women, but in most investigations reported the results have been expressed in 'animal units' and the assay methods employed have not been reliable. From the clinical point of view interest has been focused on the possible value of serum and urinary HCG estimations as a prognostic index in such cases.

Smith and Smith (1934, 1939, 1941), using the corpora lutea assay method in rats, were the first to note that a proportion of pre-eclamptic patients (over 70 per cent. of their series) showed abnormally large quantities of HCG in the serum when compared with normally pregnant women. The rise in serum HCG was often observed some weeks before the development of pre-eclampsia, and the Smiths suggested that this finding might serve as a warning of impending toxæmia. In later work, however (Smith and Smith, 1948), they were forced to the conclusion that the elevation of HCG bore little or no relationship to the severity of the disease and was therefore of little value in prognosis. Taylor and Scadron (1939), employing the same method of assay as that used by the Smiths, reported high concentrations of HCG in the urine and serum

of a proportion of their cases, but in many toxæmic women the readings were entirely normal throughout the period of investigation. Watts and Adair (1943) performed HCG assays in the urine of pre-eclamptic and eclamptic patients and of cases of essential hypertension in pregnancy. It was shown that the mean excretion of HCG in pre-eclamptic toxæmia and eclampsia was significantly higher than in normal pregnancy but that cases of essential hypertension in pregnancy also excreted significantly higher amounts of HCG. Watts and Adair concluded that abnormalities in HCG secretion *per se* did not play an important part in the ætiology of pre-eclamptic toxæmia.

A reinvestigation of the problem was undertaken by Loraine and Matthew (1950) who used the prostatic weight method to assay HCG in blood and urine. Observations were made in twenty-nine patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia, nine with essential hypertension in pregnancy and five with essential hypertension with superimposed toxæmia. The pre-eclamptic patients were further subdivided into three groups—severe, moderate and mild. The assessment of the severity of the toxæmia was based mainly on the rapidity of evolution of the disease and on its response to therapeutic measures. Cases were said to be mild if the symptoms subsided under treatment and the patient proceeded uneventfully to term. The disease was regarded as moderate when there was no appreciable change in the condition in spite of therapy. In the severe group the course of the disease was fulminating; in some, eclamptic fits occurred and in all cases there was an urgent indication for the interruption of pregnancy. For a diagnosis of essential hypertension in pregnancy it was necessary to have the history of hypertension prior to the onset of pregnancy or from the earliest weeks of pregnancy. Another group presented features both of essential hypertension and pre-eclamptic toxæmia; in these patients hypertension was already present in early pregnancy and the symptoms of pre-eclamptic toxæmia appeared after the twentieth week.

The results of HCG assays in the five groups of cases are shown in Figs. 18 to 22 and in Table V.

It was found that in severe pre-eclamptic toxæmia the mean urinary excretion and serum concentration of HCG were significantly higher than in normal pregnancy ($P < 0.01$), but

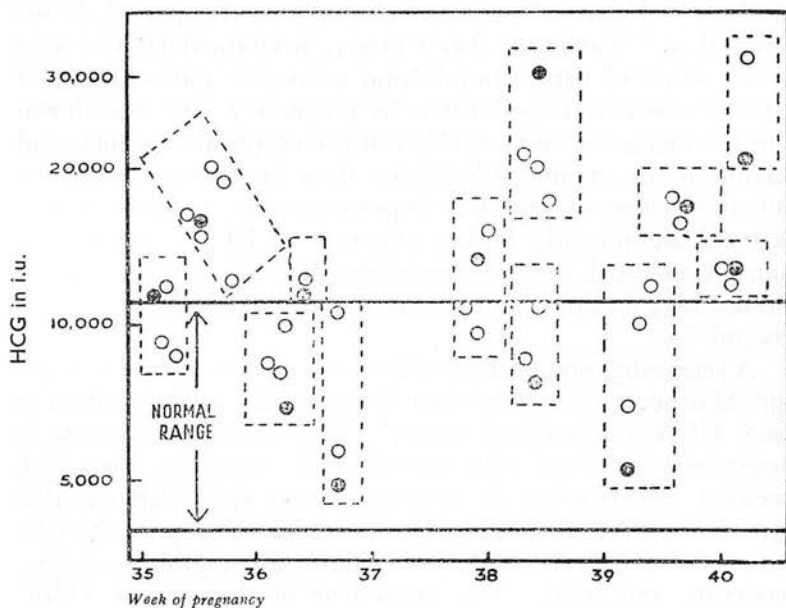


FIG. 18

HCG levels in severe pre-eclamptic toxæmia. Open circles denote urinary excretion; closed circles denote serum concentration. The estimations for each individual patient are grouped together. (From Loraine and Matthew, 1950.)

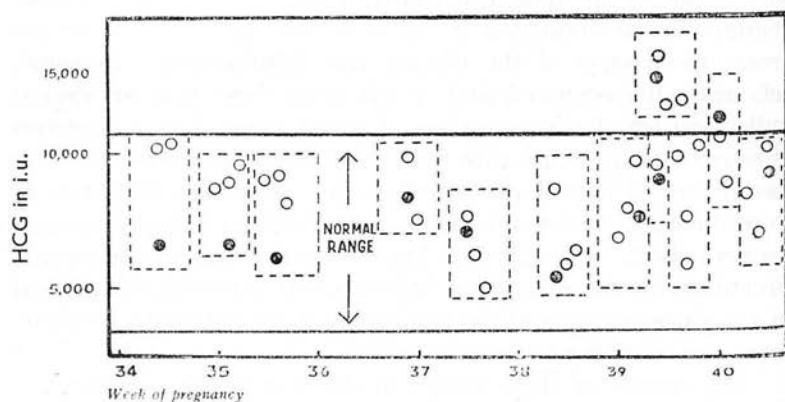


FIG. 19

HCG levels in moderate pre-eclamptic toxæmia. Open circles denote urinary excretion; closed circles denote serum concentration. The estimations for each individual patient are grouped together. (From Loraine and Matthew, 1950.)

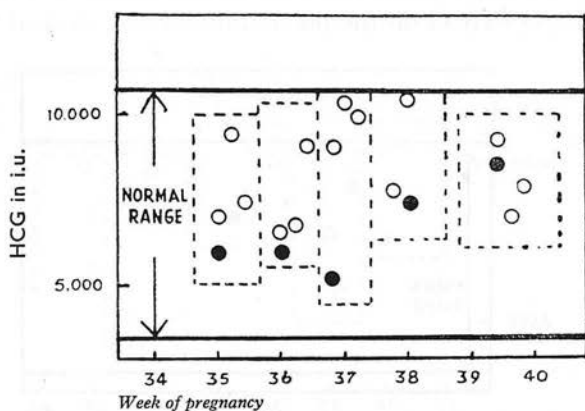


FIG. 20

HCG levels in mild pre-eclamptic toxæmia. Open circles denote urinary excretion; closed circles denote serum concentration. The estimations for each individual patient are grouped together. (From Loraine and Matthew, 1950.)

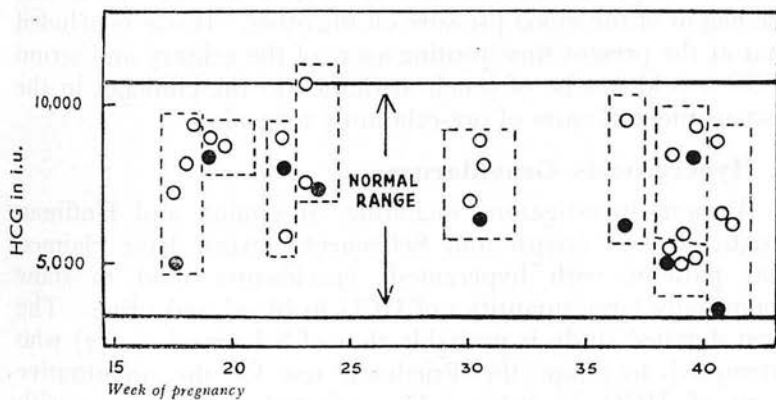


FIG. 21

HCG levels in essential hypertension in pregnancy. Open circles denote urinary excretion; closed circles denote serum concentration. The estimations for each individual patient are grouped together. (From Loraine and Matthew, 1950.)

in none of the other groups of patients was a significant difference observed. No correlation could be demonstrated between the high readings of HCG on the one hand and any clinical feature

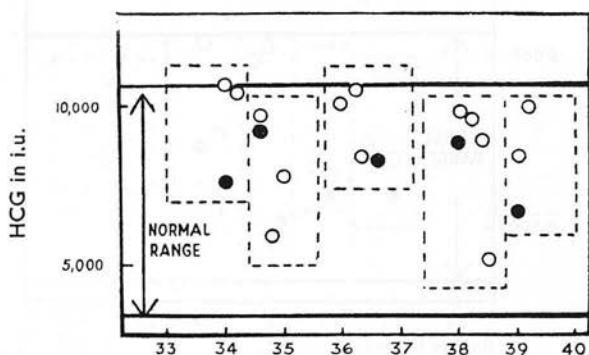


FIG. 22

HCG levels in essential hypertension with superimposed toxæmia. Open circles denote urinary excretion; closed circles denote serum concentration. The estimations for each individual patient are grouped together. (From Loraine and Matthew, 1950.)

such as the presence of œdema, the degree of albuminuria and the height of the blood pressure on the other. It was concluded that at the present time routine assay of the urinary and serum HCG would not be of much assistance to the clinician in the management of cases of pre-eclamptic toxæmia.

7. Hyperemesis Gravidarum.

Various investigators, including Anselmino and Hoffman (1936), Rakoff (1940) and Schoeneck (1942), have claimed that patients with hyperemesis gravidarum tend to show abnormally large quantities of HCG in blood and urine. The most detailed study is probably that of Schoeneck (1942) who attempted to adapt the Friedman test for the quantitative assay of HCG in urine. He reported that patients with hyperemesis excreted significantly larger quantities of HCG than did normally pregnant women and that a positive correlation existed between the severity of the vomiting and the HCG output. These results were not confirmed by Loraine (1949 *a*) who found that the HCG excretion in such patients lay within the normal range for the duration of pregnancy.

TABLE V
URINARY EXCRETION AND SERUM CONCENTRATION OF HCG IN NORMAL,
TOXÆMIC AND HYPERTENSIVE PATIENTS
(From Loraine and Matthew, 1950)

Type of Case.	Number of Patients.	Number of Patients with High HCG.	Urinary HCG. I.U. per Twenty-four Hours.			Serum HCG. I.U. per Litre.		
			Number of Estimations.	Mean.	Standard Deviation.	Number of Estimations.	Mean.	Standard Deviation.
Severe pre-eclamptic toxæmia .	12	8/12	30	13,310	5,420	12	13,050	7,160
Moderate pre-eclamptic toxæmia .	12	2/12	31	8,840	2,370	12	8,030	2,860
Mild pre-eclamptic toxæmia .	5	0/5	14	8,260	1,610	5	6,450	1,200
Essential hypertension (uncomplicated)	9	0/9	22	7,490	1,620	9	6,250	1,400
Essential hypertension with super-imposed toxæmia	5	0/5	14	8,960	1,820	5	7,950	1,110
Normal control subjects .	12	0/12	15	8,350	1,490	15	6,400	1,460

8. Diabetic Pregnancy.

Although the introduction of insulin greatly reduced the maternal mortality rate in diabetes mellitus, the foetal mortality has not shown a corresponding decline. The high foetal loss rate remains the main problem in pregnant diabetics and in some series of cases the mortality has reached 50 per cent. It is not surprising, therefore, that considerable interest has been aroused by the claims made by White and her collaborators in Boston (White, 1947, 1952; White and Hunt, 1943) that a very significant reduction in the foetal mortality rate in diabetic pregnancy (from 50 per cent. to approximately 10 per cent.) can be obtained with hormonal therapy. The therapy for White's patients consisted of the parenteral administration of oestrogens and progesterone; these substances were given to correct a so-called 'hormonal imbalance' which was characterised by an abnormally high serum concentration of HCG and an abnormally low excretion of urinary pregnanediol. HCG was assayed by the corpora lutea method in rats. The method of assay of pregnanediol is described in Chapter X along with the results obtained.

White (1952) has published her experience with this therapy in 525 pregnant diabetics studied over a fifteen-year period. Stilboestrol and progesterone (Proluton) were administered parenterally in a gradually increasing dosage throughout pregnancy to those patients showing 'hormonal imbalance.' The dosage schedule employed was similar to that used by the Smiths in the treatment of patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia. Approximately 10,000 estimations of serum HCG were made in the 525 cases. From her studies White (1952) drew the following conclusions:

(a) Ninety-one per cent. of the patients showed an abnormally high serum HCG concentration.

(b) Estimation of the serum HCG was of considerable diagnostic and prognostic value in these patients because a rise of serum HCG often preceded obstetrical complications by some weeks.

(c) Only in patients with an abnormally high serum HCG concentration did obstetrical accidents and complications occur. In forty-seven patients in whom the serum level was within normal limits, the foetal survival rate was 96 per cent. and the

incidence of premature delivery and pre-eclamptic toxæmia was nil.

(d) Stilbœstrol and progesterone corrected the so-called 'hormonal imbalance' and restored the HCG levels to normal. When hormonal therapy was employed the foetal survival rate rose sharply and the incidence of premature delivery and pre-eclamptic toxæmia fell correspondingly.

In a series of ninety-eight patients showing 'hormonal imbalance' and not receiving therapy the foetal survival rate was only 52 per cent., the incidence of premature delivery was 33 per cent. and of pre-eclamptic toxæmia 33 per cent. These figures were in marked contrast to the results obtained in 380 patients in whom the 'hormonal balance was corrected' by substitution therapy. In this latter group the foetal survival rate rose to 90 per cent., premature delivery occurred in 17 per cent. and the incidence of pre-eclamptic toxæmia fell to 7 per cent.

Other groups of investigators have failed to confirm White's claims with regard to the diagnostic and prognostic value of HCG assays in pregnant diabetics. For example, Keltz *et al.* (1950), in a series of thirty patients, were unable to show that the serum HCG concentration bore any relationship either to the occurrence of foetal death or to the development of pre-eclamptic toxæmia. In the experience of these workers combined therapy with œstrogens and progesterone did not affect the serum concentration of HCG in the third trimester of diabetic pregnancy.

Loraine and Matthew (1954) have recently studied the urinary excretion and serum concentration of HCG in fifty-two pregnant diabetics. The hormone was assayed by the prostatic weight method in rats and results were expressed in terms of the international standard. Readings for both serum and urine were considered to be abnormally high if they were consistently above 11,000 i.u. in the second and third trimesters of pregnancy. In the earlier stage of the investigation oral stilbœstrol was administered to those patients showing an abnormally high excretion of urinary HCG. During this time six out of fourteen cases were so treated. In the later stages of the study no hormonal therapy was given irrespective of the HCG readings in blood and urine.

The results obtained by Loraine and Matthew (1954) did

not agree in three respects with those of White and her collaborators.

(a) It was found that, as compared with White's series, a much smaller proportion of diabetic patients showed abnormally high HCG readings in blood and urine. Of the forty-nine patients in whom estimations of urinary HCG were undertaken, only fourteen (29 per cent.) showed abnormally high figures, while of the thirty-seven patients in whom the serum concentration of the hormone was estimated only ten (27 per cent.) were above the normal range. In the total series of fifty-two patients high levels of HCG either in urine or in serum were found in seventeen cases only (33 per cent.).

(b) When the series of cases studied in Edinburgh was analysed to show the relationship of HCG levels to obstetric complications, it was found that foetal death, pre-eclamptic toxæmia and premature delivery were just as likely to occur in pregnant diabetics with normal HCG readings as in those with abnormal levels.

(c) Stilbœstrol produced only a temporary fall in the HCG excretion in pregnant diabetics (Loraine, 1949 *b*). Consistent depression of the output by prolonged œstrogen therapy was not obtained even when large doses of stilbœstrol (100 to 200 mg. per day) were administered. The initial depression was soon followed by an 'escape' phenomenon and the readings tended to return to their original level while the patient was still receiving œstrogen therapy. Typical results in two pregnant diabetics treated with stilbœstrol are shown in Figs. 23 and 24.

In Fig. 25 is shown the urinary excretion of HCG in twenty-five pregnant diabetics to whom hormonal treatment was not given. It will be noted that in this series of patients the majority of readings lay within the normal range.

It can only be assumed that the differing results obtained by the various groups of investigators for the HCG levels in pregnant diabetics must depend to a large extent on the methods of assay employed. Mention has already been made of the grave disadvantages of the rat corpora lutea test as used by White and her collaborators. In the assays conducted by these workers the relative potency was not expressed in terms of the international standard for HCG but in 'rat units' per 100 ml. of serum. Accordingly it is doubtful if any quantitative significance can be attached to the results obtained.

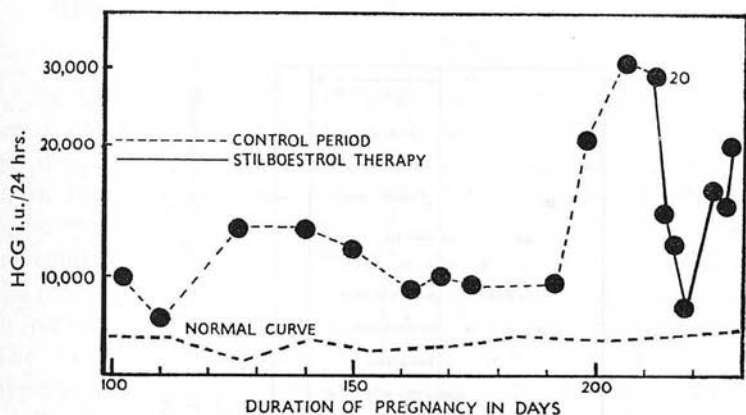


FIG. 23

Urinary excretion of HCG in a pregnant diabetic treated with stilboestrol. The small figures indicate dosages (milligrams per day) and are placed at the date the treatment was started. (From Loraine, 1953.)

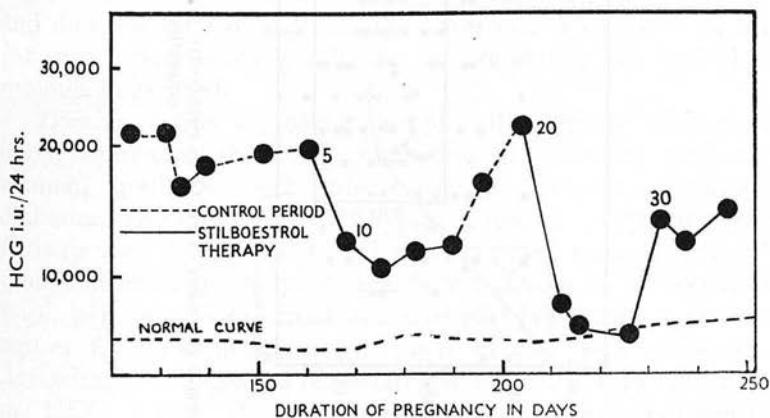


FIG. 24

Urinary excretion of HCG in a pregnant diabetic treated with stilboestrol. The small figures indicate dosages (milligrams per day) and are placed at the date the treatment was started. (From Loraine, 1953.)

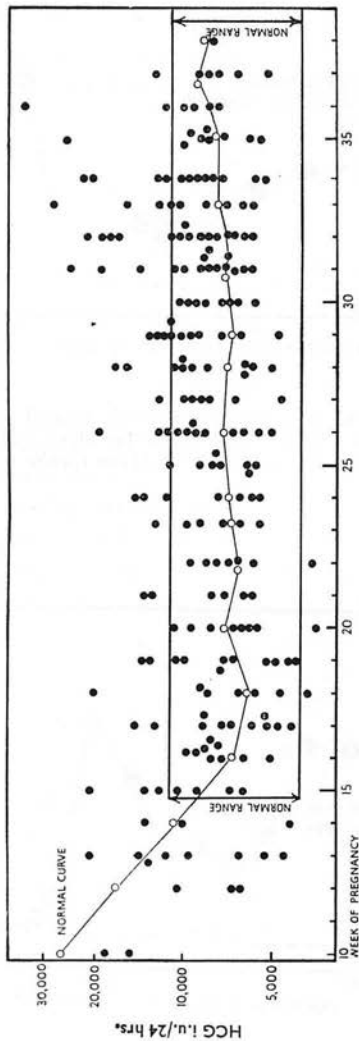


Fig. 25
Urinary excretion of HCG in twenty-five pregnant diabetics without hormonal therapy—total number of estimations = 230. (From Loraine, 1953)

RENAL CLEARANCE OF HCG IN NORMAL AND ABNORMAL PREGNANCY

As noted previously (p. 74) the urinary excretion and serum concentration of HCG fluctuate characteristically during normal pregnancy. This fluctuation might represent alterations in the rate of formation, in the rate of destruction or in the rate of excretion of the hormone. In an attempt to gain further information on this problem Gastineau *et al.* (1949) studied the renal clearance of HCG in normally pregnant women and in patients with hydatidiform mole and testicular tumours. The method of assay of HCG depended on the ovarian hyperæmia response in rats; renal clearance was calculated by the formula UV/B ¹ and was expressed as millilitres per minute. These workers reported a mean clearance in normal pregnancy of 0.36 ml. per min. and also found that the mean clearance in the first trimester of normal pregnancy did not differ significantly from that obtained in the second and third trimesters. From available data Gastineau *et al.* (1949) calculated that the renal clearance in a series of patients studied by Smith and Smith (1939) was 0.85 ml. per min. and that obtained by Taylor and Scadron (1939) was 0.44 ml. per min. Such very low figures for clearance are typical of proteins in general.

Loraine (1950 b), using the prostatic weight method of assay, estimated the HCG clearance in normally pregnant women, patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia, pregnant diabetics, cases of essential hypertension in pregnancy and patients with hypertension and superimposed toxæmia. In all groups of cases the mean clearance was found to be less than 1 ml. per min. In normal and diabetic pregnancy consistent figures for clearance were obtained in the three trimesters. Accordingly it appeared reasonable to conclude that variations in HCG levels during pregnancy probably represented alterations in the rate of production and destruction of the hormone and were not the result of differences in the renal excretion.

The pre-eclamptic patients were classified on a clinical

¹ U = Concentration of the hormone in the urine.

V = Volume of urine secreted per minute.

B = Concentration of the hormone in the serum.

basis into three categories—mild, moderate and severe. In the mild and moderate cases the mean clearance did not differ significantly from that in normal pregnancy. Similar results were obtained in patients with uncomplicated essential hypertension and in cases showing essential hypertension with superimposed toxæmia. In the severe pre-eclamptic group, however, the mean clearance was significantly lower than that in normal pregnancy. This observation is probably merely another indication of the renal damage frequently found in severe cases of pre-eclamptic toxæmia.

In the studies reported by Loraine (1950 *b*) a close quantitative similarity was noted between the urinary and serum concentration of HCG. In all types of case the mean urine/serum concentration ratio was approximately unity. In the series of patients investigated by Gastineau *et al.* (1949) the figures obtained for the urinary excretion of HCG were quantitatively very similar to those obtained by Loraine (1950 *b*), but their serum concentrations were much higher, averaging 3.06 times the concentration in the urine. Diczfalussy and Loraine (1955) suggested that this discrepancy might result from the use of different assay methods by the two groups of workers. The precision of the ovarian hyperæmia test as used by Gastineau *et al.* (1949) is relatively low (Table III), and it is difficult to exclude the possibility that the figures obtained by this method for the concentration of HCG in pregnancy serum may be erroneously high. Such a criticism does not appear to apply to results obtained using the prostatic weight technique.

CONCENTRATION OF HCG IN THE PLACENTA IN NORMAL AND ABNORMAL PREGNANCY

Smith and Smith (1935) found that placenta from toxæmic patients had a significantly greater concentration of HCG than those from normally pregnant women. Various investigators have demonstrated a considerably higher HCG concentration in placenta obtained during the early weeks of gestation when compared with those examined in late pregnancy. By far the most careful study of the HCG concentration in normal human placenta is that of Diczfalussy (1953). This worker, who expressed results in international units, found that the placental

concentration of HCG was maximal in the second and third months of pregnancy (corresponding to the peak period in blood and urine), fell rapidly in the third and fourth months, and from the fifth month onwards was relatively constant, remaining below 20 i.u. per g.

Loraine and Matthew (1953) estimated the placental concentration of HCG in normal, diabetic and toxæmic pregnancy. They found that the placental HCG concentration did not

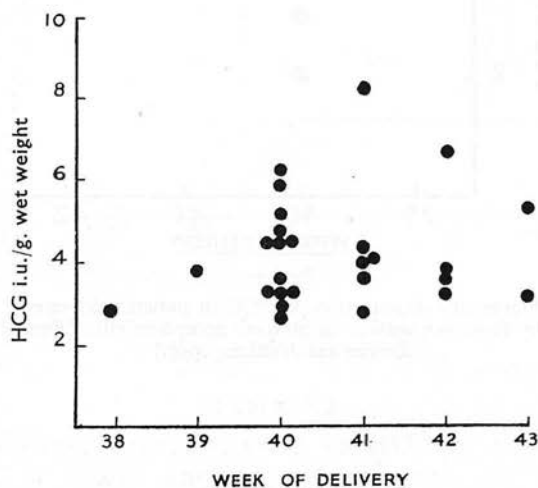


FIG. 26

Placental concentration of HCG in subjects with an uncomplicated pregnancy and vaginal delivery. (From Loraine and Matthew, 1953.)

differ significantly between normal patients delivered by the vaginal route and patients delivered by Cæsarean section for purely obstetrical indications. In cases with moderate and severe pre-eclamptic toxæmia and in diabetic pregnancy, however, the mean figure for the HCG concentration was significantly higher than that in the control series, but in patients with mild pre-eclamptic toxæmia the mean figure did not differ significantly from that in the control series. The results obtained in the different types of case are shown in Figs. 26 to 29 and in Table VI.

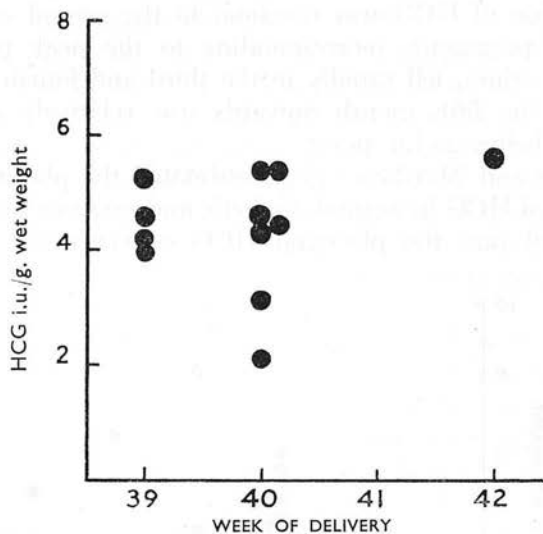


FIG. 27

Placental concentration of HCG in patients delivered by Caesarean section for obstetric complications. (From Loraine and Matthew, 1953.)

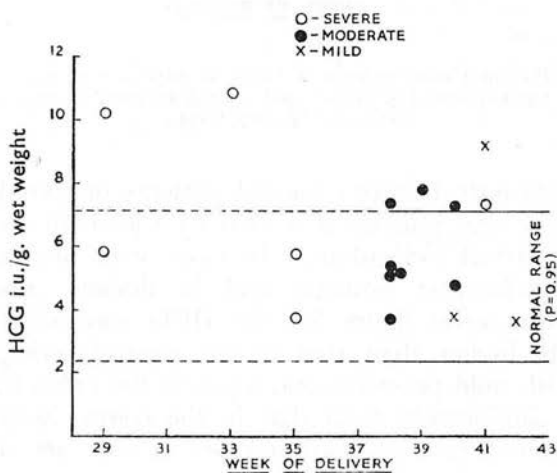


FIG. 28

Placental concentration of HCG in patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia. (From Loraine and Matthew, 1953.)

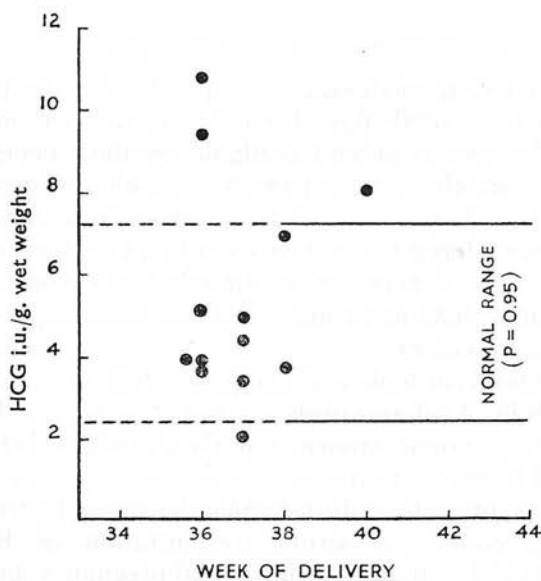


FIG. 29

Placental concentration of HCG in pregnant diabetics.
(From Loraine and Matthew, 1953.)

TABLE VI

PLACENTAL CONCENTRATION OF HCG IN NORMAL
AND ABNORMAL PREGNANCY

(From Loraine and Matthew, 1953)

Type of Case.	Number of Patients.	Mean HCG Concentration. I.U. per g. Wet Weight.	Standard Deviation of the Logarithm.	Range (P = 0.95). I.U. per g. Wet Weight.
Uncomplicated pregnancy with vaginal delivery	27	4.11	0.12	2.39 to 7.06
Cæsarean section (obstetrical abnormalities)	12	4.28	0.13	2.39 to 7.73
Severe pre-eclamptic toxæmia and eclampsia	6	6.89	0.16	3.34 to 14.19
Moderate pre-eclamptic toxæmia	8	5.70	0.11	3.44 to 9.33
Mild pre-eclamptic toxæmia	3	5.11	0.23	3.03 to 14.39
Diabetes mellitus . . .	14	5.16	0.22	1.92 to 13.93

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Many bio-assay methods for the quantitative determination of HCG in body fluids have been described. The most satisfactory techniques at present available are those depending on the prostatic weight in rats or on the expulsion of spermatozoa in amphibia. The success of the ovarian hyperæmia test in rats appears to depend to a large extent on the strain of animal employed. Care is necessary in the selection of assay methods for estimating HCG in pregnancy serum in order to avoid an overestimate of potency.

In hydatidiform mole and chorionepithelioma of the uterus HCG levels in blood and urine are generally higher than those in normally pregnant women, but the difference between the two groups is not clear cut.

In severe pre-eclamptic toxæmia the mean figures for the urinary excretion and serum concentration of HCG are significantly higher than those in normal pregnancy, but in mild and moderate pre-eclamptic toxæmia and in essential hypertension in pregnancy the figures do not differ significantly from those in normal pregnancy. There is no apparent correlation between the HCG levels and any clinical feature of the disease.

In diabetic pregnancy approximately 30 per cent. of patients show abnormally high readings of HCG in serum and urine. There is, however, no correlation between the HCG levels on the one hand and the medical and obstetrical findings on the other. Stilbæstrol when administered to diabetic women causes a transient fall in the urinary excretion of HCG.

In all cases the mean renal clearance of HCG is less than 1 ml. per min. In normal and diabetic pregnancy constant figures are obtained in the three trimesters of pregnancy. The mean clearance in severe pre-eclamptic toxæmia is significantly lower than in normal pregnancy.

In moderate and severe pre-eclamptic toxæmia and in diabetic pregnancy the mean placental concentration of HCG is significantly higher than in normal subjects.

REFERENCES

- ALBERT, A. (1948). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **8**, 619.
 ALBERT, A. & BERKSON, J. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 805.
 ANSELMINO, K. J. & HOFFMANN, F. (1936). *Arch. Gynäk.* **162**, 363.
 ASCHHEIM, S. & ZONDEK, B. (1927). *Klin. Wschr.* **6**, 1322.

- BORTH, R., LUNENFELD, B. & DE WATTEVILLE, H. (1957). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **24**, 119.
- BROWNE, J. S. L. & VENNING, E. H. (1936). *Lancet*, **2**, 1507.
- BRUNER, J. A. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 360.
- CHOSSE, J. & DONNET, V. (1934). *Pr. Méd.* **42**, 892.
- COWIE, A. T. (1948). *Pregnancy Diagnosis Tests: a Review*. Commonwealth Agricultural Bureaux Joint Publication, No. 13.
- DELFS, E. (1941). *Endocrinology*, **28**, 196.
- DICZFALUSY, E. (1953). *Acta endocr. Kbh. suppl.* 12.
- DICZFALUSY, E. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **17**, 58.
- DICZFALUSY, E., HÖGBERG, B. & WESTMAN, A. (1950). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **5**, 226.
- DICZFALUSY, E. & LORAIN, J. A. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 424.
- DORFMAN, R. I. & RUBIN, B. L. (1947). *Endocrinology*, **41**, 456.
- EMMENS, C. W. (1939). *Bull. Hlth Org. L.o.N.* **8**, 862.
- EVANS, H. M., KOHLS, C. L. & WONDER, D. H. (1937). *J. Amer. med. Ass.* **108**, 287.
- FERGUSON, R. S. (1933). *Amer. J. Cancer*, **28**, 269.
- FOSCO, A. L. (1943). *Mtschr. Geburtsh. Gynäk.* **116**, 36.
- FURUHJELM, M. (1940). *Acta obstet. gynec. scand.* **20**, 1.
- GALLI-MAININI, C. (1947). *Sem. méd. B. Aires*, **1**, 337.
- GASTINEAU, C. F., ALBERT, A. & RANDALL, L. M. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 615.
- GURIN, S., BACHMAN, G. & WILSON, D. W. (1940). *J. biol. Chem.* **133**, 467.
- HAMBURGER, C. (1944). *Acta obstet. gynec. scand.* **24**, 45.
- HAMBURGER, C. (1946). *J. Endocrin.* **5**, proc. xxiv.
- HASKINS, A. L., Jr. & SHERMAN, A. I. (1949). *Endocrinology*, **44**, 542.
- HASKINS, A. L., Jr. & SHERMAN, A. I. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 385.
- HEARD, R. D. H. & WINTON, S. S. (1939). *J. Physiol.* **96**, 248.
- HOBSON, B. M. (1952). *Quart. J. exp. Physiol.* **37**, 191.
- HOBSON, B. M. (1955). *J. Obstet. Gynec. Brit. Emp.* **62**, 354.
- JONES, G. E. S., DELFS, E. & STRAN, H. M. (1944). *Johns Hopk. Hosp. Bull.* **75**, 359.
- JONES, G. E. S., GEY, G. O. & GEY, M. K. (1943). *Johns Hopk. Hosp. Bull.* **72**, 26.
- KATZMAN, P. A., GODFRID, M., CAIN, M. K. & DOISY, E. A. (1943). *J. biol. Chem.* **148**, 501.
- KELTZ, B. F., KEATY, E. C. & HELLBAUM, A. A. (1950). *Southern med. J.* **43**, 803.
- KUPPERMAN, H. S., GREENBLATT, R. B. & LOBACK, C. R. (1943). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **3**, 548.
- LEACH, R. B., TOKUYAMA, I. & MADDOCK, W. O. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 887.
- LEVIN, L. (1941). *Endocrinology*, **28**, 378.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1949 a). Ph.D. Thesis. University of Edinburgh.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1949 b). *Brit. med. J.* **2**, 1496.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1950 a). *J. Endocrinol.* **6**, 319.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1950 b). *Quart. J. exp. Physiol.* **36**, 11.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1952). *J. Obstet. Gynec. Brit. Emp.* **49**, 536.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1953). In Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology, vol. 5, p. 58. London: Churchill.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1954). *Ann. chir. gyn. fenn.* **42**, 129.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1956 a). *Vitam. & Horm.* **14**, 305.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1956 b). Unpublished observations.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1957). In Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology, vol. 11, p. 19. London: Churchill.
- LORAIN, J. A. & MATTHEW, G. D. (1950). *J. Obstet. Gynec. Brit. Emp.* **57**, 542.
- LORAIN, J. A. & MATTHEW, G. D. (1953). *J. Obstet. Gynec. Brit. Emp.* **60**, 641.
- LORAIN, J. A. & MATTHEW, G. D. (1954). *Le Diabète*, **2**, 43.
- LUNDGREN, H. P., GURIN, S., BACHMAN, C. & WILSON, D. W. (1942). *J. biol. Chem.* **142**, 367.
- MADDOCK, W. O. & LEACH, R. B. (1952). *J. Lab. clin. Med.* **40**, 923.
- MADDOCK, W. O., TOKUYAMA, I. & LEACH, R. B. (1953). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **84**, 352.
- PAYNE, R. W. (1951). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **77**, 242.
- RAKOFF, A. E. (1940). *Penn. med. J.* **43**, 669.
- Report of the Third International Conference on the Standardisation of Hormones (1939). *Bull. Hlth Org. L.o.N.* **8**, 884.

- ROBBINS, S. L. & PARKER, F. (1948). *Endocrinology*, **27**, 37.
- SCHOENECK, F. J. (1942). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **43**, 308.
- SEALY, J. L. & SONDERN, C. W. (1940). *Endocrinology*, **26**, 813.
- SMITH, E. K. (1955). *Endocrinology*, **56**, 567.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1934). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **107**, 128.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1935). *Surg. Gynec. Obstet.* **61**, 175.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1936). *New Engl. J. Med.* **215**, 908.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1939). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **38**, 618.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1941). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **1**, 470.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1948). *Physiol. Rev.* **28**, 1.
- STEWART, H. L., JR., SANO, M. E. & MONTGOMERY, T. L. (1948). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **8**, 175.
- TAYLOR, H. C., JR. & SCADRON, E. N. (1939). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **37**, 963.
- THAYER, S. A. (1946). *Vitam. & Horm.* **4**, 311.
- THORBORG, J. V. (1950). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **4**, 163.
- THORBORG, J. V. & HANSEN, K. (1951). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **6**, 51.
- TWOMBLY, G. H. (1944). *Surgery*, **16**, 181.
- VENNING, E. H. (1948). *Obstet. Gynec. Surv.* **3**, 661.
- WANNAN, J. S. (1952). *Med. J. Aust.* **2**, 83.
- WATTS, R. M. & ADAIR, F. L. (1943). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **46**, 183.
- WHITE, P. (1947). *Penn. med. J.* **50**, 705.
- WHITE, P. (1949). *Amer. med. J.* **7**, 609.
- WHITE, P. (1952). In *Treatment of Diabetes Mellitus*, 8th ed., p. 769. Ed., E. P. Joslin. London: Kimpton.
- WHITE, P. & HUNT, H. (1943). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **3**, 500.
- WILSON, R. B., ALBERT, A. & RANDALL, L. M. (1949). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **58**, 960.
- WOHLZOGEN, F. X. (1953). *Arch. Path. Pharmacol.* **217**, 482.
- ZONDEK, B. (1931). *Die Hormone des Ovarium und des Hypophysen von der Lappens.* Wien.
- ZONDEK, B., SULMAN, F. & BLACK, R. (1945). *J. Amer. med. Ass.* **128**, 939.

CHAPTER IV

Thyrotrophin

INTRODUCTION

THIS hormone is elaborated by the anterior lobe of the pituitary and controls the activity of the thyroid gland.

Other names for thyrotrophin are the *thyrotrophic hormone* and the *thyroid-stimulating hormone* (TSH).

1. Chemical Nature of Thyrotrophin.

Thyrotrophin was first extracted from bovine pituitary glands by Loeb and Bassett in 1930. Since then considerable progress has been made in the purification of the hormone. The preparation made by Ciereszko and White (1942) was a white powder which was freely soluble in water ; the substance was shown to behave as a pure protein in electrophoretic and solubility studies. The molecular weight of the hormone was estimated to be 10,000.

2. Thyrotrophin and Exophthalmos-producing Substance (EPS).

It has been known for many years that anterior pituitary extracts, when administered to animals, produce both thyroid hyperplasia and exophthalmos, and it has been generally assumed that the two effects are due to one and the same substance, namely, thyrotrophin. This view has recently been challenged by Dobyns and his associates (Dobyns, 1946 ; Dobyns and Steelman, 1953) as a result of their experiments on pituitary extracts. These workers assayed TSH by a variety of methods in day-old chicks, and EPS by the degree of exophthalmos produced in the Atlantic minnow, *Fundulus heteroclitus*. They found that in many cases the two activities did not run parallel and showed that it was possible to separate TSH from EPS in these extracts by a method depending on the differential solubility of the two substances in trichloroacetic acid.

In view of these observations it is obvious that an attempt

should be made to develop a technique for the estimation of exophthalmos-producing substance in the body fluids of man. Assays of EPS and TSH should if possible be conducted on the same patients. The information obtained from such assays might well provide valuable information in relation to the aetiology of clinical exophthalmos.

3. The International Standard for Thyrotrophin.

This was recently established by the World Health Organisation (Mussett and Perry, 1955). One international unit is defined as the activity contained in 13.5 mg. of the international standard. Results of all assays for thyrotrophin should now be expressed in terms of the standard preparation. 'Animal units' such as those described by Junkmann and Schoeller (1932) and Heyl and Laqueur (1935) should no longer be used.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF THYROTROPHIN

A very large number of bio-assay methods for TSH have been described in the last two decades. Many of the techniques are capable of estimating the thyrotrophin content of pituitary extracts, but few are sufficiently sensitive to measure the small quantities of the hormone present in human blood and urine. There is at present a great need for a reliable method of TSH assay which would be suitable for relatively wide clinical application. Such a procedure would enable clinicians to correlate the TSH levels in blood and urine with other objective assessments of thyroid function such as those obtained by radio-isotope studies and by the estimation of the blood concentration of protein-bound iodine. These combined studies might well give new and interesting information regarding the aetiology of such conditions as primary Graves' disease, secondary toxic nodular goitre, pre-tibial myxoedema and various forms of hypothyroidism. Furthermore, such investigations might provide data by means of which new and more satisfactory forms of therapy could be introduced for patients suffering from these diseases.

In the assay methods proposed by various investigators five main experimental animals have been used. These are (1) the chick, (2) the guinea-pig, (3) the rat, (4) the mouse and (5) the

tadpole. For further information on the present position of TSH assay the reader is referred to review articles by Turner (1950), Gaddum and Loraine (1950), Tala (1952), Lamberg (1953) and Wahlberg (1955).

1. Methods employing Chicks.

The thyroid of the one-day-old or two-day-old chick is one of the most widely used test objects for the assay of thyrotrophin. In general, assays in chicks are rather more sensitive than those in rats, mice and guinea-pigs. However, as emphasised by Lamberg (1953) and by others, such methods require rigid standardisation of technique during their performance. Among the many factors which will influence the response are the strain, weight, sex and age of the chick, the environmental temperature, the intensity of illumination, the geographical location and the diet. The following indices of response in the chick thyroid will be considered.

(a) **THYROID WEIGHT.**—TSH will increase the weight of the chick thyroid, and this assay method was originally proposed by Smelser (1937) for the estimation of the thyrotrophic potency of beef pituitary extracts. The method is time-consuming and is too insensitive for use in the clinical field.

(b) **ACINAR CELL HEIGHT.**—In 1940 Rawson and Salter described a microhistometric method in which the end point of the assay depended on the ability of TSH to cause an increase in acinar cell height. The technique is very laborious as over 100 successive acini must be examined in each section. It has, however, been claimed that the method is sufficiently sensitive to detect the presence of the hormone in human urine.

(c) **IODINE CONTENT.**—Thyrotrophin increases the uptake and turnover of iodine by the thyroid gland, and various assay methods have been devised depending on this effect. Most workers now employ radio-active iodine (^{131}I) in preference to inert iodine, and it is usually advisable to pre-treat the chicks with thyroxine in order to inhibit the secretion of endogenous TSH. One of the most promising methods is that described by Gilliland and Fraser (1953). This depends on the discharge of ^{131}I from the thyroid gland of the one-day-old male chick which has been pre-treated with thyroxine. The technique is both simple and rapid and is claimed to be capable of estimating TSH in the blood of normal subjects.

(d) PHOSPHORUS UPTAKE.—It is well known that TSH will increase the uptake of phosphorus by the thyroid gland. Assay methods for the hormone based on the uptake of ^{32}P have been described by Lamberg (1953) and by Crooke and Matthews (1953). Such techniques are rapid, simple and reasonably specific, but it is doubtful if they are sufficiently sensitive for use in the clinical field.

2. Methods employing Guinea-pigs.

Observations can be based on the weight of the thyroid, on histological changes, on the uptake of ^{32}P and on the discharge of ^{131}I . The following methods will be considered.

(a) ACINAR CELL HEIGHT.—This is a microhistometric procedure which was introduced by Rawson and Starr (1938) and depends on the ability of TSH to cause an increase in the height of the epithelial cells lining the acini. In its original form the technique is too insensitive for studies in man.

(b) PERCENTAGE OF EPITHELIUM.—Uotila and Kannas (1952) and Tala (1952) have recently described a method for the quantitative estimation of TSH which involves determination of the relative proportion of epithelium, colloid and stroma in the thyroid. These components are measured along crossed straight lines drawn at random in a section projected at high magnification. The percentage of epithelium is believed to give a more satisfactory index of thyroid activity than the other components. According to Tala (1952) this method is extremely sensitive and will detect as little as 0.00001 of a 'Junkmann-Schoeller unit' of TSH.¹ Clinical studies with this technique will be awaited with interest.

(c) INTRACELLULAR COLLOID DROPLETS.—de Robertis and del Conte (1944) developed a very sensitive assay method for TSH, depending on the determination of the number of colloid droplets in the cells of the guinea-pig thyroid. This technique is almost certainly not specific for TSH and should no longer be used.

(d) RADIO-ACTIVE IODINE DISCHARGE.—In this procedure which has been devised by Adams and Purves (1955) the

¹ A 'Junkmann-Schoeller Unit' (J-S U) is defined as the amount of thyrotrophin required to produce after three daily injections a definite histological reaction in one out of two guinea-pigs weighing between 100 and 150 g. With the introduction of the international standard for thyrotrophin such a 'unit' should no longer be used.

secretion of TSH from the animal's own pituitary is inhibited by the administration of thyroxine and the thyroidal iodine is labelled using ^{131}I . In animals so treated the rise in the radio-activity of the blood following the intravenous injection of thyrotrophin is a measure of the amount of thyrotrophin injected. The method is simple, specific and reasonably precise. By its use the authors have been able to detect TSH activity in the plasma of thyroidectomised rats and in that of rats treated with methyl thiouracil. It is not yet known whether the technique is suitable for studies in patients.

3. Methods employing Rats.

In general, assays employing intact or hypophysectomised rats are less sensitive than those depending on chicks, guinea-pigs, and tadpoles, and for this reason such techniques have not found wide use in clinical studies. Various indices of response have been used including thyroid weight, thyroid histology, ^{131}I uptake, ^{32}P uptake and the increase in basal metabolic rate.

4. Methods employing Mice.

Querido *et al.* (1953) have described an assay method for TSH which depends on the ^{131}I uptake of the thyroid in female mice which have been pre-treated with iodocasein in order to reduce glandular activity. The method is simple and precise but is relatively insensitive. It is, however, possible to employ it in clinical studies provided that blood concentrates rather than untreated serum are administered to the test animals.

5. Methods employing Tadpoles.

D'Angelo and his co-workers (D'Angelo *et al.*, 1942, 1951) have used the starved or 'stasis' *Rana pipiens* tadpole for the assay of thyrotrophin. When tadpoles are starved thyroid atrophy and metamorphic stasis ensue; resumption of development occurs after the intraperitoneal administration of either thyroid hormone or TSH. In the assay method of D'Angelo *et al.* (1942) two end points are measured, viz., thyroid cell height and hind-limb extrusion. The former is considered to be produced by TSH alone and the latter by

a combination of TSH and thyroid hormone. A typical dose-effect curve using both indices of response is shown in Fig. 30.

It is claimed that in a given sample of blood the concentrations of both hormones can be determined and that this method

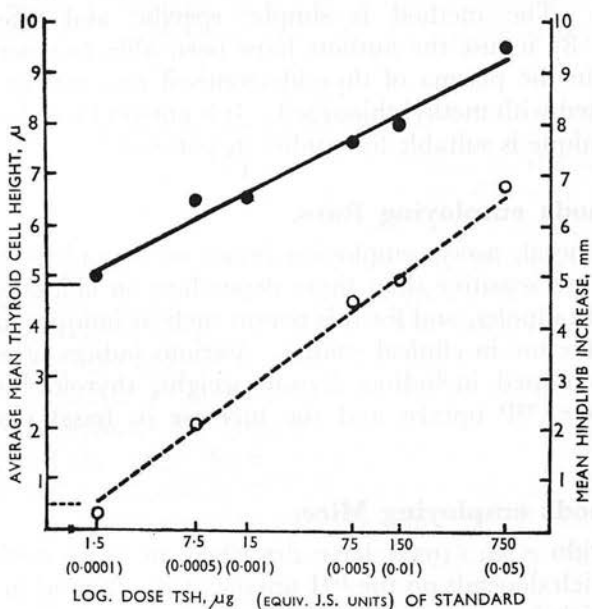


FIG. 30

Log dose-response curves indicating the increase in thyroid cell height (continuous line) and the extension of hind limbs (interrupted line) in the "stasis" tadpole with increasing doses of TSH. Cell height at each point is based on counts in 6 to 9 animals; horizontal bars on ordinate represent values in control animals. (From D'Angelo *et al.*, 1951.)

may be used to accumulate information on the interrelationships between the pituitary and the thyroid in health and disease.

This technique is time-consuming and laborious, the experimental period being fifteen days. However, it has the advantage of great sensitivity and will measure as little as 0.0005 of a 'Junkmann-Schoeller unit' of TSH. D'Angelo *et al.* (1951) and Asboe-Hansen *et al.* (1952) have used the 'stasis' tadpole method to estimate the serum concentration of TSH in patients with normal and abnormal thyroid function. Their results will be discussed later in this chapter.

6. General Conclusions regarding Thyrotrophin Assay Methods.

None of the existing methods is suitable for routine clinical use, but a number of them may be of limited value in research centres. The introduction of an international standard preparation for TSH should make the assays more reliable. The most promising tests from the point of view of their clinical application are those depending on ^{131}I discharge in chicks and guinea-pigs, on the percentage of epithelium in the guinea-pig thyroid and on the thyroid cell height in starved tadpoles. The method depending on ^{131}I uptake in mice can also be used in the clinical field if the blood extracts are concentrated prior to bio-assay.

METHODS OF EXTRACTION OF THYROTROPHIN FROM BODY FLUIDS

Thyrotrophin is present in the blood and urine of human subjects in very low concentrations, and accordingly bio-assay methods of great sensitivity must be used in clinical studies. Although it is claimed that certain methods are sufficiently sensitive to detect the presence of the hormone in untreated serum it is probable that more satisfactory results would be obtained if the blood and urine were extracted and concentrated prior to administration to the test animals. At present little quantitative information is available on the yields of thyrotrophin obtained by the different extraction methods. Further work is necessary on this important problem.

1. Urine.

Reports by earlier investigators that TSH activity could be detected following the administration of untreated urine to experimental animals were not subsequently confirmed, and most workers now agree that concentration methods should be employed. Many of the techniques proposed are the same as those used for the preparation of pituitary gonadotrophins from urine and include such methods as alcohol and acetone precipitation, tannic acid precipitation and benzoic acid adsorption. Jones (1939), in a careful study, compared the efficacy of various extraction methods. TSH was added to pooled urine and the urine was then extracted

in different ways. The potency of the final extracts was determined biologically using the thyroid of the one-day-old chick. It was found that methods depending on simple alcohol or acetone precipitation gave more satisfactory yields of the hormone than those involving tannic acid precipitation or benzoic acid adsorption. It would be of considerable interest to repeat these observations using the more sensitive bio-assay methods for TSH which have recently become available.

2. Blood.

D'Angelo *et al.* (1951) and Asboe-Hansen *et al.* (1952) have used the 'stasis' tadpole technique to assay TSH and have found that this method is sufficiently sensitive to detect the presence of the hormone in untreated serum. The total dose of serum administered per animal is approximately 0.2 ml. spread over the six-day injection period.

Querido and his co-workers (Querido *et al.*, 1953, 1955; Lameijer *et al.*, 1955) have described a method of assay for TSH depending on the accumulation of ^{131}I by the thyroid in mice which have been pre-treated with iodocasein. The technique is much less sensitive than that involving tadpoles, and negative results are obtained when untreated serum is injected. However, these workers have developed methods for concentrating the serum and have been able to detect TSH activity in human blood by the administration of such concentrates to the test animals. The method of extraction used was similar to that employed by Cohn *et al.* (1946) in fractionation studies on plasma proteins and consisted of alcohol precipitation at low temperatures combined with pH adjustment. By means of this technique it was possible to show that thyrotrophic activity when present was entirely confined to the β -globulin fraction.

THE CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF THYROTROPHIN ASSAY

1. Studies on Urine.

Little is at present known regarding the urinary excretion of TSH in health and disease, and further information on this important subject must await the development of more satisfactory methods of extraction and assay of the hormone. In

the few investigations so far reported, workers have generally been unable to estimate thyrotrophin in the urine of normal individuals or in cases of thyrotoxicosis, but have detected its presence in the urine of patients with myxoedema. It is not yet known with certainty what proportion of thyrotrophin can be recovered from the urine after the parenteral administration of the hormone to normal subjects or to patients with various forms of thyroid disease.

2. Studies on Blood.

The most careful investigation of the serum concentration of TSH in normal and pathological conditions so far reported

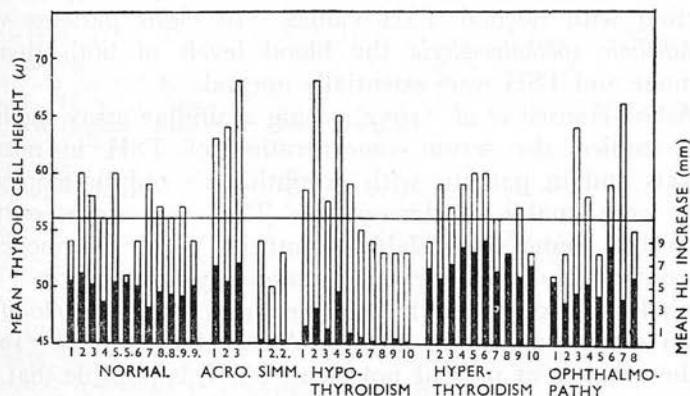


FIG. 31

Comparison of metamorphic and thyroid-stimulating activity of sera under normal and pathological conditions in man. On the abscissa are shown the individual cases comprising the normal series and the clinical groups of patients. The height of the open bar indicates the mean thyroid cell height in the test animal. The height of the darkened bar refers to the degree of hind limb extension produced by the same sample of serum. The proportion of total increase due to the effect of the thyroid alone can be calculated by subtracting the hind limb extension corresponding to the thyroid cell height.. (From D'Angelo *et al.*, 1951.)

is that of D'Angelo *et al.* (1951). These workers used the 'stasis' tadpole technique by which it is possible to measure both TSH and thyroid hormone in a given sample of serum. Their results are shown in Fig. 31.

It will be noted that in *normal* serum TSH activity, although present, was relatively low while thyroid hormone activity was relatively high. In three cases of *acromegaly* blood titres

of TSH were increased approximately eightfold over those in normal subjects, while thyroid hormone levels were within the normal range. Neither thyroid hormone nor TSH was demonstrable in the serum of three patients with *panhypopituitarism*. In ten cases of *myxædema* blood thyroid concentrations were consistently low, but TSH titres fluctuated greatly, being within, above or below the normal range. In some of these cases hormone assays were conducted before and after treatment with thyroid extract; it was shown that clinical improvement of the condition was sometimes but not always associated with a return of the hormone levels to normal. In ten cases of *thyrotoxicosis* abnormally high thyroid hormone concentrations were usually found in conjunction with normal TSH values. In eight patients with *exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia* the blood levels of both thyroid hormone and TSH were essentially normal.

Asboe-Hansen *et al.* (1952), using a similar assay method, have studied the serum concentration of TSH in normal subjects and in patients with *exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia*. They were unable to demonstrate TSH activity in normal serum but found appreciable quantities of the hormone in nine out of ten cases of *exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia*. The reason for the divergent findings reported by D'Angelo *et al.* (1951) on the one hand and by Asboe-Hansen *et al.* (1952) on the other is at present not clear, but it is possible that the discrepancy will be explained on a methodological basis.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

A large number of bio-assay methods for thyrotrophin have been described, but none of these is suitable for routine use in the clinical field. Among the more promising techniques from the point of view of sensitivity are those depending on ^{131}I discharge in chicks and guinea-pigs, on ^{131}I uptake in mice, on the 'percentage of epithelium' in guinea-pigs and on the thyroid cell height in starved tadpoles.

Further work is necessary on methods of extraction of TSH from blood and from urine.

Abnormally high serum TSH levels have been reported in *myxædema* and in *acromegaly*. In Graves' disease the values have usually been within the normal range.

REFERENCES

- ADAMS, D. D. & PURVES, H. D. (1955). *Endocrinology*, **57**, 17.
- ASBOE-HANSEN, G., IVERSEN, K. & WICHMANN, R. (1952). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **11**, 376.
- CIERESZKO, L. S. & WHITE, A. (1942). *Fed. Proc.* **1**, 105.
- COHN, E. J., STRONG, L. E., HUGHES, W. L., JR., MULFORD, D. J., ASHWORTH, J. N., MELIN, M. & TAYLOR, H. L. (1946). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **68**-1, 459.
- CROOKE, A. C. & MATTHEWS, J. D. (1953). Ciba Foundation Colloquia on *Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 25. London: Churchill.
- D'ANGELO, S. A., GORDON, A. S. & CHARIPPER, H. A. (1942). *Endocrinology*, **31**, 217.
- D'ANGELO, S. A., PASCHKIS, K. E., GORDON, A. S. & CANTAROW, A. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 1237.
- DOBYNS, B. M. (1946). *Surg. Gynec. Obstet.* **82**, 290.
- DOBYNS, B. M. & STEELMAN, S. L. (1953). *Endocrinology*, **52**, 705.
- GADDUM, J. H. & LORAIN, J. A. (1950). *J. Pharm. Pharmacol.* **2**, 65.
- GILLILAND, J. C. & FRASER, T. R. (1953). Ciba Foundation Colloquia on *Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 20. London: Churchill.
- HEYL, J. G. & LAQUEUR, E. (1935). *Arch. int. Pharmacodyn.* **49**, 338.
- JONES, M. S. (1939). *Endocrinology*, **24**, 665.
- JUNKMANN, K. & SCHOELLER, W. (1932). *Klin. Wschr.* **11**, 1176.
- LAMBERG, B.-A. (1953). *Acta med. scand.*, suppl. 279.
- LAMEIJER, L. D. F., KASSENAR, A. A. H. & QUERIDO, A. (1955). *Nature, Lond.* **175**, 685.
- LOEB, L. & BASSETT, R. B. (1930). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **27**, 490.
- MUSSETT, M. V. & PERRY, W. L. M. (1955). The International Standard for Thyrotrophin. *Bull. World Hlth Org.* **13**, 917.
- QUERIDO, A., KASSENAR, A. A. H. & LAMEIJER, L. D. F. (1953). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **12**, 335.
- QUERIDO, A., KASSENAR, A. A. H. & LAMEIJER, L. D. F. (1955). *Ned. Tijdschr. Geneesk.* **98**, 44.
- RAWSON, R. W. & SALTER, W. T. (1940). *Endocrinology*, **27**, 155.
- RAWSON, R. W. & STARR, P. (1938). *Arch. int. Med.* **61**, 726.
- DE ROBERTIS, E. & DEL CONTE, E. (1944). *Rev. Soc. argent. Biol.* **20**, 88.
- SMELSER, G. K. (1937). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **37**, 388.
- TALA, P. (1952). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* suppl. 9.
- TURNER, C. W. (1950). In *Hormone Assay*, p. 215. Ed., C. W. Emmens. New York: Academic Press Inc.
- UOTILA, U. & KANNAS, O. (1952). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **11**, 49.
- WAHLBERG, P. (1955). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* suppl. 23.

CHAPTER V

Adrenocorticotrophin

INTRODUCTION

THIS hormone is elaborated by the anterior lobe of the pituitary and controls the secretory activity of the adrenal cortex. Other names for adrenocorticotrophin are *corticotrophin* and the *adrenocorticotrophic hormone* (ACTH).

1. Chemical Nature of ACTH.

There has been much controversy on this subject in recent years. In 1943 Li *et al.* and Sayers *et al.* isolated from sheep and ox pituitaries respectively proteins which were homogeneous by sedimentation, electrophoretic and solubility studies. The physicochemical properties of the two substances were similar and the molecular weight of both compounds was approximately 20,000; at that time the substances were regarded as pure proteins. Subsequently, however, certain investigators including Li (1949), Payne *et al.* (1950) and Morris and Morris (1950) were able to prepare from animal pituitaries material of considerably higher biological activity than these two proteins. In view of this finding it appeared justifiable to conclude that the true hormone was probably not a protein but had the composition of a polypeptide having a very much lower molecular weight than was previously supposed. Recently Harris and Li (1954) have shown that sheep ACTH is a polypeptide with thirty-nine amino-acid residues and with a molecular weight of approximately 4,500; in a subsequent communication Li *et al.* (1955) claim to have elucidated the complete amino-acid sequence for this hormone. Bell and his associates (Bell, 1954; Howard *et al.*, 1955) have conducted an extensive study into the structure of corticotrophin derived from hog pituitaries. These workers were also able to determine the entire amino-acid sequence for this substance

and found that its chemical properties were similar to those reported by Li *et al.* (1955) for sheep ACTH.

It should be emphasised that, at the time of writing, little or no information is available regarding the chemical nature of the corticotrophin in *human* pituitary tissue.

2. The Number of Adrenocorticotrophic Hormones.

Stack-Dunne and Young (1951) assayed pituitary ACTH in hypophysectomised rats by two different methods, one depending on adrenal weight repair and the other on adrenal ascorbic acid depletion. They found that the ratio of activities as determined by the two tests varied greatly in different preparations studied. It was suggested that the results obtained were in keeping with the view that the pituitary elaborates two adrenocorticotrophic hormones which were designated respectively the adrenal weight factor (AWF) and the ascorbic acid factor (AAF). The views of Stack-Dunne and Young (1951) have been challenged by Astwood *et al.* (1952) and by others who believe that the differences in biological activity can be explained by differing rates of absorption of ACTH from the site of injection. It is clear that further work on the chemical and biological properties of ACTH is necessary before any definite statement can be made on this controversial subject.

3. ACTH and Intermedin.

Within the past few years there has been considerable interest in the possible relationship between these two hormones. Intermedin, which is also known as the *melanophore-expanding hormone* or '*B-hormone*,' is responsible for the colour changes in amphibia. The substance is also present in human and mammalian pituitary tissue but its physiological function in man and in mammals remains obscure. In 1952 Johnssen and Högberg presented evidence which appeared to indicate that, in human subjects, ACTH and intermedin might be identical or that intermedin might form a part of the ACTH molecule. These workers, using the method of assay depending on expansion of melanophores in the frog *Rana temporaria*, found that the serum of patients with Addison's disease contained large quantities of intermedin and put forward the interesting suggestion that the pigmentation in cases of this

condition might result from excessive production of intermedin by the pituitary. Soon afterwards Sulman (1952) and Thing (1952, 1954) in independent investigations claimed to have demonstrated a definite correlation between the content of ACTH and of intermedin in both crude and highly purified ACTH preparations.

These observations were obviously of great practical significance in relation to the assay of ACTH in clinical conditions in man for, if ACTH and intermedin were indeed identical, it might then be justifiable to substitute the simple and rapid melanophore-expanding test in frogs for tedious and laborious methods employing hypophysectomised rats. There are, however, certain grave objections to the hypothesis that the two hormones are one and the same substance. For example, it has been shown (Waring and Landgrebe, 1950) that the biological activity of intermedin is increased by heating with 0.1 N-NaOH while that of ACTH is rapidly destroyed by this reagent even at room temperature. Furthermore, it is possible to obtain intermedin free of ACTH activity by using the carbon adsorption process described by Landgrebe *et al.* (1944). After a survey of the available evidence Morris (1952) concluded that the two hormones were not identical and that the melanophore-expanding effects of ACTH were entirely due to contamination. However, in more recent work Bell (1954) has reached the opposite conclusion. In the opinion of this worker it is most unlikely that the melanophore-expanding activity of ACTH is due to an impurity. From these divergent views it is apparent that the exact relationship of the two hormones one to another is not yet clear and that the problem remains one for future elucidation.

4. The International Standard for ACTH.

The first international standard for ACTH was established by the World Health Organisation in 1950. The material used for the standard was a preparation termed 'La-1-A'; this material had already been employed in many centres as a reference standard for the comparative assay of the hormone. The international unit was defined as the activity contained in 1 mg. of the international standard. Results of ACTH assays should now be expressed in international units; 'animal units' should no longer be employed.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF ACTH

Chemical procedures for estimating ACTH in body fluids and in tissues are not yet available, and accordingly all assays must be conducted by biological methods. Most of the bio-assay techniques which have been described are not sufficiently sensitive to detect the presence of the hormone in blood and urine and at the time of writing little or no reliable quantitative information is available regarding the ACTH levels in body fluids in health and disease. More reliable assay methods are urgently required, and it is certain that when such techniques are developed and applied in clinical studies much useful information will be obtained.

ACTH assays can be conducted in *intact* or in *hypophysectomised* animals. Some of the methods which have been proposed are shown in Tables VII and VIII.

In general, assays in hypophysectomised animals are to be preferred because they are more precise and more specific. After hypophysectomy the source of the animal's own secretion of ACTH is removed and the effects produced result entirely from the administered material. Sayers (1955) considers that bio-assays conducted in animals with intact pituitaries have little or no value.

1. The Assay of ACTH in Hypophysectomised Animals.

The following methods will be considered:

- (a) Adrenal ascorbic acid depletion test in rats.
- (b) Adrenal repair test in rats.
- (c) Adrenal maintenance test in rats.
- (d) Test depending on corticosteroid release in dogs.

(a) ADRENAL ASCORBIC ACID DEPLETION TEST (Sayers test).—This is the most important and most widely used assay method for ACTH. It depends on the observation that a single dose of ACTH causes a prompt fall in the concentration of adrenal ascorbic acid in hypophysectomised rats. As described by Sayers *et al.* (1948) the assay is a three-day procedure. Hypophysectomy is performed on the first day. Approximately twenty-four hours later the left adrenal is removed and immediately afterwards the animal receives an intravenous injection of standard ACTH or of the test preparation. One

hour later the right adrenal is removed. On the third day the ascorbic acid concentration of both adrenals is determined using the method of Roe and Kuether (1943) which measures

TABLE VII
METHODS OF ASSAY OF ACTH IN
HYPOPHYSECTOMISED ANIMALS

Animal.	Index of Response.	Reference.
Rat . .	Adrenal ascorbic acid depletion (Sayers test)	Sayers <i>et al.</i> (1948)
Rat . .	Redistribution of adrenal lipoids (repair test)	Simpson <i>et al.</i> (1943)
Rat . .	Maintenance of adrenal weight (maintenance test)	Simpson <i>et al.</i> (1943)
Mouse .	Eosinophil depression	Speirs (1953)
Dog . .	Secretion of corticosteroids	Nelson and Hume (1954)

TABLE VIII
METHODS OF ASSAY OF ACTH IN
INTACT ANIMALS

Animal.	Index of Response.	Reference.
Rat . .	Adrenal weight	Moon (1937)
Chick .	Adrenal weight	Bates <i>et al.</i> (1940)
Rat . .	Thymus weight	Bruce <i>et al.</i> (1952)
Rat . .	Corticosteroid production by isolated adrenals	Saffran and Bayliss (1953)
Rat . .	Adrenal ascorbic acid depletion in animals pre-treated by DCA	Buttle and Hodges (1953)
Mouse .	Hyaluronidase inhibition	Opsahl and Long (1951)
Mouse .	Ulcer healing	Clayton and Prunty (1951)
Mouse .	Eosinophil depression	Speirs (1953)
Man . .	Eosinophil depression	Thorn <i>et al.</i> (1948)
Man . .	Urinary steroid excretion	Mason <i>et al.</i> (1948)

total (reduced plus dehydro) ascorbic acid. The response is expressed as the difference between the ascorbic acid content of the right and left adrenal glands.

Various modifications of the original Sayers test have been developed. One of these substitutes subcutaneous for intravenous administration of the standard and unknown

preparations. In the modification described by Munson (1948) both adrenals are removed simultaneously one hour after the intravenous administration of the hormone, and in that of Taylor *et al.* (1953) the time interval between hypophysectomy and the commencement of the assay proper is increased from twenty-four to forty-eight hours.

The Sayers test is the most sensitive method at present available for the assay of ACTH and for this reason the technique has been employed in most attempts to estimate the hormone in blood. The method will detect as little as 0.2 milliunits of the international standard preparation. The technique appears to be satisfactory on grounds of specificity in view of the fact that no other substance has yet been demonstrated which consistently causes a fall in the concentration of adrenal ascorbic acid in hypophysectomised rats. The precision of the Sayers test has varied considerably in the hands of different workers (Table IX). Sayers *et al.* (1948) found that the index of precision (λ) was generally below 0.2 and concluded that the assay was sufficiently accurate for quantitative work; other investigators, including Greenspan *et al.* (1950) and Buttle and Hodges (1953), have failed to obtain such a high degree of precision and were unable to use the method on a quantitative basis. Morris (1951) has wisely emphasised the importance of the strain of rat in the performance of the Sayers test. Some strains appear to be quite unsuitable due to such factors as insensitivity and great variability of response from one animal to another.

(b) ADRENAL REPAIR TEST.—The predominant histological change in the adrenal cortex of the rat following hypophysectomy is the disappearance of most of the lipoid from the cells. This test, which was developed by Simpson *et al.* (1943), depends on the ability of ACTH to cause reappearance and redistribution of lipoid in the adrenals of these animals. The originators state that the test is satisfactory on grounds of specificity and sensitivity, but that it has a low degree of precision. The assay method takes nineteen days to perform and in its present form is therefore much too laborious for use in the clinical field.

(c) ADRENAL MAINTENANCE TEST.—This method, which was also developed by Simpson *et al.* (1943), depends on the fact that ACTH maintains normal adrenal weight when

injections of the hormone are started immediately after hypophysectomy. The technique is relatively insensitive and requires a two-week injection period. For these reasons the maintenance test is unsuitable for the estimation of ACTH in human blood and urine.

(d) **TEST DEPENDING ON CORTICOSTEROID RELEASE IN DOGS.**—Nelson and Hume (1954) have recently described a technique which is sufficiently sensitive to detect very small quantities of ACTH in blood. Hypophysectomised dogs are maintained on ACTH until some sixteen hours before the start of the assay. At that time the adrenal vein is cannulated by a technique which permits repeated sampling of adrenal venous blood. Standard ACTH and the test preparations are administered by intravenous injection. The end point of the assay is the release of corticosteroids, the latter being measured by a chemical method depending on the Porter-Silber reaction (see p. 259).

This technique appears promising as a means of estimating ACTH in blood under normal and pathological conditions. Its further application to clinical problems will be awaited with interest.

2. The Assay of ACTH in Intact Animals.

The following methods will be considered:

- (a) Thymus weight test in rats.
- (b) Adrenal ascorbic acid depletion test in rats pre-treated by deoxycorticosterone acetate (DCA).
- (c) Ulcer healing test in mice.
- (d) Hyaluronidase inhibition test in mice.
- (e) Eosinophil depression test in mice.
- (f) Test depending on corticosteroid production by isolated rat adrenals.

(a) **THYMUS WEIGHT TEST** (Bruce *et al.*, 1952).—The basis of this test is the involution of the thymus in infantile intact rats following the injection of ACTH in an oil-beeswax medium. A three-day injection period is required. The method is convenient, precise and reasonably specific but is many times less sensitive than the Sayers test.

(b) **ADRENAL ASCORBIC ACID DEPLETION TEST IN RATS PRE-TREATED BY DEOXYCORTICOSTERONE ACETATE.**—This test

was introduced by Buttle and Hodges (1953). Hypophysectomised animals were replaced by animals in which the secretion of endogenous ACTH had been inhibited by the administration of DCA. In the hands of the originator the method had a low degree of precision (Table IX). The reliability of the technique depends on the degree of pituitary inhibition produced; it is probable that the test is less specific than the original Sayers procedure and should not replace it in quantitative studies.

(c) ULCER HEALING TEST (Clayton and Prunty, 1951).—The end point of this method is the inhibition by ACTH of the formation of experimentally produced granulation tissue in the anterior abdominal wall of the intact mouse. The technique is considerably less sensitive than the Sayers test.

(d) HYALURONIDASE INHIBITION TEST.—This method (Opsahl and Long, 1951) depends on the ability of ACTH to inhibit the increased capillary permeability induced by hyaluronidase. In its present form the test cannot be used for quantitative work. Furthermore, it is probable that its specificity is questionable.

(e) EOSINOPHIL DEPRESSION TEST.—This technique (Speirs, 1953) is based on the fact that ACTH will cause a decrease in the circulating eosinophils in both intact and hypophysectomised mice. The method has a relatively low degree of precision (Table IX) and is some fifty times less sensitive than the Sayers test. The test therefore cannot be recommended for use in the clinical field.

(f) TEST DEPENDING ON CORTICOSTEROID PRODUCTION BY ISOLATED ADRENALS.—ACTH will stimulate the production of corticosteroids by isolated rat adrenal glands, and this has been made the basis of an *in vitro* bio-assay method by Saffran and Bayliss (1953). Good agreement is reported between this method and the Sayers test. The procedure is reasonably precise and is relatively simple to perform; its sensitivity is only slightly inferior to that of the original Sayers test. Further observations with this technique, especially in relation to the assay of ACTH in body fluids, will be awaited with considerable interest.

In Table IX the precision of some of the assay methods for ACTH is compared in terms of Gaddum's λ .

TABLE IX

PRECISION OF SOME ASSAY METHODS FOR ACTH

Method.	Animal.	Index of Precision λ .	Reference.
Sayers test . . .	Hypophysectomised rat	0.176	Sayers <i>et al.</i> (1948)
Sayers test . . .	Hypophysectomised rat	0.499	Greenspan <i>et al.</i> (1950)
Sayers test . . .	Hypophysectomised rat	0.220	Taylor <i>et al.</i> (1953)
Sayers test . . .	DCA-treated rat	0.463	Buttle and Hodges (1953)
Adrenal maintenance test	Hypophysectomised rat	0.376	Simpson <i>et al.</i> (1943)
Thymus weight test	Intact rat	0.316	Bruce <i>et al.</i> (1952)
Eosinophil depression test	Intact mouse	0.330	Speirs (1953)
Corticosteroid production test	<i>In vitro</i> assay in rats	0.150	Saffran and Schally (1955)

METHODS OF EXTRACTION OF ACTH FROM BLOOD

The quantity of ACTH in human blood is very small, and it is therefore necessary to concentrate the blood prior to bio-assay. The claims made by certain investigators that ACTH activity can be detected in the blood of normal individuals by injecting untreated serum or plasma into hypophysectomised rats have not been subsequently confirmed.

Two main extraction methods have been proposed. These are:

1. The acid-acetone method.
2. The oxycellulose method.

1. The Acid-acetone Method.

This technique depends on fractional acetone precipitation and was originally developed by Lyons (1937) for the preparation of ACTH from animal pituitaries. Various workers, including Cooke *et al.* (1948), Bornstein and Trewhella (1950) and Gray and Parrott (1953) have used the procedure to extract the hormone from blood. Heparinised plasma is precipitated with 80 per cent. acetone, the precipitate is

discarded and the acetone concentration of the supernatant fluid is raised to 94 per cent. A fine precipitate forms. This is centrifuged, separated from the supernatant fluid and dried *in vacuo*.

Views are conflicting regarding the efficacy of the acid-acetone method. According to Parrott (1955) the technique will recover approximately 80 per cent. of the activity of Armour's ACTH added to human plasma. However, in the experience of Sayers and his co-workers (Sydnor *et al.*, 1953 *a*) the procedure is very unsatisfactory from the quantitative point of view and frequently yields extracts which are toxic to the experimental animals. Sayers (1955) has stated that in his opinion the acid-acetone method should no longer be used for the extraction of ACTH from blood.

2. The Oxycellulose Method.

This technique was introduced by Astwood *et al.* (1951) for the extraction of ACTH from pituitary tissue and was adapted for estimations in blood by Sydnor and Sayers (1952). The hormone is precipitated by glacial acetic acid, is adsorbed on oxycellulose and is eluted from the oxycellulose by 0.1 N-NaOH.

The oxycellulose technique recovers quantitatively ACTH added to hypophysectomised rat blood and yields concentrates which are non-toxic to the experimental animals. In the opinion of Sydnor *et al.* (1953 *a*) it is the method of choice for the preparation of ACTH from blood.

THE ESTIMATION OF ACTH IN THE BLOOD OF NORMAL SUBJECTS

In assays conducted on human blood the Sayers test, due to its high degree of sensitivity, has been the bio-assay method of choice. There is considerable disagreement among various investigators regarding the normal levels of blood ACTH, and the results obtained have been both variable and contradictory. The experimental evidence has recently been critically examined by Sayers (1955) and the present account is based largely on his conclusions.

The most careful and detailed studies of the ACTH content of normal blood have been made by workers at the Mayo Clinic and at Cleveland under the leadership of Albert and Sayers respectively. In 1949 Taylor, Albert and Sprague, using

unextracted serum, were unable to demonstrate corticotrophic activity in the blood of normal individuals. Subsequently Paris *et al.* (1954) extended these observations by employing the oxycellulose extraction method and found that no significant depletion in adrenal ascorbic acid occurred when concentrates equivalent to 40 ml. of whole blood were administered to hypophysectomised rats. These workers concluded that the concentration of ACTH in normal subjects was very low indeed, being usually less than 0.5 milliunits per 100 ml. of blood. A similar conclusion was reached by Sydnor *et al.* (1953 *a*) who used the same methods of extraction and bio-assay as those employed by Paris and his co-workers.

These results are in marked contrast to those reported by Bornstein and Trehwella (1950), Parrott (1951) and Bornstein *et al.* (1952), who claimed that corticotrophin was present in normal blood in the very high concentration of 30 to 200 milliunits per 100 ml. These workers extracted ACTH from plasma by the acid-acetone method; they stated that the hormone was rapidly inactivated in human plasma probably by enzymatic means and that the time elapsing between withdrawal of the blood from the patient and its extraction was critical. Other investigators have not confirmed this observation. The acid-acetone method as used by these investigators did not effect any concentration of the plasma extract and, if the high concentrations of ACTH in plasma reported by Bornstein and his co-workers are the true values, it is difficult to explain why comparable results could not be obtained by the use of untreated serum.

In the opinion of Sayers (1955) and also of the author (Loraine, 1957), the report of very high blood ACTH levels in normal subjects should be viewed with some scepticism. It is almost certain that if the concentration of the hormone was indeed 30 to 200 milliunits per 100 ml. of blood such levels would most probably be associated with the clinical features of adrenocortical hyperfunction.

BLOOD ACTH IN PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

1. Adrenal Hypofunction.

All investigators agree that in cases of untreated *Addison's disease* the ACTH titre in blood is increased. Taylor *et al.*

(1949) were the first to detect activity in the serum of patients with this disease, and Sayers (1956) has reported concentrations of 2 to 4 milliunits per 100 ml. Treatment of such cases with cortisone causes a decrease in blood ACTH levels, and soon after the start of such therapy activity can no longer be detected in blood.

According to Sayers (1955) blood ACTH concentrations rise after *bilateral adrenalectomy*. Further observations in patients treated in this way will be awaited with interest.

2. Adrenal Hyperfunction.

Sydnor *et al.* (1953 *b*) found abnormally high titres in cases of *congenital adrenal hyperplasia*, but Taylor *et al.* (1949) were unable to detect any activity in the serum of six patients with *Cushing's syndrome*.

3. 'Stress' Conditions.

Under such circumstances elevated blood levels of ACTH are by no means invariable. Sayers (1955) found that the administration of concentrates equivalent to 20 to 40 ml. of blood obtained from two patients with miliary tuberculosis did not produce any significant depletion of adrenal ascorbic acid in hypophysectomised rats. Negative results were also found in healthy male subjects exposed to excessive heat and to abnormally low atmospheric pressure.

It must be emphasised that present methods for the determination of ACTH in blood are quite unsuitable for routine use in the clinical field. Such techniques are expensive and laborious, while large volumes of blood are required for individual estimations. Nevertheless, in centres in which facilities are adequate, valuable clinical information can sometimes be obtained in selected cases by the assay of this hormone in blood.

THE ESTIMATION OF ACTH IN URINE

At the time of writing, opinions differ as to whether it is possible to estimate ACTH in human urine. According to de Barbieri and his co-workers (de Barbieri and Zamboni, 1953; de Barbieri *et al.*, 1953) and to Rubin *et al.* (1954)

activity can be detected in both normal and pathological conditions. The latter group of investigators, using unextracted urine, found that in normal male subjects the titre ranged from 1 to 3.1 i.u. per litre, while in normal females the concentrations lay between 1 and 8.2 i.u. per litre. In one patient with Cushing's syndrome the ACTH excretion was many times higher than that found in normal individuals. On the other hand Sayers *et al.* (1949) believe that renal excretion is of little importance as a method of elimination of ACTH. These workers administered large single doses of the hormone to healthy volunteers by slow intravenous infusion. They were unable to detect ACTH activity in urine either before or after the injection.

THE ESTIMATION OF ACTH IN HUMAN PITUITARY TISSUE

Taylor *et al.* (1953) have studied the ACTH concentration in lyophilised pituitary tissue from adults, infants and foetuses. In the adult and infantile glands the ACTH content expressed in terms of dried weight ranged from 49 to 588 i.u. per g. Corticotrophic activity was detected in foetal pituitaries at a period of gestation as early as sixteen weeks. In the infantile glands where in all cases the death-autopsy interval was less than twenty-four hours, there was no apparent relationship between this interval on the one hand and the ACTH content of the pituitary on the other. The number of cases studied was too small to permit of any definite conclusion regarding the stability of ACTH in the pituitary after death. However, destruction of the hormone did not appear to be unduly rapid.

THE ESTIMATION OF ACTH IN HUMAN PLACENTAL TISSUE

Various authors, including Jailer and Knowlton (1950), Opsahl and Long (1951) and Cohen and Kleinberg (1952), have reported that ACTH is present in extracts prepared from human placental tissue. Cohen and Kleinberg (1952) extracted placenta by the oxycellulose method and found a concentration of ACTH of 4 to 5 i.u. per kg. fresh tissue. Additional observations on the placental concentration of ACTH in

normal and pathological conditions will be anticipated with interest.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

ACTH assays should be conducted in hypophysectomised rather than intact animals. All results should be expressed in terms of the international standard preparation. The most promising techniques from the point of view of their application to clinical problems are those depending on adrenal ascorbic acid depletion in hypophysectomised rats (Sayers test), on the production of corticosteroids by isolated rat adrenals and on the release of corticosteroids in hypophysectomised dogs.

ACTH can be extracted from blood by methods involving acid-acetone precipitation or oxycellulose adsorption.

The concentration of ACTH in the blood of normal individuals is very low, being usually less than 0.5 milliunits per 100 ml. of blood. Increased titres have been reported in Addison's disease, in congenital adrenal hyperplasia and following bilateral adrenalectomy.

Opinions differ as to whether it is possible to demonstrate the presence of ACTH in human urine.

REFERENCES

- ASTWOOD, E. B., RABEN, M. S. & PAYNE, R. W. (1952). *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* **7**, 1.
ASTWOOD, E. B., RABEN, M. S., PAYNE, R. W. & GRADY, A. B. (1951). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **73**, 2969.
DE BARBIERI, A. & ZAMBONI, A. (1953). *Boll. Soc. ital. Biol. sper.* **29**, 123.
DE BARBIERI, A., ZAMBONI, A. & CALCHI NOVATI, C. (1953). *Boll. Soc. ital. Biol. sper.* **29**, 125.
BATES, R. W., RIDDLE, O. & MILLER, R. A. (1940). *Endocrinology*, **27**, 781.
BELL, P. H. (1954). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **76**, 5565.
BORNSTEIN, J., GRAY, C. H. & PARROTT, D. M. V. (1952). *J. Endocrin.* **8**, 40.
BORNSTEIN, J. & TREWHELLA, P. (1950). *Lancet*, **2**, 678.
BRUCE, H. M., PARKES, A. S. & PERRY, W. L. M. (1952). *Lancet*, **1**, 790.
BUTTE, G. A. H. & HODGES, J. R. (1953). In Ciba Foundation Colloquia on *Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 147. London: Churchill.
CLAYTON, B. E. & PRUNTY, F. T. G. (1951). *Analyst*, **76**, 474.
COHEN, H. & KLEINBERG, W. (1952). *Lancet*, **2**, 201.
COOKE, D. S., GRAETZER, E. & REISS, M. (1948). *J. Endocrin.* **5**, 89.
GRAY, C. H. & PARROTT, D. M. V. (1953). In Ciba Foundation Colloquia on *Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 153. London: Churchill.
GREENSPAN, F. S., LI, C. H., SIMPSON, M. E. & EVANS, H. M. (1950). In *Hormone Assay*, p. 205. Ed., C. W. Emmens. New York: Academic Press.
HARRIS, J. I. & LI, C. H. (1954). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **76**.
HOWARD, K. S., SHEPHERD, R. G., EIGHER, E. A., DAVIES, D. S. & BELL, P. H. (1955). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **77**, 3419.
JAILER, J. W. & KNOWLTON, A. J. (1950). *J. clin. Invest.* **29**, 1430.
JOHNSSEN, S. & HÖGBERG, B. (1952). *Nature, Lond.* **169**, 286.

- LANDGREBE, F. W., REID, E. & WARING, H. (1944). *Quart. J. exp. Physiol.* **32**, 121.
- LI, C. H. (1949). *Fed. Proc.* **8**, 219.
- LI, C. H., EVANS, H. M. & SIMPSON, M. E. (1943). *J. biol. Chem.* **149**, 413.
- LI, C. H., GESCHWIND, I. I., COLE, R. D., RAACKE, I. D., HARRIS, J. I. & DIXON, J. S. (1955). *Nature, Lond.* **176**, 687.
- LORAINÉ, J. A. (1957). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 11, p. 19. London: Churchill.
- LYONS, W. R. (1937). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **35**, 645.
- MASON, H. L., POWER, M. H., RYNEARSON, E. H., CIARAMELLI, L. C., LI, C. H. & EVANS, H. M. (1948). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **8**, 1.
- MOON, H. D. (1937). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **35**, 649.
- MORRIS, C. J. O. R. (1951). *Analyst*, **76**, 470.
- MORRIS, C. J. O. R. (1952). *Lancet*, **1**, 1210.
- MORRIS, P. & MORRIS, C. J. O. R. (1950). *Lancet*, **1**, 117.
- MUNSON, P. (1948). Quoted by M. A. Sayers *et al.* (1948). *Endocrinology*, **42**, 379.
- NELSON, D. H. & HUME, D. M. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 781.
- OPSAHL, J. C. & LONG, C. N. H. (1951). *Yale J. Biol. Med.* **24**, 199.
- PARIS, J., UPSON, M., JR., SPRAGUE, R. G., SALASSA, R. M. & ALBERT, A. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 597.
- PARROTT, D. M. V. (1951). *J. Endocrin.* **7**, 53.
- PARROTT, D. M. V. (1955). *J. Endocrin.* **12**, 120.
- PAYNE, R. W., RABEN, M. S. & ASTWOOD, E. B. (1950). *J. biol. Chem.* **187**, 719.
- Report on the Fourth Session of the Expert Committee on Biological Standardisation (1950). *Tech. Rep. Wld Hlth Org.* **36**, 7.
- ROE, J. H. & KUETHER, C. A. (1943). *J. biol. Chem.* **147**, 399.
- RUBIN, B. L., DORFMAN, R. I. & DORFMAN, A. S. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 154.
- SAFFRAN, M. & BAYLISS, M. J. (1953). *Endocrinology*, **52**, 140.
- SAFFRAN, M. & SCHALLY, A. V. (1955). *Endocrinology*, **56**, 523.
- SAYERS, G. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 754.
- SAYERS, G. (1956). Personal communication.
- SAYERS, G., BURNS, T. W., TYLER, F. H., JAGER, B. V., SCHWARTZ, T. B., SMITH, E. L., SAMUELS, L. T. & DAVENPORT, H. W. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 593.
- SAYERS, G., WHITE, A. & LONG, C. N. H. (1943). *J. biol. Chem.* **149**, 425.
- SAYERS, M. A., SAYERS, G. & WOODBURY, L. A. (1948). *Endocrinology*, **42**, 379.
- SIMPSON, M. E., EVANS, H. M. & LI, C. H. (1943). *Endocrinology*, **33**, 261.
- SPEIRS, R. S. (1953). *Endocrinology*, **52**, 300.
- STACK-DUNNE, M. P. & YOUNG, F. G. (1951). *J. Endocrin.* **7**, 66.
- SULMAN, F. G. (1952). *Nature, Lond.* **169**, 588.
- SYDNOR, K. L., KELLEY, V. C., RAILE, R. B., ELY, R. S. & SAYERS, G. (1953 *b*). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **82**, 695.
- SYDNOR, K. L. & SAYERS, G. (1952). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **79**, 432.
- SYDNOR, K. L., SAYERS, G., BROWN, H. & TYLER, F. H. (1953 *a*). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 891.
- TAYLOR, A. B., ALBERT, A. & SPRAGUE, R. G. (1949). *Endocrinology*, **45**, 335.
- TAYLOR, N. R. W., LORAINÉ, J. A. & ROBERTSON, H. A. (1953). *J. Endocrin.* **9**, 334.
- THING, E. (1952). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **10**, 295.
- THING, E. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **16**, 160.
- THORN, G. W., FORSHAM, P. H., PRUNTY, F. T. G. & HILLS, A. G. (1948). *J. Amer. med. Ass.* **137**, 1005.
- WARING, H. & LANDGREBE, F. W. (1950). *The Hormones*, vol. 2, p. 437. Eds., G. Pincus and K. V. Thimann. New York: Academic Press.

CHAPTER VI

Growth Hormone

INTRODUCTION

THIS hormone is secreted by the anterior pituitary and is responsible for skeletal and visceral growth. Other names for growth hormone are *somatotrophin* and the *somatotrophic hormone* (STH).

1. Chemical Nature of Growth Hormone.

In 1945 Li *et al.* claimed to have isolated growth hormone in pure form from extracts of ox pituitary glands. The hormone was found to be a protein with a molecular weight of 44,250. It behaved as a homogeneous substance in electrophoretic, diffusion and solubility studies. It was relatively insoluble in water and had an iso-electric *pH* of 6.85. Growth-promoting activity was destroyed by treatment with pepsin and trypsin; free amino groups were considered necessary for the biological activity of the hormone.

Purified preparations of growth hormone from animal pituitaries have also been made by Wilhelmi *et al.* (1948). These workers used a method of extraction similar to that employed by Cohn *et al.* (1946) in fractionating blood proteins. This method involved alcohol precipitation at low temperatures. The chief advantages of Wilhelmi's technique are its relative ease of performance and the high yields of the hormone obtained. However, it was found that the crystals so prepared exhibited two components on electrophoretic examination, and accordingly it must be concluded that the preparation was less pure than that of Li *et al.* (1945).

It should be emphasised that at present little or no information is available regarding the chemical properties of growth hormone in *human* pituitary tissue.

2. Growth Hormone and Diabetogenic Hormone.

Many investigators now hold the view that the diabetogenic hormone of the anterior pituitary does not exist as a separate

entity and that this effect is mediated by growth hormone, by ACTH or by the two hormones acting in conjunction. It has, for example, been shown that highly purified preparations of growth hormone made by the method of Li *et al.* (1945) are actively diabetogenic in intact cats. Young (1941, 1945) believes that a close relationship exists between the growth-promoting activity and diabetogenic actions of anterior pituitary extracts. This worker found that prolonged administration of actively diabetogenic extracts to puppy dogs initially causes acceleration of growth uncomplicated by diabetes mellitus. If, however, the treatment is continued for several months the animals cease to grow and a diabetic condition supervenes. Young's observations are obviously of great importance in relation to the development of diabetes mellitus in man. However, the exact role played by growth hormone in the ætiology of human diabetes is at present not clear, and the problem remains one for future elucidation.

At present no *international standard* is available for the comparative assay of growth hormone. In view of the large number of 'animal units' currently in use in bio-assays of this substance, the establishment of such a standard preparation would appear to be highly desirable.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF GROWTH HORMONE

A large number of methods have been suggested for the bio-assay of growth hormone. Many of these are reasonably satisfactory for estimations in pituitary tissue, but none of them is sufficiently sensitive to detect the presence of the hormone with any regularity in human blood or urine. The development of an assay method for growth hormone which would be suitable for use in clinical studies is one of the most urgent requirements in present day endocrinology.

Some of the assay methods proposed are shown in Table X which is taken from an article by Li (1953). This worker has suggested that the available techniques should be divided into two groups, the first consisting of reasonably well-established procedures, and the second of methods which have not yet gained general acceptance or have so far been incompletely investigated. Only the techniques in the first group will be considered in this chapter.

TABLE X

METHODS AVAILABLE FOR THE BIO-ASSAY OF
GROWTH HORMONE*(After Li, 1953)***A. Well-established Procedures.**

1. Increase in weight in normal plateaued rats.
2. Increase in weight in hypophysectomised rats.
3. Increase in weight in dwarf mice.
4. Increase in tail length in hypophysectomised rats.
5. Increase in width of the proximal epiphyseal cartilage of the tibia in hypophysectomised rats.

B. Suggested Procedures.

1. Increase in liver weight.
2. Increase in weight in stilboestrol-treated rats.
3. Changes in the nitrogenous constituents of the blood.
4. Changes in serum phosphorus or phosphatase.
5. Changes in the nitrogen or phosphorus balance.
6. Increase in protein synthesis as demonstrated by radio-active techniques.

1. Increase in Weight in Normal Plateaued Rats.

In this test which was originally described by Evans and Simpson (1931) six-month-old female rats are employed. Such animals normally gain weight very slowly and are spoken of as 'plateaued' rats. Intraperitoneal injections of growth hormone will cause these animals to resume growth, as evidenced by gain in weight.

As shown by Fønss-Bech (1947) and by Greenspan *et al.* (1950) this method is reasonably satisfactory with regard to precision and specificity. Its chief disadvantages lie in its high degree of insensitivity and in the laborious nature of the procedure which requires an injection period extending over fifteen to twenty days. It is obvious that the method in its present form is quite unsuitable for use in the clinical field.

2. Increase in Weight in Hypophysectomised Rats.

In the technique described by Marx *et al.* (1942) immature female rats are hypophysectomised at an age of approximately

four weeks and are rested for ten to twelve days post-operatively. The injection period has varied from ten to fifteen days in the hands of different investigators.

According to Greenspan *et al.* (1950) this test, although rather less precise, is some thirty times more sensitive than the method employing plateaued rats. However, the technique is still not sufficiently sensitive for use in clinical studies.

3. Increase in Weight in Dwarf Mice.

Details of this method have been given by Fønss-Bech (1947) and by Kemp (1948). These workers used a strain of mice showing hereditary dwarfism. Such animals gain weight under treatment with growth hormone provided that injections are continued for two to three weeks.

According to Greenspan *et al.* (1950) this technique has a relatively low degree of precision and is of doubtful specificity. The chief advantage of the test is the fact that intact rather than hypophysectomised animals can be used.

4. Increase in Tail Length in Hypophysectomised Rats.

In the procedure described by Dingemanse *et al.* (1948) male rats aged six to eight weeks are used. The injections commence immediately after hypophysectomy and are continued for a period ranging from one to two weeks. This test is relatively insensitive and has a low degree of precision. Furthermore, its specificity is questionable in view of the fact that other hormones, notably TSH and thyroid hormone, are capable of influencing the response.

5. Tibial Test in Hypophysectomised Rats.

This method (Evans *et al.*, 1943) depends on the ability of growth hormone to increase the width of the proximal epiphyseal cartilage of the tibia in hypophysectomised rats. The chief advantage of this test is its relatively high degree of sensitivity. Greenspan *et al.* (1950) have shown that the tibial test is some ten to twenty times more sensitive than that depending on weight gain in hypophysectomised rats. A further advantage is the short injection period of only four days.

Recent evidence presented by Li (1953) suggests that the

tibial test is not so specific as was previously supposed. This worker found that thyroid hormone, TSH and ACTH were all capable of interfering with the response, and suggested that ideally assays should be conducted in animals which had been subjected to hypophysectomy, adrenalectomy and thyroidectomy.

Comparison of the Precision of Assay Methods for Growth Hormone.

In Table XI, which is taken from an article by Greenspan *et al.* (1950), the precision of various assay methods for growth hormone is compared in terms of Gaddum's λ .

TABLE XI
PRECISION OF SOME ASSAY METHODS FOR
GROWTH HORMONE

(After Greenspan *et al.*, 1950)

Method.	Index of Precision λ .	Reference.
Plateaued rat weight test . . .	0.198	Marx <i>et al.</i> (1942)
	0.226	Fønss-Bech (1947)
Hypophysectomised rat weight test .	0.265	Marx <i>et al.</i> (1942)
	0.354	Bülbring (1938)
	0.402	Fønss-Bech (1947)
Dwarf mice weight test	0.234	Fønss-Bech (1947)
	0.670	Fønss-Bech (1947)
Tail length test in hypophysectomised rats	0.532	Fønss-Bech (1947)
	0.225	Dingemanse <i>et al.</i> (1948)
Tibial test in hypophysectomised rats	0.310	Greenspan <i>et al.</i> (1949)
	0.330	Gemzell and Heijkenskjöld (1956)

It will be noted that a reasonable degree of precision can be expected with the plateaued rat weight test, with the tibial test, and to a less extent with the hypophysectomised rat weight test. On the other hand methods depending on the increase in weight in dwarf mice and on the increase in tail length in hypophysectomised rats appear to lack precision and should probably not be used in quantitative work.

METHODS OF EXTRACTION OF GROWTH HORMONE FROM BODY FLUIDS

1. Urine.

Growth-promoting activity has not yet been detected in human urine under normal or pathological conditions. There is at present no information available on what type of method should be used for the preparation of the hormone from this source.

2. Blood.

Kinsell *et al.* (1948) injected the equivalent of from 3 to 10 ml. of lyophilised plasma from a patient with gigantism into hypophysectomised female rats and found that the tibial epiphysis in these animals was appreciably wider than that of either uninjected controls or of hypophysectomised rats injected with lyophilised plasma from normal subjects. Greenspan (1950) was unable to demonstrate growth-promoting activity in pooled lyophilised plasma collected from a large number of growing children.

Gemzell *et al.* (1955) added pituitary growth hormone to human plasma and extracted the plasma by a method similar to that used by Cohn *et al.* (1946) for the fractionation of plasma proteins. Bio-assays were conducted using the tibial test in hypophysectomised rats. The added growth hormone was detected in Cohn's fractions IV-1 and IV-4. The total yield of the hormone was approximately 50 per cent.

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF GROWTH HORMONE ASSAY

Growth hormone has not yet been detected in the blood of normal individuals but growth-promoting activity has been found in the plasma of a small number of patients with gigantism and acromegaly (Kinsell *et al.*, 1948; Gemzell *et al.*, 1955). Recently Gemzell *et al.* (1955), using the tibial test in hypophysectomised rats, have succeeded in demonstrating the presence of the hormone in lyophilised plasma from pooled retroplacental blood and in plasma from umbilical cord blood. Further work along these lines will be awaited with interest.

As stated previously, a method for the quantitative determination of growth hormone in body fluids is urgently required,

and when developed such a technique would have wide applications in clinical research. Two of the conditions in which growth hormone assays might be especially informative are *pregnancy complicated by diabetes and malignant disease*.

In diabetic pregnancy the birth weight of the baby is frequently greater than normal. The reason for this abnormality is not known with certainty, but the suggestion has been made that it results from, or is associated with, the presence of excessive quantities of circulating maternal growth hormone (Gray and Feemster, 1926; Barns and Morgans, 1948). If reliable assays of this hormone could be performed it might then be possible to establish whether a correlation does indeed exist between the maternal growth hormone levels on the one hand and the size of the baby on the other.

Widespread interest has been aroused by the claims of Moon and his collaborators (Moon *et al.*, 1950, 1951) that malignant tumours tend to develop in intact female rats injected with growth hormone over long periods of time and that such tumours do not usually occur in hypophysectomised rats so treated. It is not yet known whether growth hormone plays any part in carcinogenesis in humans. Further information on this important subject must await the development of more sensitive assay methods for this hormone in body fluids.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Assay methods for growth hormone are not yet sufficiently sensitive for general application in clinical studies. The most promising technique is probably that depending on the increase in width of the proximal epiphyseal cartilage of the tibia in hypophysectomised rats.

Further work is necessary on methods of extraction of growth hormone from blood and from urine.

Growth-promoting activity has been demonstrated in the blood of patients with acromegaly and gigantism, in pooled retroplacental blood and in umbilical cord blood. Activity has not yet been found in the blood of normal subjects.

REFERENCES

- BARNs, H. H. F. & MORGANS, M. E. (1948). *Brit. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **48**, 707.
BÜLBRING, E. (1938). *Quart. J. Pharm.* **11**, 26.
COHN, E. J., STRONG, L. E., HUGHES, W. L., JR., MULFORD, D. J., ASHWORTH, J. N.,
MELIN, M. & TAYLOR, H. L. (1946). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **68**-1, 459.

- DINGEMANSE, E., FREUD, J. & UYLDERT, I. E. (1948). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **1**, 71.
- EVANS, H. M. & SIMPSON, M. E. (1931). *Amer. J. Physiol.*, **98**, 511.
- EVANS, H. M., SIMPSON, M. E., MARX, W. & KIBRICK, E. (1943). *Endocrinology*, **32**, 13.
- FØNSS-BECH, P. (1947). *Acta pharm. tox.* **3**, Suppl. 3.
- GEMZELL, C. A. & HEIJKENSJÖLD, F. (1956). *Endocrinology*, **59**, 681.
- GEMZELL, C. A., HEIJKENSJÖLD, F. & STRÖM, L. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 537.
- GRAY, S. H. & FEEMSTER, L. C. (1926). *Arch. Path. lab. Med.* **1**, 348.
- GREENSPAN, F. S. (1950). *J. clin. Endocr.* **10**, 829.
- GREENSPAN, F. S., LI, C. H., SIMPSON, M. E. & EVANS, H. M. (1949). *Endocrinology*, **45**, 455.
- GREENSPAN, F. S., LI, C. H., SIMPSON, M. E. & EVANS, H. M. (1950). In *Hormone Assay*, p. 273. Ed., C. W. Emmens. New York: Academic Press.
- KEMP, T. (1948). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **1**, 294.
- KINSELL, L. W., MICHAELS, G. D., LI, C. H. & LARSEN, W. E. (1948). *J. clin. Endocr.* **8**, 1013.
- LI, C. H. (1953). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 115. London: Churchill.
- LI, C. H., EVANS, H. M. & SIMPSON, M. E. (1945). *J. biol. Chem.* **159**, 353.
- MARX, W., SIMPSON, M. E. & EVANS, H. M. (1942). *Endocrinology*, **30**, 1.
- MOON, H. D., SIMPSON, M. E., LI, C. H. & EVANS, H. M. (1950). *Cancer Res.* **10**, 297.
- MOON, H. D., SIMPSON, M. E., LI, C. H. & EVANS, H. M. (1951). *Cancer Res.* **11**, 535.
- WILHELM, A. E., FISHMAN, J. B. & RUSSELL, J. A. (1948). *J. biol. Chem.* **176**, 735.
- YOUNG, F. G. (1941). *Brit. med. J.* **2**, 897.
- YOUNG, F. G. (1945). *Biochem. J.* **39**, 515.

CHAPTER VII

Prolactin

INTRODUCTION

THIS hormone is elaborated by the anterior lobe of the pituitary and is essential for the initiation and probably also for the maintenance of lactation in man and animals. Other names for prolactin are the *lactogenic hormone*, *galactin* and *mammotrophin*. Many workers believe that prolactin is identical with the gonadotrophic factor, *luteotrophin*.

1. Chemical Nature of Prolactin.

Purified preparations of prolactin were first made by Lyons (1937) from sheep pituitary tissue. Subsequently Li *et al.* (1940) showed that sheep prolactin behaved as a pure protein in electrophoretic and solubility studies. The molecular weight of the hormone was estimated to be approximately 25,000 and its iso-electric pH was 5.5.

2. The "Mammogen" Theory.

There has been considerable controversy regarding the mechanism whereby the ovarian hormones cause mammary growth and development. Turner and his associates (Gomez *et al.*, 1937; Gomez and Turner, 1938) have claimed that in animals oestrogens and progesterone stimulate the pituitary to secrete specific hormones which they have termed 'mammogens' and which are believed to act directly on the breast tissue. Other investigators have been unable to confirm these observations. The evidence for and against the 'mammogen' theory has recently been critically reviewed by Folley (1955) who concluded that, in the rat, there was no necessity to postulate the existence of specific mammogenic hormones. It is probable that a similar conclusion is justifiable in other species including man.

3. Prolactin and Luteotrophin.

It is now widely believed that the gonadotrophic hormone luteotrophin is identical with prolactin. Luteotrophin maintains the activity of the corpus luteum in the non-pregnant animal and is also responsible for the secretion of progesterone by the ovary. Its physiological function in man remains obscure.

As pointed out by Astwood (1953) the evidence for the identity of prolactin and luteotrophin is suggestive but not entirely conclusive. The strongest support for the view comes from the observation that prolactin preparations, purified to the extent of behaving as homogeneous proteins in electrophoretic and solubility studies, are highly active both in initiating milk secretion and in causing corpus luteum maintenance. However, recent experience with other pituitary hormones, notably ACTH and growth hormone, has demonstrated that such criteria of purity should not be regarded as final. Further work is necessary in order to ascertain whether a similar conclusion should also be drawn in the case of prolactin.

4. The International Standard for Prolactin.

Prolactin was the first pituitary hormone for which an international standard was prepared. This was established at the Third International Conference on the Standardisation of Hormones (1938). By definition 1 i.u. is the activity contained in 0.1 mg. of the standard preparation. All assay results should now be expressed in terms of this material and not in 'animal units.'

METHODS OF ASSAY OF PROLACTIN

Many bio-assay methods for prolactin have been proposed but the majority of these are too insensitive for clinical use. Assays can be divided into the following two groups:

1. Assays employing pigeons.
2. Assays employing mammals.

For details regarding the actual technique and design of prolactin assays the reader is referred to articles by Li and Evans (1948), Meites and Turner (1950) and Turner (1950).

1. Assays Employing Pigeons.

Prolactin preparations stimulate the crop glands of pigeons by causing rapid proliferation of the epithelial lining. In addition the hormone increases the production of 'crop milk' which is a caseous fluid consisting mainly of desquamated epithelial cells. Assay methods in pigeons are generally more sensitive and more precise than those in mammals but require rigid standardisation of technique during their performance. Among the many factors which have been shown to influence the response are the season of the year, the body weight of the birds, the strain and race of pigeon, the environmental temperature, the route of injection and the volume of solution administered.

Three variants of the crop gland test have been described. These are:

- (a) The crop weight method (Riddle *et al.*, 1933).
- (b) The 'minimum stimulation' method (McShan and Turner, 1936).
- (c) The local intradermal method (Lyons and Page, 1935).

(a) **THE CROP WEIGHT METHOD.**—In the technique described by Riddle *et al.* (1933) the birds are injected intramuscularly daily for four days and are killed on the fifth day. Riddle and Bates (1939) have shown that there is a linear relationship between the crop weight on the one hand and the logarithm of the dose of prolactin on the other. Coppedge and Segaloff (1951) have used this technique to estimate the prolactin activity of human urine. They claimed that the sensitivity of the assay could be increased by using the intravenous rather than the intramuscular route of injection and by administering a small 'booster' dose of prolactin to all groups of birds under test. In the experience of Clarke and Folley (1953) the crop weight test was reasonably precise; the index of precision (λ) was generally less than 0.2 when ten birds were used on each dose level of standard and unknown preparations.

(b) **THE 'MINIMUM STIMULATION' METHOD.**—In this procedure the birds are injected subcutaneously instead of intramuscularly. After ninety-six hours the crop glands are removed and merely examined against the light for a positive reaction. A positive effect is indicated by the presence of typical strands

of thickened mucosa. The procedure in its present form is purely qualitative and cannot be used for quantitative work.

(c) THE LOCAL INTRADERMAL METHOD.—This is a micro-technique in which the solutions under test are injected immediately over the crop gland. Epithelial proliferation associated with basophilic changes in the cytoplasm of the cells forms the end point of the assay. The method is claimed to be many times more sensitive than that depending on crop weight and has been used for the assay of prolactin in human urine. According to Bahn and Bates (1956) the method is highly specific for prolactin provided that basophilic changes in the cytoplasm rather than mere epithelial thickening is made the end point of the test. Little is at present known regarding the precision of the test but it is probable that the error is relatively large.

2. Assays Employing Mammals.

Prolactin can be assayed by methods depending on the induction of lactation in guinea-pigs. Such techniques are at present too insensitive for clinical use and will not be considered further. Some comment is, however, necessary on mammalian assays involving rats, mice and rabbits.

(a) ASSAYS IN RATS.—Tests for luteotrophic activity in rats have been reviewed by Astwood (1953). Methods have depended on the prolongation of the oestrus cycle in intact rats, on the inhibition of the oestrus vaginal smear in oestrogen-treated hypophysectomised rats and on the formation of deciduomata in the uteri of hypophysectomised pseudopregnant rats. None of these tests has yet been applied with any success to the assay of luteotrophic activity in the body fluids of humans.

(b) ASSAYS IN MICE.—Hadfield and his co-workers (Scowen and Hadfield, 1955; Hadfield, 1956; Hadfield and Young, 1956) have recently shown that urine extracts from normally menstruating and post-menopausal women are capable of stimulating the proliferation of mammary epithelium in weanling male mice and have suggested that this effect might be made the basis of an assay method for determining the 'mammatrophic' activity of human urine. The end point of the assay depends on the enumeration of the deeply staining terminal 'clubs' which are formed at the growing ends of the ducts; each club consists of a mass of undifferentiated mammary epithelium.

This test is easy to perform but its success appears to depend to a large extent on the strain of animal employed. The originators have not claimed that the method is specific for prolactin. In view of the fact that positive responses are elicited in the test animals with total doses of urine as small as 2 ml. it would appear unlikely that the technique measures prolactin activity alone.

(c) ASSAYS IN RABBITS.—Bradley and Clarke (1956) have recently described an assay method for prolactin which appears promising for the estimation of this hormone in body fluids. The end point of the assay depends on milk formation in the mammary glands of rabbits after the intraductal injection of prolactin. Oestrogen-progesterone treated, pseudo-pregnant or pregnant animals may be used. Intraductal injection of pituitary extracts rich in activities other than prolactin does not cause milk formation and accordingly it can be stated that this method is highly specific for the lactogenic hormone. In its present form this test has a relatively low degree of precision and it is probable that minor modifications in design are necessary before the assay can be adapted for quantitative work.

METHODS OF EXTRACTION OF PROLACTIN FROM BODY FLUIDS

It has not yet been possible to demonstrate with certainty the presence of prolactin in *blood*, but claims have been made that the hormone is present in extracts prepared from *urine*. The method of extraction generally employed is similar to that described by Klinefelter *et al.* (1943) for the preparation of pituitary gonadotrophins from urine and depends on alcohol or acetone precipitation with or without dialysis (see pp. 29 and 30). According to the available evidence the yield of prolactin obtained by this technique is not high. For example Coppedge and Segaloff (1951), who performed recovery experiments by adding pituitary prolactin to pooled urine, found that more than 50 per cent. of the biological activity was lost during the extraction procedure. In view of this observation it is doubtful whether the results reported for the excretion of prolactin in normal and pathological conditions in man have much significance from the quantitative point of view.

THE CLINICAL APPLICATION OF URINARY PROLACTIN ASSAYS

1. Normal Subjects.

At the time of writing there is much conflict of opinion regarding the amounts of prolactin excreted in human urine. Early work by Lyons and Page (1935), by Meites and Turner (1941) and others suggested that the hormone could be detected in the urine of lactating women but not under other conditions. In a recent study Bahn and Bates (1956), using the very sensitive local intradermal method in pigeons, were unable to detect the presence of prolactin in urine in normal subjects of both sexes. These workers concluded that, if the hormone was excreted in urine at all, the amounts present were less than 5 i.u. per twenty-four hours.

The results of Bahn and Bates (1956) are in marked contrast to those reported by Coppedge and Segaloff (1951) using the crop-weight method in pigeons and by Hadfield (1957) using the mammary proliferation test in mice. Coppedge and Segaloff (1951) stated that in normal men and in normally menstruating women, the urinary output of prolactin ranged from 0 to 300 i.u. per twenty-four hours and that, in women in late pregnancy, the excretion values varied from 50 to 300 i.u. per twenty-four hours. Hadfield (1957) has recently reported that urine obtained from pre-menopausal women contains concentrations of prolactin ranging from 10 to 250 i.u. per litre.

It seems reasonable to conclude that these divergent findings can be explained on a methodological basis. In view of the high degree of specificity of the technique employed by Bahn and Bates (1956) it is probable that the figures reported by these authors more closely approximate the 'true' values. The assay methods used by Coppedge and Segaloff (1951) and by Hadfield (1957) are of doubtful reliability and it is not unlikely that such techniques provide an over-estimate of the true potency and thus yield erroneously high urine values.

2. Pathological Conditions.

MAMMARY CARCINOMA.—Segaloff and his co-workers (Segaloff, 1953; Segaloff *et al.*, 1954) have attempted to estimate the urinary excretion of prolactin in patients with

this disease. They were unable to demonstrate any relationship between the prolactin output on the one hand and the response of the patient to various forms of treatment on the other. Hadfield (1956) has recently suggested that "mammothrophin" assays may be helpful in patients in whom hypophysectomy is being considered as a therapeutic measure. This interesting suggestion requires further study.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Assay methods for prolactin are not yet sufficiently sensitive for routine use in the clinical field. Among the more promising techniques are those depending on the crop weight in pigeons and on milk formation in the mammary glands of rabbits.

Further work is necessary on methods of extraction of prolactin from body fluids.

Claims have been made that prolactin activity is present in human urine under both normal and pathological conditions, but it is doubtful whether the results reported so far have much quantitative significance.

REFERENCES

- ASTWOOD, E. B. (1953). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 74. London: Churchill.
- BAHN, R. C. & BATES, R. W. (1956). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **16**, 1337.
- BRADLEY, T. R. & CLARKE, P. M. (1956). *J. Endocrin.* **14**, 28.
- CLARKE, P. M. & FOLLEY, S. J. (1953). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 90. London: Churchill.
- COPPEDGE, R. L. & SEGALOFF, A. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 465.
- FOLLEY, S. J. (1955). *Brit. med. Bull.* **11**, 145.
- GOMEZ, E. T. & TURNER, C. W. (1938). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **37**, 607.
- GOMEZ, E. T., TURNER, C. W., GARDNER, W. U. & HILL, R. T. (1937). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **36**, 287.
- HADFIELD, G. (1956). *Brit. med. J.* **1**, 94.
- HADFIELD, G. (1957). *Lancet*, **1**, 1058.
- HADFIELD, G. & YOUNG, J. S. (1956). *Brit. J. Cancer*, **10**, 145.
- KLINEFELTER, H. F., JR., ALBRIGHT, F. & GRISWOLD, G. C. (1943). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **3**, 529.
- LI, C. H. & EVANS, H. M. (1948). In *The Hormones*, vol. 1, p. 648. Ed., G. Pincus and K. V. Thimann. New York: Academic Press.
- LI, C. H., LYONS, W. R. & EVANS, H. M. (1940). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **62**, 2925.
- LYONS, W. R. (1937). *Cold Spr. Harb. Symp. quant. Biol.* **5**, 198.
- LYONS, W. R. & PAGE, E. (1935). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **32**, 1049.
- MC SHAN, W. H. & TURNER, C. W. (1936). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **34**, 50.
- MEITES, J. & TURNER, C. W. (1941). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **1**, 918.
- MEITES, J. & TURNER, C. W. (1950). In *Hormone Assay*, p. 237. Ed., C. W. Emmens. New York: Academic Press.
- Report of the Third International Conference on the Standardisation of Hormones (1938). *Bull. Hlth Org. L.o.N.* **1**, 887.
- RIDDLE, O. & BATES, R. W. (1939). In *Sex and Internal Secretions*, 2nd ed., ch. 20, Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins.

- RIDDLE, O., BATES, R. W. & DYKSHORN, S. W. (1933). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **105**, 191.
 SCOWEN, E. F. & HADFIELD, G. (1955). *Cancer*, **8**, 890.
 SEGALOFF, A. (1953). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 106.
 London: Churchill.
 SEGALOFF, A., GORDON, D., CARABASI, R. A., HORWITT, B. A., SCHLOSSER, J. V.
 & MURISON, P. J. (1954). *Cancer*, **1**, 758.
 TURNER, C. W. (1950). In *Hormone Assay*, p. 266. Ed., C. W. Emmens. New
 York: Academic Press.

CHAPTER VIII

Antidiuretic Hormone and Antidiuretic Substances

INTRODUCTION

THE term *antidiuretic hormone* (ADH) should be reserved for the substance which is liberated by the posterior lobe of the pituitary and which controls water excretion by acting on the cells of the renal tubules. The term *antidiuretic substance* (ADS) refers to any substance or group of substances

TABLE XII

PRINCIPAL PHARMACOLOGICAL EFFECTS OF THE POSTERIOR PITUITARY HORMONES

(After Van Dyke, 1955)

Effect on	Hormone.	
	Oxytocin.	Vasopressin.
Water diuresis . . .	No effect	Inhibits
Blood-pressure . . .	Slightly lowers	Raises
Coronary arteries . .	Slightly dilates	Constricts
Intestinal contractions	Slightly stimulates	Stimulates
Uterine contractions *	Stimulates	Stimulates
Ejection of milk . . .	Stimulates	Slightly stimulates

* The response varies according to many factors, including the species and the stage of the reproductive cycle.

present in serum, plasma or tissue extracts which are capable of causing antidiuresis when administered to hydrated animals. Serum, plasma or tissue extracts with this property are said to possess *antidiuretic activity* (ADA). *Vasopressin* and *oxytocin* are two highly active polypeptides which are secreted by the posterior pituitary. Their principal pharmacological properties are shown in Table XII. Van Dyke and his co-workers (Van Dyke, 1955; Van Dyke *et al.*, 1955) believe that vasopressin

is identical with the antidiuretic hormone. The term *pitressin* is not synonymous with either ADH or with vasopressin, although the pharmacological activity of pitressin is probably due to its vasopressin content.

1. Chemical Nature of Oxytocin and Vasopressin.

The structures of both compounds have been recently elucidated through the work of investigators in New York, Vienna and Paris (Livermore and du Vigneaud, 1949; Turner *et al.*, 1951; Acher *et al.*, 1952; Tuppy, 1953). Both substances are polypeptides containing eight amino acids. Oxytocin has the same structure in both hog and ox pituitary tissue; in ox vasopressin the amino acid arginine replaces the lysine present in hog vasopressin. The molecular weight of oxytocin is 1,007 while that of ox vasopressin is 1,084. Du Vigneaud and his colleagues (du Vigneaud *et al.*, 1953, 1954) finally succeeded in synthesising both oxytocin and vasopressin. They found that the natural and synthetically prepared products were identical in all respects.

2. The International Standard for Posterior Pituitary Hormones.

This was established in 1936 by the Commission on Biological Standardisation of the Health Organisation of the League of Nations. The standard was prepared by extraction of ox posterior lobes with acetone followed by drying of the insoluble residue. The international unit is the activity present in 0.5 mg. of the international standard. This amount of material contains by definition one unit of oxytocic activity, one unit of pressor activity and one unit of antidiuretic activity.

METHODS FOR THE ESTIMATION OF ANTIDIURETIC ACTIVITY

This subject has been reviewed by Thorp (1950), Pickford (1952), Heller and Blackmore (1952), Van Dyke *et al.* (1955) and others. All the methods depend on the administration of standard and unknown preparations to animals which are in a state of water diuresis. In general, rats or dogs have been the test animals of choice in such assays. Table XIII shows some of the methods proposed along with their approximate sensitivities.

TABLE XIII
 ASSAY METHODS FOR POSTERIOR PITUITARY ANTIDIURETIC ACTIVITY
 (After Heller and Blackmore, 1952, and Dicker, 1953)

Test Animal.	Mode of Administration of Test Solutions.	Water Load.	Anaesthesia.	Sensitivity.	Reference.
Dog (intact)	Subcutaneous	200 ml. per animal by mouth	None	0.25 to 0.5 milliunit per animal	Kestranek <i>et al.</i> (1925)
	Intravenous	Not stated	None	0.5 milliunit per animal	Van Dyke <i>et al.</i> (1955)
Dog (with experimental diabetes insipidus)	Intravenous	100 ml. per animal by mouth	None	0.2 to 0.3 milliunit per animal	Hare <i>et al.</i> (1945)
Rat	Subcutaneous	5 ml. per 100 g. by mouth	None	2 to 3 milliunits per 100 g.	Burn (1931)
	Intraperitoneal	2 to 5 ml. per 100 g. by mouth, followed by 5 ml. per 100 g.	None	0.5 to 1 milliunit per 100 g.	Ham and Landis (1942)
	Intravenous	5 ml. 12 per cent. alcohol per 100 g. by mouth, followed by 3 ml. water per 100 g. by mouth	Alcohol	0.02 to 0.03 milliunit per animal	Jeffers <i>et al.</i> (1942)
Rabbit	Intravenous	100 ml. by mouth, followed by 50 ml. per kg.	Paraldehyde	0.5 milliunit per animal	Walker (1939)
Mouse	Intraperitoneal	5 ml. per 100 g. intraperitoneally	None	20 milliunits per 10 g.	Nelson and Woods (1934)
	Intravenous	Three times 5 ml. per 100 g. orally	None	0.010 milliunit per 10 g.	Heller and Blackmore (1952)

Many of the procedures listed in Table XIII are reasonably satisfactory for the estimation of the relatively large quantities of ADH present in posterior pituitary tissue. It is, however, doubtful whether any of them, with the possible exception of the intravenous techniques, are sufficiently specific to permit of the quantitative determination of this hormone in the body fluids of man and animals. It is well known that blood and urine contain many pharmacologically active substances other than ADH which are capable of causing antidiuresis in hydrated rats. For example, Erspamer and Sala (1954) have suggested that the antidiuretic activity of rabbit serum results from its content of 5-hydroxytryptamine (5HT). It must also be borne in mind that the subcutaneous and intraperitoneal injection of the test solutions is liable to cause the animals pain and excitement, both of which stimuli *per se* can produce antidiuresis by promoting the secretion of endogenous ADH.

Fluids suspected of containing ADS have been administered to test animals by the subcutaneous, intraperitoneal and intravenous routes. Although vasopressin itself can be conveniently assayed when injected by all three routes, most workers now agree that the ADS present in blood and urine can be estimated with reasonable accuracy only when the material containing it is given intravenously (Heller, 1951; Ames and Van Dyke, 1952; Pickford, 1952; Van Dyke *et al.*, 1955).

1. Methods employing Rats.

The method described by Burn (1931) depends on observing the degree of antidiuresis produced when standard and unknown preparations are administered subcutaneously to groups of hydrated rats. Adult male animals are employed; they are starved for some twelve hours prior to the assay but are allowed free access to water during this period. Each animal receives 5 ml. of water per 100 g. body weight by gavage and immediately afterwards the test solutions are injected. Urine volumes are measured at fifteen-minute intervals for approximately three hours. The time elapsing between the injection of the extracts and the point of maximum diuresis is noted and is plotted against the logarithm of the dose of the standard preparation. The potency of the unknown is determined by reference to the dose-response curve for the standard. To

ensure a satisfactory degree of precision the test should be repeated in two or three days' time, using a cross-over design in which the animals which were previously injected with the standard are injected with the unknown and those previously receiving the unknown are given the standard.

Burn's method with minor modifications in design has been widely used in attempts to estimate the ADS present in the blood and urine of man and animals. Gilman and Goodman (1937) found that a more consistent response was obtained after the administration of a preliminary hydrating dose of water while Ginsburg (1951) improved the sensitivity of the method by administering the water in three doses at hourly intervals. In the techniques described by Ham and Landis (1942) and by Birnie *et al.* (1949) the assay was made more sensitive by increasing the water load and by substituting intraperitoneal for subcutaneous injection of the standard and unknown preparations. For details of the actual procedures recommended the reader is referred to the original articles.

Probably the most reliable method in rats for the estimation of the antidiuretic activity of body fluids is the intravenous technique described originally by Jeffers *et al.* (1942) and subsequently modified by Ames and Van Dyke (1952) and by Dicker (1953). The assay animals are rendered diuretic by the administration of water by gavage. They are also given ethanol by the same route; this produces light anaesthesia and probably also suppresses the secretion of endogenous ADH. Urine is collected by means of catheters inserted into the bladder. When the urine excretion is relatively constant the standard or unknown preparation is injected intravenously. Estimations of antidiuretic activity are made by comparing the effect of the unknown with the standard in the same animal. The technique is very sensitive and will detect as little as 0.02 milliunit of the standard. Recently Hawker (1956 *a, b*) has used this method to study the antidiuretic activity of serum, plasma and placental extracts under normal and pathological conditions in man. His results will be discussed later in this chapter.

2. Methods employing Dogs.

Assays in intact dogs have been described by various investigators including Hare *et al.* (1941), O'Connor (1950)

and Van Dyke *et al.* (1955). In the opinion of Van Dyke *et al.* (1955) the most satisfactory test animal for the assay of ADH is the heavily hydrated, unanæsthetised dog which has been trained to lie quietly in a supine position throughout the experiment. Water is administered to such animals by gavage and, when the excretion of urine has become relatively constant, the standard and unknown preparations are injected intravenously. The end point of the assay is the degree of antidiuresis produced. The test is reasonably precise and is probably more specific for ADH than any other method yet proposed. It is also very sensitive and will detect as little as 0.25 milliunit of the standard preparation. Adamsons *et al.* (1956) have used this test to study the ADH content of pituitary glands in camels in order to ascertain whether or not the hormone has a special role in water conservation in this animal. It is probable that, in the future, the technique will be the procedure of choice for the quantitative determination of ADH in the body fluids of human subjects.

Hare *et al.* (1945) have recommended the use of dogs with experimentally produced diabetes insipidus for the assay of ADH. Theoretically assays conducted in such animals should be more reliable as the endogenous production of the hormone will not interfere with the results. However, Van Dyke *et al.* (1955) state that in normal dogs which have been adequately trained prior to the assay the secretion of ADH from the posterior pituitary is insufficient to influence the results obtained. These workers concluded that assays conducted in trained animals with intact pituitaries were just as satisfactory as those performed in dogs with experimental diabetes insipidus.

THE EXTRACTION OF ADH AND ADS FROM BODY FLUIDS

At the time of writing little or no reliable information is available as to what method or methods should be used for the extraction of ADH and ADS from *blood*. Up till now most investigators have administered untreated serum or plasma to the test animals. As pointed out by Lewis (1953) and by others it is probable that, even in dehydrated subjects, the blood concentration of ADH (as distinct from ADS) is very low. Accordingly, if assays specific for this hormone are

to be conducted, the blood should be concentrated prior to bio-assay.

Various techniques have been recommended for the preparation of ADS from *urine*. In that of Noble *et al.* (1939) the material is adsorbed on zinc ferricyanide and is then eluted by 1 per cent. ammonia in alcohol. The ammonia and alcohol are removed by vacuum distillation and the dry residue is dissolved in water. The originators claim that, when posterior pituitary extract is added to urine and extracted in this way, 70 to 90 per cent. of the antidiuretic activity is recovered.

Ralli *et al.* (1945) and others have extracted antidiuretic substances from urine merely by evaporating the urine at room temperature to volumes of approximately 80 ml. The reduction in volume is completed in thirty-six to forty-eight hours and during this time the electrolytes are removed by dialysis. The final solution is made up to 100 ml. with water. One millilitre of this solution is administered to each of the test animals. Slessor (1951) has employed the ultrafiltration method of Gorbman (1945) for the preparation of ADS from urine. Details of this technique are given on page 35.

THE CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF ASSAYS OF ADH AND ADS

ADH estimations in the clinical field will become possible only when assay methods more specific for this hormone are developed. Attempts have been made by various investigators to determine the concentration of ADS in body fluids under normal and pathological conditions but, because of the unreliable nature of the assay methods used, it is doubtful whether any confidence can be placed in the results obtained. Some of the problems encountered in such estimations have been critically examined by Lewis (1953). This worker compared the antidiuretic activity of human serum when assayed by two methods, one involving rats and the other man. Normal volunteers were subjected to dehydration for twelve hours; after this period the serum was assayed by intraperitoneal injection into hydrated rats and was shown to possess considerable antidiuretic activity. The potency

was equivalent to approximately 2 milliunits of pitressin (Parke-Davis) per millilitre. Following dehydration serum was also reinjected into the donors. No antidiuresis was observed and it was calculated that the activity present was less than 0.1 milliunit of pitressin per millilitre. From this discrepancy in results Lewis (1953) concluded that the rat assay method was non-specific and that the antidiuretic effect produced in the test animals resulted either from a stimulus such as pain or from the presence in serum of substances other than ADH.

1. Assays of ADS in Non-pregnant Conditions.

(a) NORMAL SUBJECTS.—Various workers, including Lloyd and Lobotsky (1950), Hawker (1953) and Perry and Fyles (1953) have demonstrated the presence of ADS in the serum of normal men and women. Lloyd and Lobotsky (1950) and Perry and Fyles (1953) have also reported that the concentration of ADS in serum rises after dehydration and falls during the diuresis induced by the ingestion of water. In these investigations the intraperitoneal assay method in rats as described by Birnie *et al.* (1949) was employed. In a recent study Hawker (1956 *a*), using the more specific intravenous technique of Jeffers *et al.* (1942), was unable to demonstrate antidiuretic activity in either serum or plasma from normal subjects. Hawker's findings provide support for the view that assays conducted by methods depending on intraperitoneal injection give an over-estimate of true antidiuretic potency and thus yield erroneously high values.

(b) LIVER DISEASE.—Evidence is conflicting regarding the concentration of ADS in the body fluids of patients with *hepatic cirrhosis*. Ralli *et al.* (1945) compared the antidiuretic activity of normal urine with that of cirrhotic patients both with and without ascites. The urine was concentrated by evaporation and was assayed in rats by Burn's method. The antidiuretic activity of normal urine and of the urine of cirrhotic patients without ascites was relatively low. In cirrhotic subjects with ascites, on the other hand, abnormally high levels were found. Ralli *et al.* (1945) suggested that the antidiuretic substance found in urine might be derived from the posterior pituitary and that the reason for its demonstration in increased amounts in the urine of cases of cirrhosis was due to the fact

that in such individuals the liver had lost its capacity to inactivate ADH. Hall *et al.* (1949) and Dochios and Dreifus (1951) have also reported an increase in antidiuretic activity in the urine of subjects with portal cirrhosis. Labby (1949) found an abnormally high urinary excretion of ADS in cases of *infective hepatitis*; the titre decreased during the period of convalescence from the disease.

In a more recent study Perry and Fyles (1953) estimated the concentration of ADS in serum in a series of nine patients with liver disease. They found normal values in all cases and concluded that alterations in the level of ADS in serum were not responsible for the water retention associated with hepatic cirrhosis.

(c) MISCELLANEOUS DISEASES.—Assays of ADS in blood and urine have been performed in numerous other clinical conditions, a few of which will be briefly mentioned. In *congestive cardiac failure* with oedema and in the *nephrotic syndrome* various investigators have demonstrated the presence of increased antidiuretic activity in urine (Robinson and Farr, 1940; Bercu *et al.*, 1949; Dochios and Dreifus, 1951). Claims have been made that a positive correlation exists between the quantity of ADS excreted on the one hand and the degree of clinical oedema on the other. These observations are at variance with the findings of Perry and Fyles (1953) who showed that the levels of ADS in the serum of ten patients with congestive cardiac failure did not differ significantly from normal.

It is well known that in *Addison's disease* and in other types of adrenal insufficiency water metabolism is abnormal. The failure of prompt diuresis after the ingestion of water forms the basis of the Robinson-Power-Kepler test, which has been widely used in the diagnosis of patients with adrenal insufficiency. Slessor (1951) has compared the antidiuretic activity of body fluids in patients with Addison's disease with that in normal individuals. Untreated serum and urine extracted by the ultrafiltration method were injected intraperitoneally into hydrated rats. Individuals in both groups were subjected to a period of fourteen hours' dehydration. It was found that, at the end of this time, the serum concentration of ADS was much higher in the Addisonians than in the control subjects. The antidiuretic activity of urine was also determined

in both groups after the administration of a test dose of water. In the normal subjects maximum diuresis occurred during the second hour of the test; at this time the urine, when tested for antidiuretic activity, gave negative results. In the Addisonian patients, on the other hand, water diuresis was either absent or greatly delayed. Urinary assays for ADS conducted during the first four hours after the administration of water showed definite activity whereas urine passed during the period of delayed diuresis produced no response in the test animals. On the basis of these observations Slessor (1951) concluded that the presence of an antidiuretic substance in the blood of patients with Addison's disease was responsible for the delayed diuresis seen in their condition. He also suggested that, since the phase of delayed diuresis is associated with the absence of antidiuretic activity from urine, the rate of removal of the ADS from blood in Addison's disease is abnormally slow. It must be emphasised that, although these suggestions are of interest, they must be accepted with reserve in view of the relative non-specificity of the assay method used in the course of this investigation.

2. Assays of ADS during Pregnancy.

(a) NORMAL PREGNANCY.—Various workers, including Teel and Reid (1939) and Krieger and Kilvington (1946), have failed to demonstrate the presence of antidiuretic activity in the blood and urine of normally pregnant women. On the other hand Hawker (1953), using the assay method of Birnie *et al.* (1949), detected ADS in the serum throughout normal pregnancy. The levels remained relatively constant at all stages of pregnancy but appeared to fall just prior to the onset of lactation. In more recent studies with a more specific assay method Hawker (1956 *a*) found antidiuretic activity in the serum but not in the plasma of normally pregnant women at different stages of gestation. He also showed that normal pregnancy plasma contains a substance which inactivates both vasopressin and the ADS present in serum from normally pregnant women and in plasma from cases of pre-eclamptic toxæmia. The properties of this inhibitor in pregnancy plasma are at present unknown although observations by Hawker (1956 *b*) and by others have suggested that it may be enzymic in nature. For further information regarding the ability of pregnancy blood to

inactivate oxytocin and vasopressin the reader is referred to articles by Werle and Effkemann (1941) and by Page (1946).

(b) PRE-ECLAMPTIC TOXÆMIA.—It is not yet known with certainty whether the excessive secretion of ADH plays any part in the ætiology of this condition. The information obtained from assays of ADS in body fluids has been confusing and contradictory. Anselmino *et al.* (1932) claimed to have demonstrated an increase in ADS in the blood of eclamptic women and suggested that the material was derived from the posterior pituitary. Teel and Reid (1939) reported that urine concentrates from toxæmic patients showed greater amounts of antidiuretic activity than those of normal women; they also stated that the quantity of antidiuretic material could be correlated with the degree of water retention but not with the hypertension or albuminuria. On the other hand, various investigators, including Theobald (1934), Levitt (1936) and Krieger and Kilvington (1946), were unable to demonstrate the presence of abnormally large quantities of ADS in the body fluids of toxæmic patients.

The subject of antidiuretic substances in body fluids in normal and abnormal pregnancy has recently been reviewed by Pickford (1952). This worker concluded that at present there was no definite evidence to support the view that the over-production of pituitary ADH with associated water retention was the main cause of pre-eclamptic toxæmia. It remains to be established whether antidiuretic substances are indeed present in increased quantities in the blood and urine of these patients or whether their apparent detection is due to the use of unsuitable assay methods.

(c) PLACENTAL EXTRACTS.—Hawker (1956 *b*) has recently shown that saline extracts of placenta from normally pregnant women and from patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia are capable of inactivating both the oxytocic and antidiuretic activity of posterior pituitary extracts. He has suggested that the inhibitor present in placental tissue is an enzyme. Placenta from normally pregnant women were found to possess considerably more enzymic activity than those from toxæmic women. Hawker's observations are certainly of interest in relation to the ætiology of pre-eclamptic toxæmia but their exact significance remains a problem for future elucidation.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Assay methods for ADH are not yet sufficiently specific for routine application in the clinical field. The most promising techniques at present available are those employing intravenous injection of the test solutions into hydrated rats and dogs. Assays depending on subcutaneous and intraperitoneal administration probably give an over-estimate of antidiuretic potency and should no longer be used in clinical studies.

Further work is necessary on methods of extraction of ADH from blood and urine.

It has been stated that the antidiuretic activity of body fluids is increased in hepatic cirrhosis with ascites, in the nephrotic syndrome, in congestive cardiac failure with œdema, in Addison's disease and in pre-eclamptic toxæmia. These claims should be accepted with reserve in view of the unreliability of the assay methods employed.

REFERENCES

- ACHER, R., CHAUVET, J. & FROMAGET, P. (1952). *Biochim. biophys. Acta*, **9**, 471.
 ADAMSONS, K., ENGEL, S. L., VAN DYKE, H. B., SCHMIDT-NIELSEN, B. & SCHMIDT-NIELSEN, K. (1956). *Endocrinology*, **58**, 272.
 AMES, R. G. & VAN DYKE, H. B. (1952). *Endocrinology*, **50**, 350.
 ANSELMINO, K. J., HOFFMAN, F. & KENNEDY, W. P. (1932). *Edinb. med. J.* **39**, 376.
 BERCU, B. A., ROKAW, S. N. & MUSSIE, E. (1949). *J. Lab. clin. Med.* **34**, 1585.
 BIRNIE, J. H., JENKINS, R., EVERSOLE, W. J. & GAUNT, R. (1949). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **70**, 83.
 BURN, J. H. (1931). *Quart. J. Pharm.* **4**, 517.
 DICKER, S. E. (1953). *J. Physiol.* **122**, 149.
 DOCHIOS, M. & DREIFUS, L. S. (1951). *Amer. J. med. Sci.* **222**, 538.
 ERSPAMER, V. & SALA, G. (1954). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **9**, 31.
 GILMAN, A. & GOODMAN, L. (1937). *J. Physiol.* **90**, 113.
 GINSBURG, M. (1951). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **6**, 411.
 GORBMAN, A. (1945). *Endocrinology*, **37**, 177.
 HALL, C. A., FRAME, B. & DRILL, V. A. (1949). *Endocrinology*, **44**, 76.
 HAM, G. C. & LANDIS, E. M. (1942). *J. clin. Invest.* **21**, 455.
 HARE, K., HICKEY, R. C. & HARE, R. S. (1941). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **134**, 240.
 HARE, K., MELVILLE, E. V., CHAMBERS, G. H. & HARE, R. S. (1945). *Endocrinology*, **36**, 323.
 HAWKER, R. W. (1953). *Lancet*, **2**, 1108.
 HAWKER, R. W. (1956 a). *J. Endocrin.* **14**, 400.
 HAWKER, R. W. (1956 b). *Quart. J. exp. Physiol.* **41**, 301.
 HELLER, H. (1951). *J. Pharm. Pharmacol.* **3**, 609.
 HELLER, H. & BLACKMORE, K. E. (1952). *J. Endocrin.* **8**, 224.
 JEFFERS, W. A., LIVEZEY, M. M. & AUSTIN, J. H. (1942). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **50**, 184.
 KESTRANEK, W., MOLITOR, H. & PICK, E. P. (1925). *Biochem. Z.* **164**, 34.
 KRIEGER, V. L. & KILVINGTON, T. B. (1946). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **6**, 320.
 LABBY, D. H. (1949). *J. clin. Invest.* **28**, 795.
 LEVITT, G. (1936). *J. clin. Invest.* **15**, 138.
 LEWIS, A. A. G. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 769.
 LIVERMORE, A. H. & DU VIGNEAUD, V. (1949). *J. biol. Chem.* **180**, 365.

- LLOYD, C. W. & LOBOTSKY, J. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 318.
- NELSON, E. E. & WOODS, G. G. (1934). *J. Pharmacol.* **50**, 241.
- NOBLE, R. L., RINDERKNECHT, H. & WILLIAMS, P. C. (1939). *J. Physiol.* **96**, 293.
- O'CONNOR, W. J. (1950). *Quart. J. exp. Physiol.* **36**, 21.
- PAGE, E. W. (1946). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **52**, 1014.
- PERRY, W. F. & FYLES, T. W. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 64.
- PICKFORD, M. (1952). *Pharmacol. Rev.* **4**, 254.
- RALLI, E. P., ROBSON, J. S., CLARKE, D. & HOAGLAND, C. L. (1945). *J. clin. Invest.* **24**, 316.
- Report of the Permanent Commission on Biological Standardisation (1936). *Quart. Bull. Hlth Org. L.o.N.* **5**, 572.
- ROBINSON, F. H., Jr. & FARR, L. E. (1940). *Ann. intern. Med.* **14**, 42.
- SLESSOR, A. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 700.
- TEEL, H. M. & REID, D. E. (1939). *Endocrinology*, **24**, 297.
- THEOBOLD, G. W. (1934). *J. Physiol.* **81**, 243.
- THORP, R. H. (1950). In *Hormone Assay*, ch. 5. Ed., C. W. Emmens. New York: Academic Press.
- TUPPY, H. (1953). *Biochim. biophys. Acta*, **11**, 449.
- TURNER, R. A., PIERCE, J. G. & DU VIGNEAUD, V. (1951). *J. biol. Chem.* **191**, 21.
- VAN DYKE, H. B. (1955). In *Polypeptides which stimulate Plain Muscle*, ch. 3. Ed., J. H. Gaddum. Edinburgh: Livingstone.
- VAN DYKE, H. B., ADAMSONS, K., Jr. & ENGEL, S. L. (1955). *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* **11**, 1.
- DU VIGNEAUD, V., GISH, D. T. & KATSOYANNIS, P. G. (1954). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **76**, 4751.
- DU VIGNEAUD, V., RESSLER, C., SWAN, J. M., ROBERTS, C. W., KATSOYANNIS, P. G. & GORDON, S. (1953). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **75**, 4879.
- WALKER, A. M. (1939). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **127**, 519.
- WERLE, E. & EFFKEMANN, G. (1941). *Arch. Gynec.* **171**, 286.

CHAPTER IX

Œstrogens

INTRODUCTION

FIVE different, but closely related, œstrogens have so far been isolated from human urine. These substances are *œstradiol-17 β* , *œstrone*, *œstriol*, *16-epiœstriol* and *16 α -hydroxy-œstrone*. The first three œstrogens have been known for many years while the fourth and fifth have only recently been shown to be naturally occurring compounds. The structural formulæ of the various œstrogens are shown in Fig. 32.

From the chemical point of view the three main characteristics of the œstrogens are (1) the aromatic nature of ring A of the steroid nucleus, (2) the oxygen substituent at C-17 and (3) the phenolic OH group at C-3 which gives the compounds weakly acidic properties.

Œstradiol-17 β was originally isolated by MacCorquodale *et al.* (1935) from the follicular fluid of sow's ovaries and has subsequently been isolated from other sources including human pregnancy urine (Huffman *et al.*, 1940 *a*), human placental tissue (Huffman *et al.*, 1940 *b*), horse testes (Beall, 1940) and stallion urine (Levin, 1945). This substance is the most potent of the naturally occurring œstrogens as judged by bio-assays in rats and mice and, because of this fact, the suggestion has been made that *œstradiol-17 β* is the true ovarian hormone in man.

Œstrone has been isolated from many sources including human pregnancy urine (Doisy *et al.*, 1929), human male urine (Dingemanse *et al.*, 1938), human placental tissue (Westerfeld *et al.*, 1938), beef adrenal glands (Beall, 1939) and the bile of pregnant cows (Pearlman *et al.*, 1947). As judged by bio-assays in rats and mice, *œstrone* is less active than *œstradiol-17 β* . In chemical structure it differs from the latter in having an oxo (=O) group instead of a hydroxyl (-OH) group at C-17.

Œstriol has been isolated from human pregnancy urine

(Marrian, 1930) and from human placental tissue (Browne, 1931). The presence of the hormone has not yet been detected with certainty in the urine of other species. In bio-assays involving oöphorectomised rats and mice, oestriol is less active in causing vaginal cornification than are oestradiol-17 β or oestrone. The molecule of oestriol contains three hydroxyl groups, and this accounts for the greater water solubility of the compound.

A stereo-isomer of oestriol, 16-epioestriol, has recently been

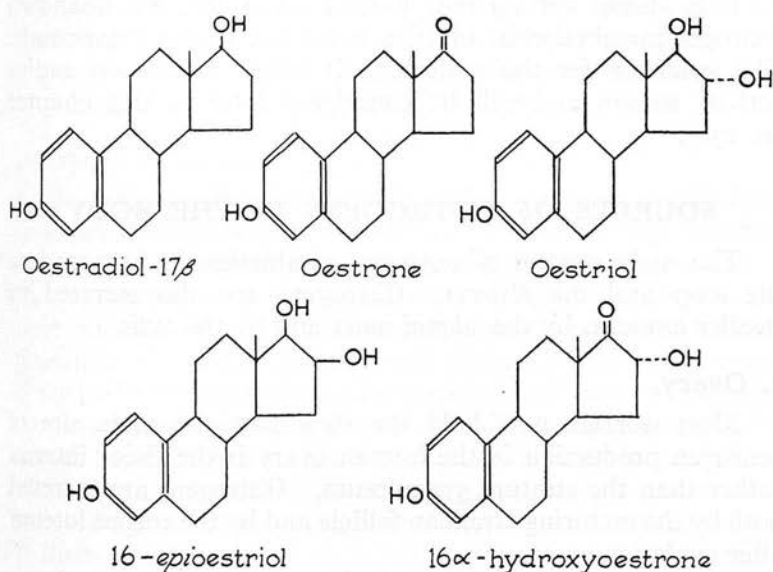


FIG. 32

Structural formulæ of the various oestrogens.

isolated from human pregnancy urine (Marrian and Bauld, 1955). Various workers including Huffman and Grollman (1947) and Loraine *et al.* (1957) have demonstrated that this substance is also capable of causing vaginal cornification in oöphorectomised rats and mice but that its biological activity in this test is considerably less than that of oestriol.

Marrian *et al.* (1957) have recently succeeded in isolating from human pregnancy urine a fifth oestrogen, 16 α -hydroxyoestrone. When assayed by the vaginal smear test in oöphorectomised mice, 16 α -hydroxyoestrone and oestriol are approximately equipotent (Loraine *et al.*, 1957).

Œstrogens are excreted in human urine as water-soluble conjugates. Œstriol is conjugated with glucuronic acid as œstriol glucuronide. It was formerly believed that œstrone was probably conjugated with sulphuric acid and excreted as œstrone sulphate. However, recent work by Oneson and Cohen (1952) has indicated that a relatively large proportion of the œstrone in human pregnancy urine is conjugated as the glucuronide. The mode of excretion of œstradiol-17 β , 16-epiœstriol and 16 α -hydroxyœstrone is not yet known.

It is almost certain that human urine contains unknown œstrogen metabolites in addition to the five known compounds. The evidence for this statement is based mainly on radio-activity studies and will be considered later in this chapter (p. 172).

SOURCES OF ŒSTROGENS IN THE BODY

The main sources of œstrogen production in humans are the *ovary* and the *placenta*. Œstrogens are also secreted in smaller amounts by the *adrenal cortex* and by the *testis*.

1. Ovary.

Most workers now hold the view that the main site of œstrogen production in the human ovary is the theca interna rather than the stratum granulosum. Œstrogens are secreted both by the maturing Graafian follicle and by the corpus luteum after ovulation.

Some doubt still exists as to the nature of the œstrogens secreted by the human ovary. Many years ago MacCorquodale *et al.* (1935, 1936) isolated œstradiol-17 β from the follicular fluid of sow's ovaries and in 1938 Westerfeld *et al.* demonstrated the presence of œstrone in the same material. Since then it has been generally assumed that these two substances are secreted by the ovaries of other species including man. It should, however, be emphasised that the œstrogens produced in and secreted by the human ovary have not yet been identified with certainty, although there is some indirect evidence, obtained from studies of the œstrogen excretion during the normal menstrual cycle, that œstradiol-17 β and/or œstrone may be the principal ovarian œstrogens elaborated in humans.

2. Placenta.

Oestrogens were first demonstrated in placental tissue by Fellner in 1912. Subsequently oestriol, oestrone and oestradiol-17 β were isolated from human placental tissue. Various workers including Diczfalusy (1953), Mitchell and Davies (1954) and Diczfalusy and Lindkvist (1956) have shown that, of the placental oestrogens, oestriol is the most important from the quantitative point of view.

There is good evidence to support the view that during pregnancy the placenta takes over from the ovary the production of oestrogens and that from the second or third month of pregnancy onwards this organ is the dominant source of the hormone.

3. Adrenal Cortex.

Oestrone has been isolated from beef adrenal glands and, although oestrogens have not yet been identified with certainty in human adrenal tissue, there is strong indirect evidence to support the view that the adrenal cortex is capable of elaborating these substances. Various investigators have detected small quantities of oestriol, oestrone and oestradiol-17 β in the urine of normal men, and of post-menopausal and oöphorectomised women, and it is probable that the principal source of oestrogens in such individuals is the adrenal cortex. Both male and female patients with certain types of adrenocortical tumours have been shown to excrete abnormally large quantities of oestrogens in their urine (Simpson and Joll, 1938; Dohan *et al.*, 1953), and it is reasonable to assume that these substances are derived from hyperactive adrenocortical tissue. In addition, it has been recently demonstrated by Dao (1953) and by Brown (1957) that in patients with mammary carcinoma subjected both to bilateral oöphorectomy and bilateral adrenalectomy the urinary oestrogen titre may fall to zero levels.

4. Testis.

Goldzieher and Roberts (1952) have recently detected the presence of oestradiol-17 β in human testicular tissue, while Diczfalusy (1954) has shown that pooled human semen contains oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol. Little is so far known regarding the site of production of oestrogens in the testis. Various investigators, including Vigdoff *et al.* (1939)

and Berthrong *et al.* (1949), have suggested that the seminiferous tubules, and in particular the Sertoli cells, are capable of oestrogen secretion, but the evidence for this is by no means conclusive. For further information on this controversial subject the interested reader is referred to review articles by Huggins and Moulder (1945) and by Howard *et al.* (1950).

METHODS OF ESTIMATION OF OESTROGENS IN HUMAN URINE

In this section consideration will be given to assay methods for oestrogens in urine extracts. At the time of writing, assay methods for these hormones in blood are not in a sufficiently advanced state to merit critical evaluation.

As mentioned previously the oestrogens present in the urine do not occur in the free state but are conjugated with glucuronic acid and perhaps also, to a lesser extent, with sulphuric acid. Prior to extraction and determination either by biological or by chemical methods, these conjugates must be hydrolysed. This may be accomplished either by boiling the urine with acid or by incubating it with enzyme preparations containing β -glucuronidase and phenolsulphatase. The free oestrogen is then extracted with a suitable water-immiscible solvent, *e.g.*, ether. Subsequent washing of the ethereal extract by sodium bicarbonate removes the acid fraction of urine; the 'total phenolic fraction,' which can be used for the determination of total oestrogens, can then be obtained by distribution between ether, benzene or toluene and sodium hydroxide. Finally, the total phenolic fraction can be separated into oestriol, oestrone and oestradiol fractions and the excretion of the individual oestrogens can then be determined.

Most of the early work on the estimation of oestrogens in urine extracts was performed by bio-assay techniques which, although sensitive, had a relatively low degree of precision. By means of such techniques a considerable amount of useful clinical information was accumulated on the oestrogen excretion in health and disease, but the results obtained could not be regarded as strictly quantitative. Within recent years reliable chemical methods have become available for the assay of urinary oestrogens, and it is virtually certain that these techniques will entirely replace bio-assay procedures in the estimation of

oestrogens for clinical purposes. However, in view of the fact that most of the results at present available for the oestrogen excretion in patients have been obtained by bio-assay, it was felt that these techniques, as well as the chemical procedures, should be briefly described.

THE ESTIMATION OF OESTROGENS BY BIOLOGICAL METHODS

The discussion will be conducted under the following headings:

1. The international standard preparations for the oestrogens.
2. Assays based on vaginal cornification.
3. Assays based on uterine weight.
4. Miscellaneous assay methods.

1. The International Standard Preparations for the Oestrogens.

An international standard for oestrone was established in 1932 by the Permanent Commission on Biological Standardisation. The international unit was defined as the activity contained in 0.1 μ g. of the standard preparation. The introduction of this standard made it possible for workers to assay urine extracts in terms of oestrone and to express results in international units rather than in 'animal units.' However, for reasons which will be discussed later in this chapter, the establishment of a standard preparation did not greatly increase the reliability of oestrogen assays by biological methods and the clinical information obtained remained of doubtful value from the quantitative point of view.

In the years immediately following the adoption of this standard, esterified forms of the hormone came into general use. When these preparations were tested against the standard for oestrone, the relative potency was found to vary depending on the solvent and on the assay design employed. Accordingly, in 1935 the Permanent Commission on Biological Standardisation agreed to establish a second international standard, namely, the monobenzoate of oestradiol-17 β . The international unit was again defined as the activity contained

in 0.1 μ g. of the standard preparation. The standard for α estradiol monobenzoate has not been used to any extent in α estrogen assays in the clinical field.

2. Assays based on Vaginal Cornification.

The biological method for α estrogen assay most frequently employed in clinical studies depends on the induction of vaginal cornification in oöphorectomised rats and mice after the subcutaneous administration of urine extracts. This technique was originally introduced by Allen and Doisy in 1923 and has since been studied extensively and modified by numerous investigators. In the modification described by Marrian and Parkes (1929) aqueous solutions of α estrogens are injected subcutaneously into mice in four doses over thirty-six hours. Vaginal smears are taken once on the second day, three times on the third day and twice on the fourth day of the assay. The response is considered positive if any of the six smears taken from a mouse is positive. A 'positive' smear is regarded as one which contains epithelial and cornified cells but no leucocytes. Using the vaginal smear test it has generally been found that α estradiol-17 β is more active than α estrone and that α estrone is more active than α estriol.

Many investigators in the clinical field have expressed assay results with the vaginal smear test in 'rat' and 'mouse units,' a 'unit' being defined as the dose of urine necessary to elicit 50 per cent. of positive responses in a group of animals. It has already been emphasised (p. 8) that the error of estimations expressed in 'animal units' may be very large and that results calculated in this way have little quantitative significance.

Emmens (1939) has made a careful study of the many variable factors affecting the vaginal smear test. He concluded that, for a reasonable degree of precision, a four-point design should be employed with two groups of mice receiving the standard and two groups receiving the unknown preparation. Each group should consist of not fewer than twenty animals. Emmens (1939) and others have found that when the number of animals per dose level of standard or unknown is less than twenty the error of the test becomes very large.

Various attempts have been made to increase the precision and sensitivity of the Allen-Doisy test. One of the modifications

suggested substituted for subcutaneous injection intravaginal application of oestrogens (Emmens, 1947). Various workers, including Albrieux (1941) and Krichesky and Glass (1947), have applied the intravaginal technique to the assay of oestrogens in human blood.

3. Assays based on Uterine Weight.

Methods have been described using oöphorectomised immature rats (Bülbring and Burn, 1935) and intact immature rats and mice (Lauson *et al.*, 1939; Evans *et al.*, 1940). Usually the animals are injected once or twice per day for three days and are killed approximately seventy-two hours after the first injection, at which time the uteri are weighed fresh. In general there is a linear relationship between the logarithm of the dose of the administered oestrogen and the effect produced, although the actual dose-response curves for the various oestrogens are markedly dissimilar. Assays in intact immature rats have shown that oestradiol-17 β is the most potent of the natural oestrogens and that oestriol is more potent than oestrone (Lauson *et al.*, 1939). Similar studies in mice by Evans *et al.* (1940) and others have demonstrated that oestriol is the weakest of the three oestrogens, that oestradiol-17 β is the most potent, and that oestrone occupies an intermediate position.

SIX-HOUR TEST FOR OESTROGENIC ACTIVITY.—Astwood (1938) studied the early effects of oestrogens on the uteri of intact immature rats and showed that a rapid increase in weight occurred during the first few hours after the injection. This increase is mainly due to accumulation of water by the endometrial stroma. Astwood (1938) proposed that this reaction be made the basis of a six-hour assay method in which the dosage of the oestrogens administered was plotted against the percentage increase in uterine weight. Using this technique it was found that oestradiol-17 β was approximately twelve times more potent than oestrone.

4. Miscellaneous Assay Methods.

Various additional bio-assay methods for oestrogens have been described. These have included tests depending on vaginal opening in intact immature rats, mice and guinea-pigs (Lauson *et al.*, 1939; Littrell *et al.*, 1946) and on enlargement of the oviduct in chicks (Dorfman and Dorfman, 1948). However,

none of these procedures has yet gained popularity in the clinical field. For details of these methods the reader is referred to the original articles.

Disadvantages of Biological Methods in the Assay of Urinary Œstrogens.

The careful studies of Emmens (1939) and of Pedersen-Bjergaard (1939) have demonstrated beyond all doubt that, for a number of reasons, bio-assays of œstrogens, when performed on the relatively impure extracts derived from human urine, are so unreliable that little or no confidence can be placed in the results obtained. The sources of error fall into three main groups.

In the first place it has been shown that, in a given experiment, the estimation of œstrogenic potency will depend to a very large extent on the method of assay adopted and that minor variations in technique such as alteration of solvent or of spacing of injections will markedly influence the final result. This is well illustrated by the observation of Pedersen-Bjergaard (1939), who found that an extract of human pregnancy urine gave a potency varying from 158 to 75,900 i.u. per g. (expressed in terms of œstrone) according to the assay method employed.

The second difficulty arises from the fact that, since the impure urine extracts contain a mixture of at least three œstrogens which differ widely in their biological activity, such extracts cannot be assayed in terms of the international standard for œstrone. A more reliable estimate of œstrogenic potency would presumably be obtained by separating the œstrogens prior to bio-assay into œstriol, œstrone and œstradiol fractions and by expressing results in terms of the weights of the pure crystalline substances. However, such a procedure would be exceedingly laborious and time-consuming and would require a very large number of animals for any reasonable degree of precision.

A third source of error depends on evidence which has been presented by Emmens (1939). This worker has shown that human urine concentrates may contain 'augmenting' substances which enhance the effect of œstrogens on the target organs and which are present in varying amounts according to the method of extraction employed.

THE ESTIMATION OF ŒSTROGENS BY CHEMICAL METHODS

Chemical procedures for the determination of œstrogens in human urine fall into two main groups:

1. Colorimetric methods.
2. Fluorimetric methods.

1. Colorimetric Methods.

Such methods have usually depended on the reaction described originally by Kober in 1931. This test consists essentially of heating the œstrogens with a mixture of phenol and sulphuric acid, diluting with water and re-heating. A pink colour with an absorption maximum at a wave-length of approximately $520\text{ m}\mu$ is obtained. Later workers have shown that other phenols and some reducing agents can be substituted for phenol itself in the reagent.

The Kober reaction is highly specific for the naturally occurring œstrogens. Its chief source of error lies in the fact that crude œstrogen concentrates from urine contain substances of unknown composition which produce a brown colour in the spectral range of the absorption maximum of the Kober colour. Various attempts have been made to correct for the error in estimation due to the brown colour and thus to increase the sensitivity of the procedure (Venning *et al.*, 1937; Stevenson and Marrian, 1947). Such attempts were reasonably successful in the case of extracts from the urine of pregnant women which contain relatively large amounts of œstrogens but, until recently, were much less successful in the case of urinary extracts from non-pregnant subjects in whom the excretion of œstrogens is very much lower. In 1948 Marrian concluded that the Kober reaction, together with the extraction and purification procedures then available, was probably unreliable in urines containing less than 2 mg. of œstrogens per twenty-four hours and that accurate chemical determinations of the urinary excretion of œstrogens were only possible during mid and late pregnancy.

Recently careful and detailed studies have been made by Brown (1952) and by Bauld (1954) on the many variable factors concerned in the development of the Kober colour, and this work has resulted in a very significant increase in the

reliability of the procedure. Great improvements were also made by those investigators in methods of extraction and purification of the urinary oestrogens. The methods ultimately developed by Brown (1955 *a*) and by Bauld (1956) for the quantitative determination of oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol in human urine are described below.

(*a*) THE METHOD OF BROWN (1955 *a*).—The main steps in this method are (i) acid hydrolysis, (ii) ether extraction, (iii) carbonate wash of the ether extract, (iv) partition between a benzene-petroleum ether mixture and water and alkali, (v) a new phase-change purification procedure for the phenolic fraction depending on methylation of the phenol group, (vi) separation of the oestrogen methyl ethers by adsorption chromatography on alumina columns, (vii) colorimetric measurement using an improved Kober colour method, (viii) spectrophotometric correction for interfering chromogenic material using the formula described by Allen in 1950.¹ It should be noted that the oestrogens obtained by this procedure are in the form of methyl ethers and are not biologically active.

The accuracy of the method has been tested by a series of recovery experiments in which known amounts of oestriol, oestrone and oestradiol-17 β were added to portions of acid-hydrolysed twenty-four-hour urine samples from normal men. The mean recovery figures lay between 80 and 90 per cent. even at levels corresponding to 4 μ g. of added oestrogen per twenty-four hours. It is probable that a further 10 to 20 per cent. of the added oestrogens is lost during acid hydrolysis and that the overall recovery for the whole method is of the order of 60 to 75 per cent.

In his original paper Brown (1955 *a*) stated that his method was reasonably accurate for the determination of oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol down to a level of 5 μ g. per twenty-four hours of each of the three oestrogens. Subsequent work has tended to show that, although the precision and accuracy of the method decrease when the amount of each oestrogen present is less than 5 μ g. per twenty-four hours, results above

¹ The Allen correction depends on the assumption that the contaminating colours have linear wave-length/absorption curves in the region of the absorption maximum of the oestrogen Kober colours. There is good evidence to show that this assumption is correct in the case of the methods described by Brown (1955 *a*) and by Bauld (1956).

approximately 2 μ g. per twenty-four hours for each of the three oestrogens still retain quantitative significance (British Empire Cancer Campaign, 1956).

The specificity of Brown's method has been studied by Diczfalusy (1955) using countercurrent techniques and by Bulbrook *et al.* (1957) using bio-assay. There is now good evidence to support the view that the substances measured are indeed α estradiol-17 β , α estrone and α estriol.

This method for oestrogen determination is somewhat exacting and time-consuming but is suitable for use in the clinical field. One trained technician can conveniently perform four to six complete estimations in two days. Various investigators, including Brown (1955 *b*, 1956), Diczfalusy and Westman (1956), Bulbrook and Greenwood (1957 *a*, *b*) and Støa and Knutsen (1957) have used the procedure to study the urinary excretion of oestrogens in health and disease.

(*b*) THE METHOD OF BAULD (1956).—This method involves (i) acid hydrolysis, (ii) ether extraction, (iii) separation of α estriol from α estrone and α estradiol-17 β by distribution between benzene and water, (iv) purification of α estriol by saponification and by column partition chromatography, (v) separation and purification of α estrone and α estradiol-17 β by column partition chromatography and by saponification, (vi) colorimetric determination of the purified fractions using an improved Kober reaction, (vii) spectrophotometric correction for interfering chromogenic material by means of Allen's correction formula.

Bauld's method differs from that of Brown in employing partition chromatography on celite columns rather than adsorption chromatography on alumina columns. The oestrogens obtained by Bauld's method are in the free form and are therefore biologically active.

COMPARISON OF METHODS OF BROWN AND BAULD.—The methods are comparable in terms of accuracy, precision, sensitivity and specificity. When parallel assays by the two methods were conducted on urine samples from men and from normally menstruating and post-menopausal women, the results obtained were in good agreement (Marrian, 1955).

There is little doubt that the methods of Brown and Bauld are the best procedures at present available for the quantitative determination of oestrogens in human urine. The main

limitation of both methods lies in the fact that the conditions of hydrolysis are not entirely optimal and it is probable that from 10 to 20 per cent. of the oestrogens is lost during this step. The methods are well adapted to studies in women during reproductive life but are probably less reliable in post-menopausal women, in men and in children, in whom the urinary excretion of oestrogens is generally lower, being frequently less than 5 $\mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours for each of the three oestrogens. Neither method in its present form is capable of measuring the more recently discovered urinary oestrogens, 16-*epi*oestrinol and 16 α -hydroxyoestrone. In order to obtain a true picture of the urinary excretion of endogenous oestrogens in health and disease it will probably be necessary to design a new procedure which will permit of the accurate determination of all five compounds.

2. Fluorimetric Methods.

Such methods depend on the fact that an intense yellowish-green fluorescence develops when an oestrogen is heated with sulphuric acid or phosphoric acid. The fluorescence produced is proportional to the quantity of oestrogens present; its intensity can be measured in a sensitive fluorimeter. The fluorescence reaction for oestrogens is more sensitive than the Kober reaction. It has, however, the serious disadvantage of being much less specific. This lack of specificity arises from the fact that, in the relatively impure extracts prepared from urine by existing methods, substances other than oestrogens are capable of producing fluorescence.

Numerous methods involving fluorimetry have been described, but for various reasons none of them has gained wide acceptance in clinical studies. The method described by Jailer (1948) was applied to the estimation of oestrone and oestradiol-17 β in urine but could not be used for the quantitative determination of oestrinol. A more promising technique was later described by Engel *et al.* (1950). These workers purified their extracts by countercurrent distribution and subsequently estimated the individual oestrogens by fluorimetry. This technique is much too laborious for routine use. This can also be said of a further refinement of Engel's method developed by Migeon (1953). In the method of Braunsberg *et al.* (1955) the phenolic material, obtained after hydrolysis,

extraction and partial purification of urine, was further purified by partition chromatography on celite columns; fluorimetric estimations of oestrone, oestradiol-17 β and oestriol were made on the three fractions thus obtained. Very recently Aitken and Preedy (1956) have described an assay procedure for urinary oestrogens involving gradient elution partition chromatography followed by fluorimetry. At the time of writing it is too early to assess whether this technique will prove suitable for application to clinical problems.

There seems little doubt that, at present, colorimetric rather than fluorimetric techniques should be used for the quantitative determination of oestrogens in human urine. The many variable factors in the fluorescence reaction have not yet been adequately studied. Such a study might well yield important information as this reaction, because of its relatively high sensitivity, might in the future become the procedure of choice for the final determination of oestrogens in low-titre urines and in blood. This view is supported by the recent work of Preedy and Aitken (1957) who, using an assay method depending on gradient elution partition chromatography and fluorimetry, were able to measure the plasma oestrogen concentration in normally pregnant women.

16-EPIOESTRIOL AND 16 α -HYDROXYOESTRONE AS URINARY OESTROGENS

By using the highly specific Kober reaction as modified by Brown and by Bauld, Marrian and his co-workers have recently detected in human urine the presence of substances other than oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol, which are capable of giving the Kober reaction (Marrian and Bauld, 1955; Watson and Marrian, 1956; Marrian *et al.*, 1957).

In 1955 Marrian and Bauld, using pregnancy urine, were able to concentrate a new 'Kober chromogen' in the crude oestriol-containing fraction. Subsequently, by means of countercurrent solvent partition methods and column partition chromatography, these workers separated this substance completely from oestriol and isolated it as a pure crystalline compound. This compound was shown to be an isomer of oestriol; it was soon demonstrated that it was identical with 16-epioestriol, a substance which, many years before, had

been prepared synthetically but had not previously been shown to occur naturally. There is now good evidence that 16-*epi*œstriol occurs as such in urine and is not an artifact produced during the extraction process. Watson and Marrian (1956) have recently described a method which permits of the rough determination of 16-*epi*œstriol in pregnancy urine and have also detected the presence of this steroid in urine obtained from women during the follicular and luteal phases

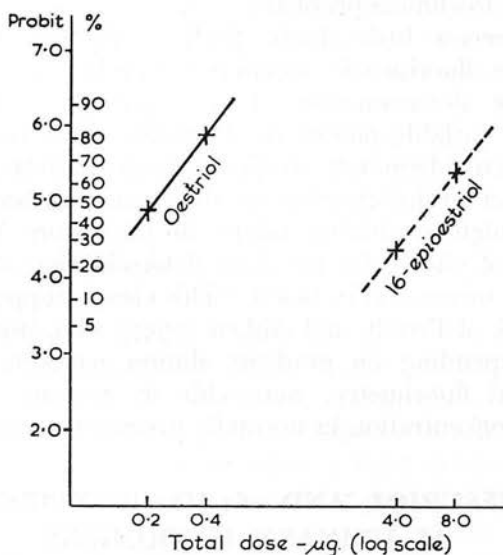


FIG. 33

Comparison of the biological activities of 16-*epi*œstriol and œstriol using the vaginal smear test in oöphorectomised mice. (From Loraine *et al.*, 1957.)

of the normal menstrual cycle. In cyclic urine the quantity present was approximately 1 µg. per twenty-four-hour specimen.

The œstrogenic potency of 16-*epi*œstriol has been compared with that of œstriol using the vaginal smear test in oöphorectomised rats and mice (Loraine *et al.*, 1957). 16-*epi*œstriol was found to be capable of causing vaginal cornification in such animals but was considerably less active than œstriol in this respect. A typical assay in mice is shown in Fig. 33. In this experiment the ratio of activities (œstriol/16-*epi*œstriol) was approximately 20 : 1. Statistical calculations showed that there was no significant difference

between the slopes of the dose-effect curves for the two oestrogens. It is therefore justifiable to assay 16-*epi*oestriol in terms of oestriol.

Marrian *et al.* (1957) have recently succeeded in isolating from pregnancy urine a fifth oestrogen, 16 α -hydroxyoestrone. In late pregnancy urine quantities of 16 α -hydroxyoestrone ranging from 1 to 3 mg. per twenty-four hours have been found (see p. 181), and it is therefore probable that, from the quantitative point of view, this steroid is as important as oestrone and more important than oestradiol-17 β . In urine collected from women during the normal menstrual cycle values ranging from 1 to 25 μ g. per twenty-four-hour urine sample have been obtained. It must be emphasised that at present methods for the estimation of 16 α -hydroxyoestrone in urine are far from quantitative. For this reason it is probable that the true values for this urinary steroid are much higher than those quoted above.

Loraine *et al.* (1957) have shown that oestriol and 16 α -hydroxyoestrone are approximately equipotent when assayed by the vaginal smear test in oöphorectomised mice. A typical assay is shown in Fig. 34.

It will be noted that the slopes of the dose-response curves for the two oestrogens do not differ significantly. It can therefore be concluded that, as in the case of 16-*epi*oestriol, it is justifiable to assay 16 α -hydroxyoestrone in terms of oestriol.

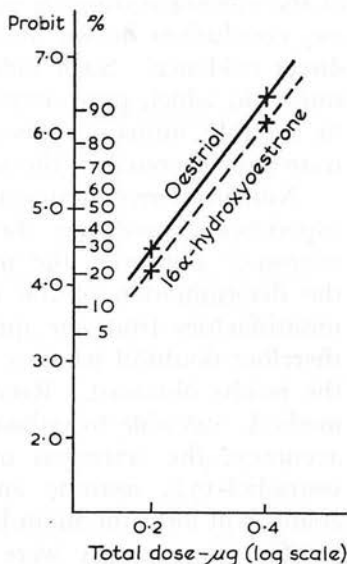


FIG. 34

Comparison of the biological activities of 16 α -hydroxyoestrone and oestriol using the vaginal smear test in oöphorectomised mice. (From Loraine *et al.*, 1957.)

THE CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF URINARY OESTROGEN ESTIMATIONS

One of the main reasons for performing urinary oestrogen determinations is to obtain information regarding the

production of endogenous oestrogens in the body. Accordingly, it is necessary to consider the quantitative relationship between the secretion of endogenous oestrogens on the one hand and the excretion of urinary oestrogens on the other.

At present it is not possible to measure the actual quantities of the various oestrogens produced by the body and therefore any conclusions drawn must be based on indirect rather than direct evidence. Such indirect evidence can be obtained by studies in which pure oestrogens are administered parenterally to suitable human subjects and the amounts of additional oestrogens excreted in the urine are subsequently determined.

Numerous investigators in the past conducted such metabolic experiments involving the injection of oestradiol-17 β and oestrone. However, the methods used by these workers for the determination of the oestrogens in urine were generally unsatisfactory from the quantitative point of view, and it is therefore doubtful whether much reliance could be placed on the results obtained. Recently Brown (1957), using his own method, was able to estimate, with a much greater degree of accuracy, the oestrogen output after the administration of oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol. Accordingly, Brown's results will form the main basis of the ensuing discussion.

The experiments were conducted on two normal male subjects, on two young women with amenorrhoea and on two post-menopausal women. Each of these individuals was injected intramuscularly with standard doses of pure oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol. After each injection the total additional oestrogen (oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol) excreted was estimated in each case and a calculation was made of the percentage of the three individual oestrogens as a percentage of the total additional oestrogen. The average figures obtained in the six cases are shown in Table XIV.

It will be noted that, after the injection of either oestradiol-17 β or of oestrone, approximately one-quarter of the administered dose is excreted in the urine as oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol, and that, in both cases, roughly equivalent proportions of oestrone and oestriol are excreted along with relatively smaller amounts of oestradiol-17 β . Accordingly, it seems reasonable to conclude, firstly, that only about 25 per cent. of the endogenously produced oestradiol-17 β and/or oestrone is excreted in the urine as oestradiol-17 β ,

œstrone and œstriol and, secondly, that the remaining 75 per cent. is eliminated from the body by other routes or in other forms.

Table XIV shows that, after the injection of œstriol, the pattern of excretion is entirely different. Approximately 80 per cent. of this steroid is eliminated in the urine unchanged

TABLE XIV

SOME OBSERVATIONS ON THE METABOLISM
OF INJECTED ŒSTROGENS

(After Brown, 1957)

Œstrogen injected.	Total Additional Œstrogen (œstradiol-17 β + œstrone + œstriol) as Percentage of Dose injected.	Amounts of Individual Œstrogens excreted as Percentage of Total Œstrogen excreted.		
		Œstradiol-17 β .	Œstrone.	Œstriol.
Œstradiol-17 β .	23	16	40	44
Œstrone . .	22	11	43	46
Œstriol . .	79	...	...	100

and there is no additional urinary excretion of œstradiol-17 β or of œstrone.

The œstrogen excretion during the normal menstrual cycle will be discussed later in this chapter (p. 173), but at this point it is useful to note that, in normally menstruating women, the relative proportions of œstradiol-17 β , œstrone and œstriol in urine are very similar to those found in the urine of men and of post-menopausal women after the administration of either œstradiol-17 β or of œstrone. Accordingly, it may be justifiable to conclude that œstradiol-17 β and/or œstrone are the principal steroids secreted by the ovary during the cycle and that the total œstrogen content excreted in the urine represents only about one-quarter of that secreted in the body.

In late pregnancy œstriol constitutes approximately 90 per cent. of the total œstrogen excreted, while œstradiol-17 β and œstrone account for only 3 and 7 per cent. respectively of the total amount present in the urine. These figures are in marked contrast to those obtained in normally menstruating women

and in men and amenorrhœic women injected with œstradiol-17 β or œstrone. It can only be concluded that a high proportion of the œstriol excreted during pregnancy represents œstriol secreted by the placenta. It can also be calculated that the total œstrogen secreted must be greater than the amount excreted in the urine by only about 30 per cent. These rough calculations are based on the assumption that the metabolism of secreted œstrogens in the normal non-pregnant subject and in the pregnant woman is the same as in the male and in the amenorrhœic woman injected with œstrogens. It must be emphasised that this assumption is not necessarily valid.

Recently, valuable information regarding the metabolism of administered œstrogens has been obtained by the radio-activity studies of Beer and Gallagher (1955) who administered ¹⁴C-labelled œstradiol-17 β to non-pregnant human subjects. They found that approximately 65 per cent. of the administered radio-activity appeared in the urine and that the excretion of radio-activity in the fæces was negligible. This important work makes it possible to draw two main conclusions. The first is that the urine is the main route of excretion for œstrogen metabolites; this fact was not appreciated before. The second conclusion is that the urine must contain unknown metabolites other than the five known œstrogens and that, from the quantitative point of view, the unknown metabolites are more important than the known metabolites.

THE URINARY EXCRETION OF ŒSTROGENS IN NORMAL SUBJECTS

It has already been stated that, until very recently, methods for estimating the urinary œstrogens for clinical purposes were very unsatisfactory. Biological procedures based on the Allen-Doisy test were generally employed and results were expressed either in 'animal units' or in terms of the international standard for œstrone. Such estimations, for reasons already discussed, were of only limited significance from the quantitative point of view and little attempt could be made to compare results from different laboratories. The recent introduction of reliable chemical techniques for the determination of œstrogens in urine has made it possible for the first

time to study on a reasonably quantitative basis the oestrogen excretion in normal and pathological conditions in man. Clinical studies with the new methods are at present in progress in many centres and the results obtained will be awaited with considerable interest.

1. Children.

Most investigators agree that the urinary excretion of oestrogens in children and adolescents is relatively low when compared with that of women during reproductive life. The most detailed study is probably that of Nathanson *et al.* (1941), who used the vaginal smear test in oöphorectomised mice and expressed their results in terms of the international standard for oestrone. These workers found that, between the ages of three and seven, small quantities of oestrogens were excreted in the urine of both boys and girls and that the amounts present in the two sexes were approximately equal. In boys after the age of seven oestrogens continued to be excreted in small quantities and showed little or no rise with the onset of puberty. In girls the urinary output of oestrogens rose sharply between the ages of eight and eleven and after eleven it usually became cyclic in character. Cyclic oestrogen excretion could precede the menarché by one or two years or could coincide with the first visible signs of secondary sexual development. Dorfman *et al.* (1937) have emphasised that the oestrogen excretion is related to physical maturity rather than to chronological age.

Tillinger *et al.* (1957), using Brown's method, have recently studied the oestrogen excretion in newborn boys. They were unable to detect the presence of oestradiol-17 β or of oestrone but found measurable quantities of oestriol. Investigations of this type, in which reliable assay methods are used, should in the future yield important information regarding the oestrogen excretion in normal and pathological conditions in children.

2. Normally Menstruating Women.

Numerous investigators using bio-assay methods have measured the excretion of oestrogens during the different phases of the normal menstrual cycle (Smith *et al.*, 1938; Gustavson *et al.*, 1938; Pedersen-Bjergaard and Tønnesen, 1948). Usually two peaks of excretion have been found, one at or about the time of ovulation and the other during the luteal phase. Curves

of the same general shape were subsequently obtained by Jayle and Crépy (1952), who used a chemical assay method in which the final determination depended on the Kober reaction. Recently Brown (1955 *b*) has studied the oestrogen excretion throughout ten normal cycles. Brown's results are probably more meaningful from the quantitative point of view than any previously published, and accordingly his findings will be discussed in some detail. Typical curves in individual cases are shown in Figs. 35 to 40.

It will be noted that in all the subjects studied the amounts of the three oestrogens excreted generally rise and fall together. Usually oestradiol-17 β is excreted in smaller amounts than oestrone but, in a given urine sample, the ratio (oestrone/oestradiol-17 β) is approximately constant at 2.1. On the other hand there appears to be no such constant relationship between the excretion of oestrone and oestriol as shown by the fact that in individual urines the oestriol excretion can be greater than, equal to or less than the corresponding figure for oestrone.

During the first seven to ten days of the cycle the excretion of all three oestrogens is low—in most cases 5 μ g. or less of each per twenty-four hours. The levels start to rise on or about the seventh day and reach a well-defined maximum at or about the thirteenth day. This maximum, which generally coincides with the rise in body temperature, has been termed the *ovulation peak*. Brown's data therefore suggest that oestrogens are secreted steadily in increasing amounts prior to ovulation and are not suddenly liberated at ovulation as some investigators have previously believed.

After ovulation there is a rapid fall in the excretion of all three oestrogens. During this phase of the cycle, as well as at ovulation, the changes in the excretion of oestrone and oestradiol-17 β run parallel but the changes in oestriol excretion tend to lag about twenty-four hours behind the other two. The significance of this finding will be discussed below. The fall in oestrogen excretion is succeeded by a second rise which occurs at or about the twenty-first day and is maintained until shortly before the onset of the next menstrual period. This second rise can be termed the *luteal maximum* and probably reflects the secretion of oestrogens by the corpus luteum. During the luteal maximum the oestriol 'lag' phenomena is

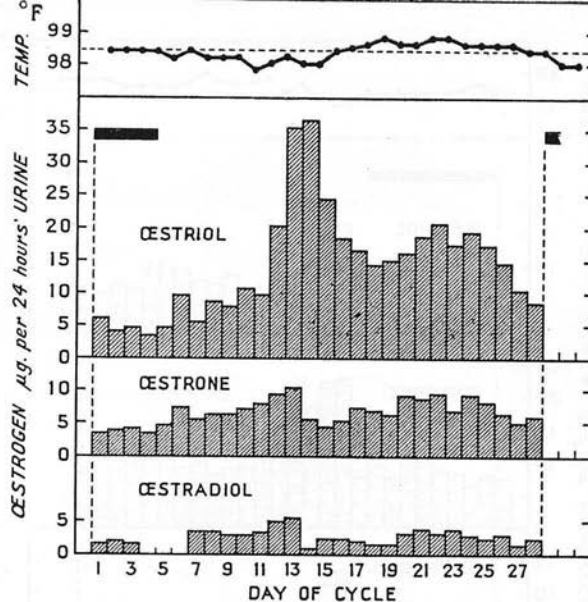


FIG. 35

Urinary excretion of oestrogens during the normal menstrual cycle. Basal temperature readings are also shown.

■ = menstrual period. (From Brown, 1955 b.)

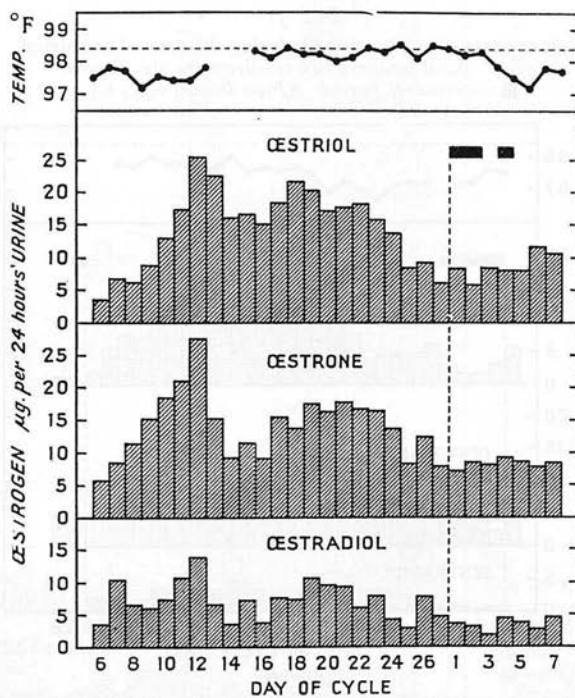


FIG. 36

Urinary excretion of oestrogens during the normal menstrual cycle. Basal temperature readings are also shown. ■ = menstrual period. (From Brown, 1955 b.)

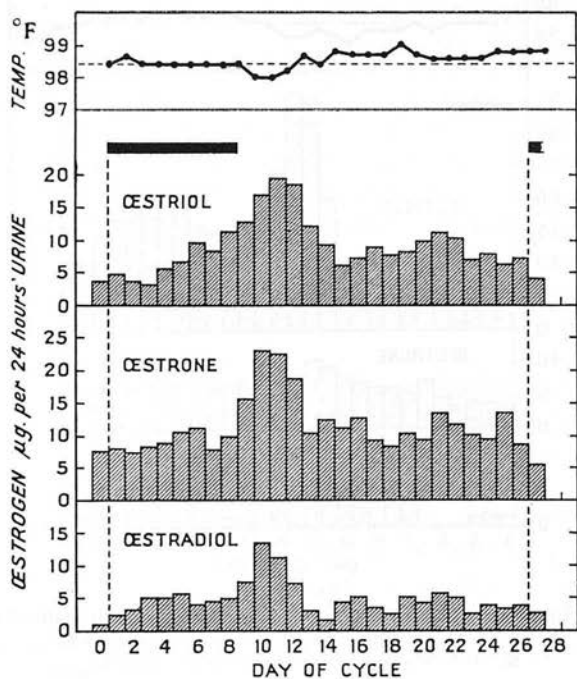


FIG. 37

Urinary excretion of oestrogens during the normal menstrual cycle. Basal temperature readings are also shown.

■ = menstrual period. (From Brown, 1955 b.)

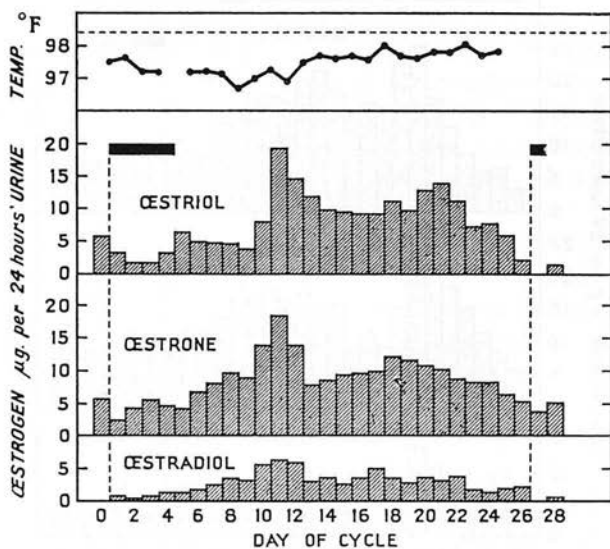


FIG. 38

Urinary excretion of oestrogens during the normal menstrual cycle. Basal temperature readings are also shown.

■ = menstrual period. (From Brown, 1955 b.)

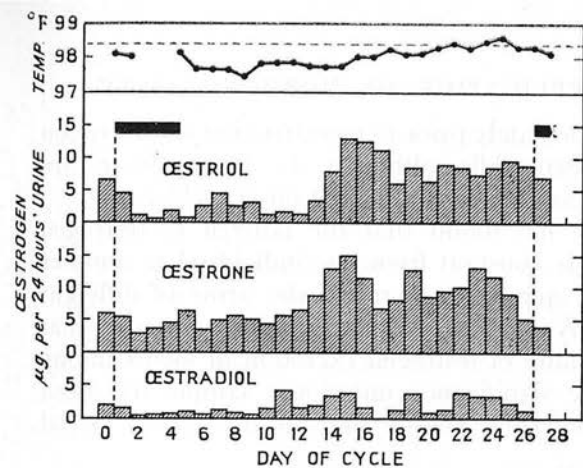


Fig. 39.—Urinary excretion of oestrogens during the normal menstrual cycle. Basal temperature readings are also shown. ■ = menstrual period. (From Brown, 1955 b.)

FIG. 39

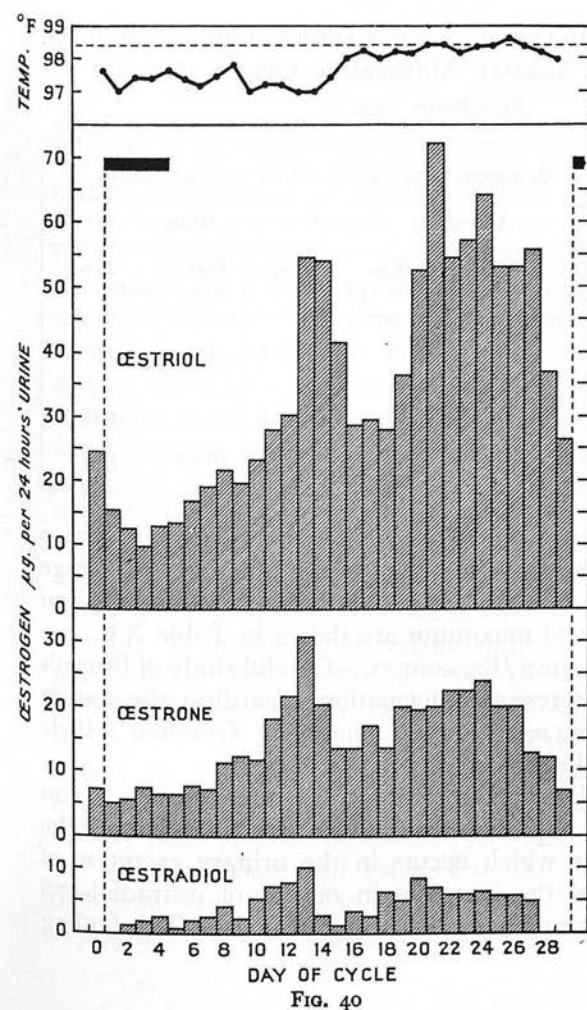


Fig. 40.—Urinary excretion of oestrogens during the normal menstrual cycle. Basal temperature readings are also shown. ■ = menstrual period. (From Brown, 1955 b.)

not apparent. Immediately prior to menstruation the excretion of all three oestrogens falls, although the lowest levels are frequently reached several days after the onset of bleeding.

Brown (1955 *b*) has found that the pattern of oestrogen excretion is relatively constant from one individual to another but that the actual quantities found in the urine of different subjects vary greatly. It can be stated with assurance that single random estimates of oestrogen excretion in menstruating women are of little significance unless the sample has been collected at an accurately known time of the cycle. Serial

TABLE XV

ŒSTROGEN LEVELS FOUND AT VARIOUS TIMES DURING
THE NORMAL MENSTRUAL CYCLE

(From Brown, 1955 *b*)

Time in Cycle.	Œstrogens excreted (μ g. per twenty-four hours).					
	Average.			Range.		
	Œst-riol.	Œst-rone.	Œst-radiol-17 β .	Œst-riol.	Œst-rone.	Œst-radiol-17 β .
Onset of menstruation	6	5	2	0-15	4-7	0-3
Ovulation peak	27	20	9	13-54	11-31	4-14
Luteal maximum	22	14	7	8-72	10-23	4-10

estimations would appear to be necessary in order to arrive at an adequate assessment of ovarian function. Average figures obtained at the onset of menstruation, at the ovulation peak and at the luteal maximum are shown in Table XV.

NATURE OF OVARIAN ŒSTROGENS.—Careful study of Brown's results provides interesting information regarding the nature of the oestrogens secreted by the maturing Graafian follicle and by the corpus luteum.

If either œstradiol-17 β or œstrone is administered to a man or to a post-menopausal or amenorrhœic woman, the subsequent increase which occurs in the urinary excretion of œstriol lags behind the increases in output of œstradiol-17 β and œstrone by approximately twenty-four hours. This finding

supports the view that the metabolic formation of oestriol from oestradiol-17 β or oestrone is a slower process than is the reversible oxidation-reduction reaction involving the two latter oestrogens.

Brown has shown that, at or about the time of ovulation, the rise in the excretion of oestriol lags behind the rise in excretion of oestrone and oestradiol-17 β by approximately twenty-four hours. This delay in oestriol excretion, together with the ratios of the three oestrogens found in the urine at this time, is compatible with the view that the maturing follicle secretes oestradiol-17 β and/or oestrone but not oestriol. Evidence regarding the nature of the oestrogens secreted by the ovary during the luteal phase of the cycle is at present conflicting. Brown (1955 *b*) originally noted that during the 'luteal maximum' the lag in oestriol excretion was not so marked as that found during the follicular phase and suggested that this observation was in keeping with the view that the corpus luteum secreted oestriol as well as oestradiol-17 β and oestrone. However, when the pattern of urinary oestrogen excretion during the normal menstrual cycle was compared with that obtained in normal individuals after the intramuscular injection of standard doses of oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol, no support was found for the contention that the corpus luteum secreted oestriol in addition to the other two oestrogens. It has already been mentioned (p. 171) that approximately 80 per cent. of injected oestriol is recovered in urine as oestriol while only about 10 per cent. of injected oestradiol-17 β or oestrone is so excreted. Accordingly, it appears reasonable to assume that any oestriol secreted by the ovary would have to be some eight times more active than either oestradiol-17 β or oestrone in raising the output of urinary oestriol. If quantities of oestriol sufficient to obscure the lag phenomenon were indeed secreted by the corpus luteum, it would be expected that, during the luteal phase of the cycle, the excretion of oestriol would be relatively much higher than during the follicular phase. Such a marked difference was not found in the ten cycles studied by Brown. The mean urinary ratio (oestriol/oestradiol-17 β + oestrone) was 0.94 : 1 in the follicular phase and 1.05 : 1 in the luteal phase. These figures are very similar to those obtained following the injection of oestradiol-17 β or oestrone and indicate that oestradiol-17 β

and/or oestrone are probably the principal ovarian oestrogens secreted during the luteal, as well as the follicular, phase of the normal menstrual cycle.

3. Normal Men.

Small but readily detectable quantities of oestrogens have been demonstrated in male urine by bio-assay techniques. The main source of production is probably the adrenal cortex, although the testis may also contribute. Brown (1955 *c*) has recently studied the oestrogen excretion in twenty-nine normal male subjects in the age range twenty to fifty. The mean total oestrogen excretion was $10.3 \mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours and the figures varied from 6 to $17.8 \mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours. Estimations were also made of the excretion of the individual oestrogens and the results were as follows:

- (a) Oestriol: Mean excretion, $3.5 \mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours; range, 0.8 to $11 \mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours.
- (b) Oestrone: Mean excretion, $5.4 \mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours; range, 3 to $8.2 \mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours.
- (c) Oestradiol- 17β : Mean excretion, $1.5 \mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours; range, zero to $6.3 \mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours.

4. Menopausal and Post-menopausal Women.

Oestrogenic activity has been demonstrated in the blood and the urine of menopausal and post-menopausal women by numerous investigators using one or other of the modifications of the Allen-Doisy test. The quantities present are much smaller than those found in women during reproductive life. Fluhmann and Murphy (1939) and others have shown that after the menopause the oestrogen excretion may occasionally be cyclic in character.

It is reasonable to assume that the main source of oestrogen production in menopausal and post-menopausal women is the adrenal cortex. Attempts have been made to relate the fall in oestrogen excretion to the development of menopausal symptoms such as flushings, but it is by no means definite that such a relationship does indeed exist. Oestrogen excretion in the menopausal syndrome is further discussed on page 191.

Recently Brown (1955 *c*) has estimated the urinary excretion of oestrogens in twenty post-menopausal subjects. The mean

figure for total œstrogen excretion was 6.4 μ g. per twenty-four hours and the levels ranged from 3.2 to 11.2 μ g. per twenty-four hours. Estimations were also made of the excretion of the individual œstrogens and the results were as follows:

- (a) Œstriol: Mean excretion, 3.3 μ g. per twenty-four hours; range, 0.6 to 8.6 μ g. per twenty-four hours.
- (b) Œstrone: Mean excretion, 2.5 μ g. per twenty-four hours; range, 0.8 to 7.1 μ g. per twenty-four hours.
- (c) Œstradiol-17 β : Mean excretion, 0.6 μ g. per twenty-four hours; range, zero to 3.9 μ g. per twenty-four hours.

5. Normal Pregnancy, Labour, Puerperium and Lactation.

The œstrogen excretion during normal pregnancy has been studied by many workers including Cohen *et al.* (1935), Stimmel (1946), Venning (1948), Bradshaw and Jessop (1953) and Brown (1956). The quantities of œstrogens present in pregnancy urine are relatively large, and it has been possible for some time to use chemical rather than biological methods for their determination. Œstrogens show an upward trend of excretion during pregnancy and the output reaches very high levels at the end of the gestation period. When individual cases are studied most investigators have found a wide fluctuation in levels from day to day and have also reported a considerable variation in excretion from one patient to another at comparable stages of pregnancy. After delivery, a rapid fall in output occurs, but neither Bradshaw and Jessop (1953) nor Brown (1956) were able to demonstrate any correlation between the œstrogen excretion on the one hand and the onset of labour on the other.

At full term the average amounts of the different œstrogens excreted per twenty-four hours are approximately as follows:

Œstradiol-17 β	0.75 mg.
Œstrone	2.0 mg.
16-epiœstriol	0.75 mg.
16 α -hydroxyœstrone	2.0 mg.
Œstriol	30.0 mg.

It will be seen that from the quantitative point of view œstriol is by far the most important of the œstrogens in pregnancy urine. It will also be noted that the newly discovered

œstrogen 16 α -hydroxyœstrone is a compound of considerable quantitative significance.

Recently Brown (1956) has made a careful study of the excretion of œstradiol-17 β , œstrone and œstriol in four normally pregnant women. His results, which are probably more

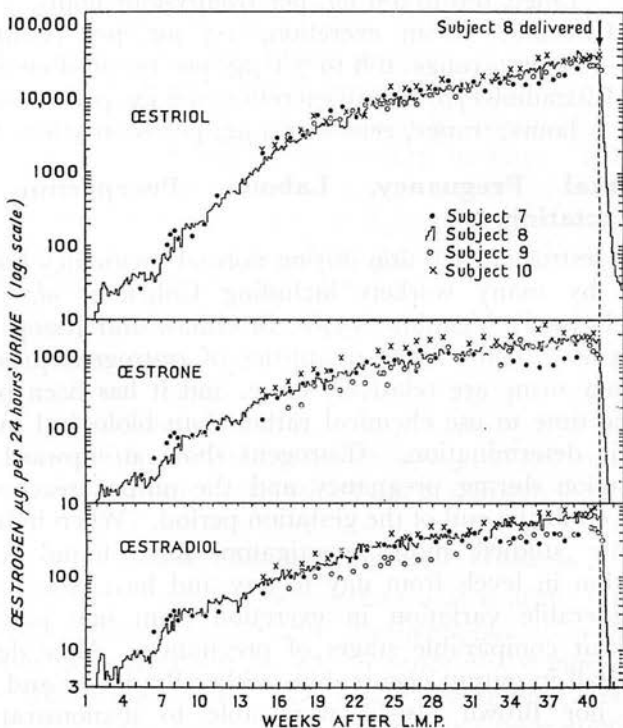


FIG. 41

Urinary excretion of œstrogens during normal pregnancy in four subjects. (From Brown, 1956.)

meaningful from the quantitative point of view than any previously obtained, are shown in Fig. 41.

This figure shows that there was a rapid rise in the urinary output of the three œstrogens throughout pregnancy and that the rate of increase was most marked between the sixth and the twentieth weeks. The increases in the levels of œstrone and of œstradiol-17 β from the 'luteal maximum' to the end of the gestation period were approximately one hundredfold; these rises paralleled each other, the excretion of œstradiol-17 β being

about one-third of that for œstrone. The increase in the urinary levels of œstriol was approximately one thousandfold during the same period.

One subject in Brown's series (subject 8) was particularly interesting as it was possible to study her œstrogen excretion over a period of time which included (a) a complete menstrual cycle, (b) a cycle in which pregnancy occurred, (c) pregnancy

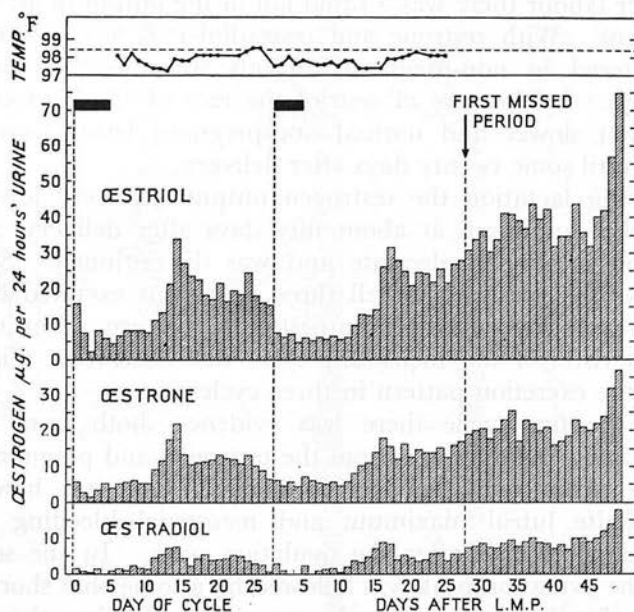


FIG. 42

Urinary excretion of œstrogens during a complete menstrual cycle and during a cycle in which pregnancy occurred. Basal temperature readings are also shown.

■ = menstrual period. (From Brown, 1956.)

itself, (d) labour and the puerperium, (e) the lactation period and (f) the period culminating in the re-establishment of normal menstruation. In Fig. 41 the values for this subject are represented as continuous lines.

Fig. 42 shows the complete menstrual cycle and the cycle in which pregnancy occurred.

It will be noted that the urinary œstrogen levels found in the two cycles were very similar up to and including the ovulation peaks. The subsequent luteal rises were also similar until about the twenty-fourth day of the cycle. After this

time the œstrogen levels continued to increase rapidly in the cycle in which conception had occurred, whereas in the previous cycle the usual luteal maximum was reached and the excretion fell prior to the onset of menstruation.

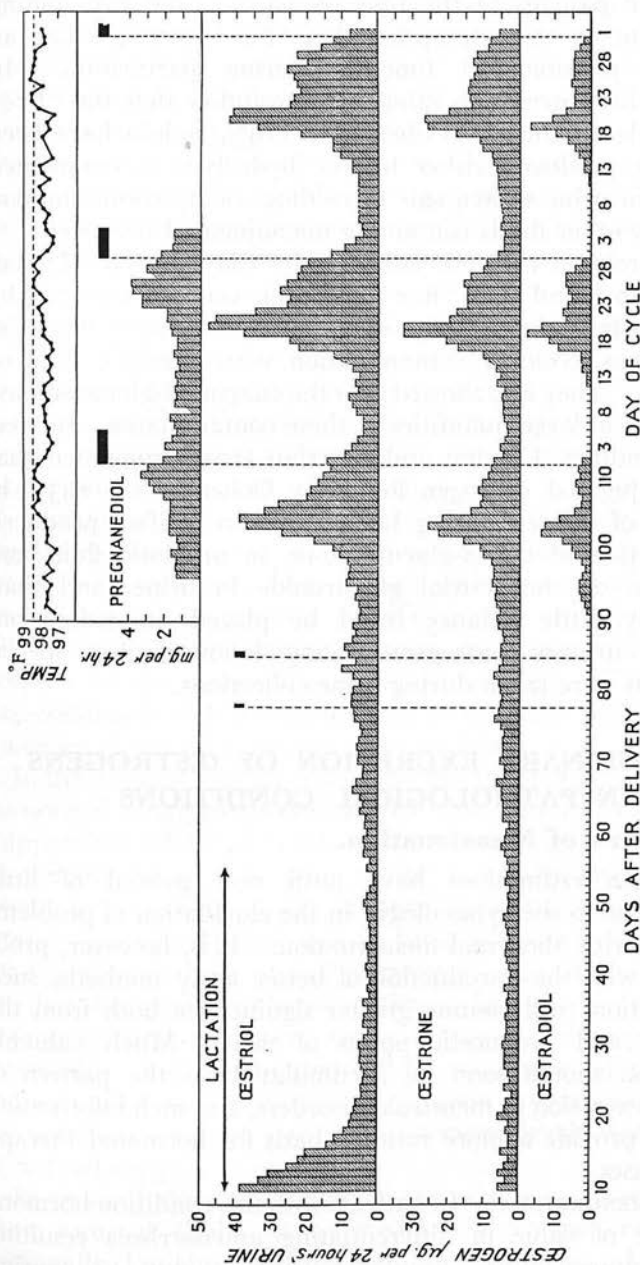
In Fig. 43 are presented the results obtained immediately after delivery, during lactation and in the period culminating in the recommencement of normal menstruation.

After labour there was a rapid fall in the output of all three œstrogens. With œstrone and œstradiol-17 β , levels normally encountered in non-pregnant subjects were reached within five days. In the case of œstriol the rate of elimination was somewhat slower and normal non-pregnant levels were not found until some twenty days after delivery.

During lactation the œstrogen output was very low and reached a minimum at about fifty days after delivery, when lactation became inadequate and was discontinued. Subsequently the quantities of all three œstrogens excreted began to increase slowly until eventually the pattern of excretion characteristic of the menstrual cycle was observed. Fig. 43 shows the excretion pattern in three cycles.

In the first cycle there was evidence, both from basal temperature readings and from the œstrogen and pregnanediol excretion, that ovulation had occurred. There was, however, no definite luteal maximum and menstrual bleeding commenced eight days after the ovulation peak. In the second cycle the ovulation peak was followed by a somewhat shortened luteal phase of approximately ten days. During the third menstrual cycle a normal luteal maximum was found and the œstrogen levels throughout were practically identical with those observed during the cycle studied before conception had occurred.

'FREE' AND 'COMBINED' ŒSTROGENS IN PREGNANCY URINE.—In 1935 Cohen, Marrian and Watson reported that, whereas practically all of the œstrogen in pregnancy urine is present in the conjugated form throughout the greater part of the gestation period, labour or 'false' labour is accompanied by the excretion of 'free' or unconjugated œstrogen. These workers drew the conclusion that the liberation of 'free' œstrogen from the relatively inactive conjugates might be a factor in the initiation of labour. Not all subsequent investigators, however, were able to detect 'free' œstrogens in the



Urinary excretion of oestrogens during the puerperium, lactation and three subsequent menstrual cycles. Basal temperature readings are also shown. ■ = menstrual period. (*From Brown, 1956.*)

urine of all patients at the time of delivery and this finding threw doubt on the assumption that 'free' oestrogen had an important physiological function during parturition. In addition, this observation raised the possibility that the 'free' oestrogen determined by Cohen *et al.* (1935) might have been an artifact produced either by the hydrolysis of conjugated oestrogen in urine subsequent to voiding, or by contamination of urine by other fluids containing unconjugated oestrogen.

This problem was reinvestigated by Clayton and Marrian (1950), who found that 'free' oestrogen was not excreted by women during labour if the urine collections were made by catheter thus avoiding contamination with amniotic fluid or blood clots. They also showed that the enzyme β -glucuronidase was present in large quantities in these contaminants. In view of these findings, Clayton and Marrian (1950) suggested that the unconjugated oestrogen found by Cohen *et al.* (1935) in the urine of women during labour was an artifact produced by the action of the β -glucuronidase in amniotic fluid and blood clots on the oestriol glucuronide in urine, and that, accordingly, little reliance could be placed on estimations of 'free' urinary oestrogens during labour unless special precautions were taken during urine collections.

THE URINARY EXCRETION OF OESTROGENS IN PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

1. Disorders of Menstruation.

Oestrogen estimations have until now proved of little clinical value to the gynaecologist in the elucidation of problems associated with abnormal menstruation. It is, however, probable that, with the introduction of better assay methods, such determinations will assume greater significance both from the diagnostic and prognostic points of view. Much valuable information should soon be accumulated on the pattern of oestrogen excretion in menstrual disorders, and such information may well provide a more rational basis for hormonal therapy in these cases.

(a) AMENORRHOEA.—In patients with this condition hormone assays are of value in differentiating amenorrhœa resulting from pituitary failure from amenorrhœa due to ovarian deficiency (see also Chap. II). In 'pituitary amenorrhœa'

the excretions of both œstrogens of pituitary gonadotrophins are below the normal range while in 'ovarian amenorrhœa' an abnormally low œstrogen output is usually associated with a greatly increased excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins. It is customary to divide amenorrhœa into two main types—*primary* and *secondary*. In true *primary amenorrhœa* menstruation has failed to occur in patients well beyond the age of puberty. The term *secondary amenorrhœa* is applied to the condition in which menstrual function has ceased after having been completely established. Both primary and secondary amenorrhœa can be associated with either pituitary or ovarian failure.

Hormone levels in cases of amenorrhœa have been estimated by various investigators, including Bécclère and Simmonet (1949) Käser (1949) and Pedersen-Bjergaard and Tønnesen (1951). The most extensive study yet reported is that of Pedersen-Bjergaard and Tønnesen (1951), who determined the urinary excretion of œstrogens and of pituitary gonadotrophins in 110 patients with primary amenorrhœa and 221 patients with secondary amenorrhœa. The method of œstrogen assay depended on vaginal cornification in oöphorectomised mice and the results were expressed in 'mouse units'; the precision of the assays was certainly not high. The figures were compared with those obtained by the same assay method in a series of normally menstruating women.

In the patients with *primary amenorrhœa* the œstrogen excretion was normal in approximately 20 per cent. and abnormally low in approximately 80 per cent. Increased excretion levels were not found. In 35 per cent. of the cases the low œstrogen output was associated with a normal or high excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins, and in these patients it is probable that the amenorrhœa was of primary ovarian origin and was not due to pituitary hypofunction. In 46 per cent. the excretion of both œstrogens and pituitary gonadotrophins was abnormally low, and presumably in these subjects the amenorrhœa was of pituitary rather than ovarian origin. In the remainder (19 per cent.) the hormone levels were within the normal range.

In cases of *secondary amenorrhœa* the œstrogen excretion was within normal limits in approximately 33 per cent. and abnormally low in approximately 66 per cent. In a few patients in this group serial œstrogen assays were conducted;

considerable variations in excretion, sometimes of a cyclic nature, were observed.

(b) **DYSFUNCTIONAL UTERINE HÆMORRHAGE.**—This is a loose term which is used to describe all forms of abnormal bleeding for which no gross organic cause can be found. Various classifications for dysfunctional uterine hæmorrhage have been proposed but none are completely satisfactory. The subdivision can be based on symptomatology, on the histological appearance of the endometrium or on the presence or absence of ovulation. In the present discussion consideration will be given mainly to the anovular types of dysfunctional uterine hæmorrhage.

The condition known as *metropathia hæmorrhagica* is a member of this group which is encountered relatively often in clinical practice. The characteristic symptom of this disease is continuous bleeding which is often profuse and may last for many weeks. The hæmorrhage is usually painless and may be preceded by a period of amenorrhœa. The condition may occur at any age but is more frequent just before the menopause or immediately after the menarché. The characteristic findings in the ovary are the presence of multiple follicles and the absence of any active luteal tissue. The endometrium in typical cases shows cystic hyperplasia without any evidence of secretory activity. The appearance is one of an exaggerated proliferative phase and it is generally assumed that the endometrial reaction results from prolonged and unopposed stimulation by œstrogenic hormones.

Various theories have been advanced to explain the bleeding in cases of *metropathia hæmorrhagica*. The preliminary amenorrhœic phase may result from the maintenance of a blood œstrogen level above the so-called 'bleeding threshold' and the subsequent bleeding may occur when the circulating œstrogens fall below this level. This view has not so far been confirmed by means of hormone assay. It is also possible that the continuing œstrogen secretion by the ovaries builds up the endometrium to a point at which larger and larger amounts of œstrogen are required to sustain it. If these are not produced the endometrium outgrows its œstrogen supply and breakdown occurs.

Little information is at present available on the œstrogen excretion in patients with *metropathia*. Furuhjelm (1948),

using bio-assay methods, found that the oestrogen output was abnormally high in all of fifteen cases studied and that during periods of bleeding the titre did not rise appreciably. Other workers, including Mayer (1950), have reported normal levels at most stages of the disease. In a series of 222 patients with various types of menstrual anomaly other than amenorrhœa, Pedersen-Bjergaard and Tønnesen (1951) reported that the oestrogen excretion was never increased, that it was reduced in approximately 20 per cent. of the cases and was normal in approximately 80 per cent. They concluded that abnormalities in oestrogen excretion were much less frequent in this group than in patients with amenorrhœa.

The condition of *anovular menstruation* may conveniently be considered at this stage. The term refers to cyclic uterine bleeding which occurs in the absence of ovulation and corpus luteum formation. There is still much controversy regarding the incidence of 'anovulatory' cycles and whether or not anovular bleeding can be considered as true menstruation. The condition is more frequent at the beginning and towards the end of reproductive life, but may occur at any time during the child-bearing period; indeed, it is probable that anovular cycles are much more frequent than was at one time supposed. In anovular menstruation bleeding occurs from a proliferative and not from a secretory endometrium. The most reliable method of arriving at a diagnosis is by endometrial biopsy, although the finding of a monophasic temperature chart is suggestive of the condition.

Brown (1957) has recently studied the urinary excretion of oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol in a small number of patients with anovular menstruation. In Fig. 44 are shown the results obtained in a patient aged nineteen who presented with a history of irregular menstrual bleeding and heavy menstrual loss. Assays were conducted over a period of time which included the phases of menstrual bleeding.

It will be seen that the pattern of oestrogen excretion was different to that observed during the normal menstrual cycle. There was no rhythmic fluctuation in oestrogen output and no ovulation peak could be demonstrated. There was no apparent correlation between the oestrogen excretion on the one hand and the episodes of bleeding on the other. Endometrial biopsies taken at intervals during the study gave an

appearance characteristic of the proliferative phase of the cycle, while urinary pregnanediol determinations were relatively low throughout and indicated the absence of a functional corpus luteum.

(c) DYSMENORRHOEA.—It is not known with certainty if oestrogens play any part in the aetiology of this condition. Large doses of natural and synthetic oestrogens, administered during the first half of the cycle, prevent ovulation and the succeeding period, being anovular, is painless. Hormone

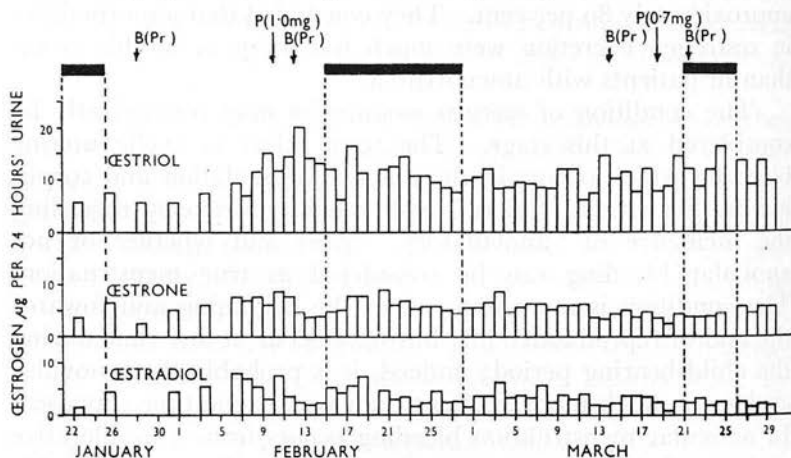


FIG. 44

Urinary excretion of oestrogens in a patient with anovular menstruation. ■ = episodes of bleeding; B(Pr) = Biopsy characteristic of proliferative phase; P = pregnanediol. ↓ indicates the time of the biopsies and of the pregnanediol determinations. (From Brown, 1957.)

assays by reliable methods in patients with dysmenorrhoea will be awaited with interest.

(d) PRE-MENSTRUAL TENSION.—This condition is generally regarded as an exaggeration of the normal menstrual molimina. The patient is conscious of nervous tension and may show depression, insomnia and marked emotional instability. Symptoms usually develop during the seven to ten days prior to menstruation. Little is known of the aetiology of the condition, but the suggestion has been made that the clinical features result from the presence in the blood of abnormally large quantities of oestrogens. At the time of writing no reliable information is available on the oestrogen excretion in patients with this syndrome.

2. The Menopausal Syndrome.

The symptoms which arise at the menopause are generally believed to result primarily from a decline and eventual failure of ovarian function. Various theories have been advanced regarding the relationship of hormones to menopausal symptoms and the evidence for and against these hypotheses has been reviewed by numerous workers including Fluhmann (1944), Heller *et al.* (1944) and others. One of the theories postulates that the symptoms are caused directly by the over-production of pituitary gonadotrophins; this view has already been considered in Chapter II. The theory of 'œstrogen lack,' which will be briefly mentioned below, postulates that the menopausal syndrome results from a decrease in the œstrogen titre of body fluids.

The main points in favour of the view that a diminution in circulating œstrogens can cause menopausal symptoms are, first, that the latter can occur when evidence of ovarian failure is present, and secondly, that such symptoms are usually rapidly relieved by œstrogen therapy. However, as emphasised by Fluhmann (1944), there are serious objections to accepting œstrogen withdrawal as the sole cause of menopausal symptoms. In the first place, when assays of urinary œstrogens have been performed in menopausal patients, no correlation has been found between the œstrogen excretion on the one hand and the presence or severity of symptoms on the other. Secondly, menopausal symptoms may appear some time before menstruation ceases, and in such individuals it is reasonable to suppose that the titre of circulating œstrogens would not be abnormally low. Finally, in patients with panhypopituitarism in whom the urinary excretion of œstrogens is generally very low, menopausal symptoms such as flushings are seldom if ever encountered.

It is obvious that considerable controversy still exists regarding the part played by the œstrogens in the ætiology of menopausal symptoms. The problem remains one for future elucidation.

3. Ovarian Tumours.

The *œstrogenic tumours of the ovary* are composed of cells of the granulosa or thecal type or of a mixture of these. Most, but by no means all, of these neoplasms exhibit œstrogenic activity. The most important members of the group are the

granulosa cell tumour and the *thecoma*, but probably the *fibroma* and the *Brenner tumour* should also be included in this category. The whole subject of functioning ovarian tumours has recently been reviewed by Matthew *et al.* (1956) on whose article the following discussion is mainly based.

The *clinical features* of oestrogenic tumours are very variable and depend on three main factors. These are:

(a) The presence of an ovarian tumour. The symptomatology is influenced by such variables as the size of the tumour, its degree of malignancy and the presence or absence of such local complications as torsion of the pedicle, hæmorrhage and rupture.

(b) The hormonal activity of the tumour. This subject will be discussed further below.

(c) The presence of associated pathological lesions which may or may not be directly attributable to the functioning nature of the tumour. In this group are included such conditions as endometriosis, uterine fibroids, carcinoma of the breast and carcinoma of the endometrium. It has been suggested that these lesions might arise as a result of prolonged and excessive secretion of oestrogens by the ovarian neoplasm.

THE HORMONAL ACTIVITY OF OESTROGENIC TUMOURS.—At present little is known regarding the site of origin of tumour oestrogens, but it is probable that both the granulosa cells and the thecal cells are capable of elaborating these substances. One of the principal sites of action of oestrogenic hormones is the uterine endometrium, and in most but not all patients with functioning ovarian tumours endometrial proliferation occurs. It is reasonable to suppose that, in a given case, the endometrial reaction is governed by such factors as the nature and physiological activity of the tumour oestrogens, the duration of oestrogenic action and the inherent reactivity and sensitivity of the endometrium itself to hormonal stimulation.

At the time of writing little or no reliable information is available in the literature on the excretion of oestrogens in patients with *granulosa cell tumour*. Studies in individual cases have been reported by various workers including Glass and McKennon (1937) and Stohr (1942), but in all instances biological methods of assay were employed. In many patients, but not in all, abnormally high oestrogen concentrations were found in both blood and urine. Removal of the tumour resulted in a sharp fall in oestrogen excretion, while recurrence

of the lesion in the contralateral ovary was indicated by a rise in output. In cases of isosexual precocity in girls œstrogen assays may be of value in differentiating the rare granulosa cell tumour from the much more frequent constitutional precocious puberty. In the latter condition the œstrogen excretion is generally within normal limits. The subject of œstrogen excretion in patients with granulosa cell tumour has recently been reviewed by Bishop (1954).

In the majority of cases of *thecoma* reported in the literature, œstrogen assays have not been performed. No data is at present available regarding the œstrogen excretion in patients with *fibroma* or with the *Brenner tumour*.

Chorionepithelioma of the ovary is exceedingly rare and is not generally included in the group of functioning ovarian tumours. A case of this tumour was reported by Seckel (1946), and in this patient an abnormally high excretion of urinary œstrogens was found.

4. Fibromyoma of the Uterus.

Lipschutz (1950) has shown that long-continued administration of œstrogens to guinea-pigs causes the development of fibromyomatous growths of the uterus and other abdominal organs. It is, however, doubtful if œstrogenic stimulation is a factor in the production of uterine fibroids in women and the aetiology of the condition remains obscure.

At the time of writing, hormone assays by reliable methods have not been conducted in patients with fibromyomata. Such studies will be awaited with interest.

5. Genital Carcinoma in Women.

There has been much controversy as to whether the œstrogenic hormones are responsible for the development of uterine cancer in man and animals. Evidence from animal experiments is conflicting and varies greatly with the species studied. In monkeys, continuous œstrogen administration for many months may cause squamous metaplasia of the cervical epithelium, but the lesions seldom if ever become malignant (Hisaw and Lendrum, 1936). In rabbits, carcinoma of the uterus has occasionally been reported following prolonged œstrogen therapy. Gardner and his colleagues (Gardner, 1937; Gardner *et al.*, 1953) have shown that, in mice, marked

proliferation of the vaginal and uterine epithelium may follow the administration of oestrogens; in some strains of mice carcinoma of the cervix may develop when the animals are so treated for one year or more.

Much has been written on the possible relationship of oestrogens to genital cancer in women. With regard to *carcinoma of the body of the uterus* it has been shown that this condition is more frequent in patients who experience a late menopause and who are presumably exposed to oestrogenic stimulation for an abnormally long period of their life. Furthermore, some authors have reported that the incidence of endometrial carcinoma is unusually high in patients with oestrogenic tumours of the ovary and have concluded from this observation that the tumour oestrogens are actively carcinogenic. Other workers, however, hold the view that the evidence at present does not warrant such a definite conclusion. It is a matter of common clinical experience that the incidence of *carcinoma of the cervix* is considerably higher in multiparous women than in nullipara or in primipara. The suggestion has been made that the multiparous patient is more susceptible to this form of cancer as a result of exposure during each of her pregnancies to abnormally high concentrations of circulating oestrogens.

Until now oestrogen assays by reliable methods have not been conducted in cases of genital carcinoma. Such studies are urgently required, and it is to be hoped that they will yield information which will be of importance in relation to the ætiology, prognosis and treatment of patients with this disease.

6. Mammary Carcinoma.

Oestrogens are potent stimulators of cellular growth and division in the breast. In certain strains of female mice prolonged administration of oestrogens causes hyperplasia and metaplasia of the mammary cells, culminating eventually in mammary carcinoma; in male mice of the same susceptible strain oestrogens will also induce cancer of the breast (Lacassagne, 1932; Burns and Schenken, 1940; Shimkin and Wyman, 1946). It is generally believed that, in the ætiology of breast cancer in mice, both oestrogenic stimulation and heredity play a part. Rats are much less susceptible to spontaneous mammary cancer but can develop the condition

after prolonged treatment with oestrogens (Geschickter, 1945). On the other hand, guinea-pigs and monkeys seldom, if ever, show mammary carcinoma as a result of treatment with exogenous oestrogens.

There has been much speculation on the possible relationship of endogenous oestrogen secretion to mammary carcinoma in women. Breast carcinoma is much more frequent in patients who experience a late menopause than in those in whom the menopause occurs between the ages of forty and fifty. Carcinoma of the breast occurring during pregnancy tends to be rapidly progressive, and this has been attributed to the high levels of circulating oestrogens which are found in pregnant subjects. Some patients with mammary carcinoma improve markedly following oophorectomy or ovarian irradiation, and it is widely believed that this improvement results from a reduction in the amount of oestrogens present in body fluids. On the other hand, there is very little evidence that exogenously administered oestrogens are carcinogenic in human subjects. Great numbers of patients are treated with oestrogens each year, but the number of cases of mammary carcinoma reported in the literature following prolonged oestrogen therapy is very small indeed. In view of this finding it appears unlikely that the administration of exogenous oestrogens *per se* is an important aetiological factor in cancer of the human breast.

The assay of urinary oestrogens in cases of mammary carcinoma might prove of value for a number of reasons. In the first place it would be of importance to determine the pattern of endogenous oestrogen excretion in these patients and to ascertain whether or not this differs in any way from that of control subjects in a comparable age group.

Secondly, oestrogen assays might yield important information with regard to the form of therapy which should be employed in a given case. For example, it would seem unlikely that patients in whom the endogenous oestrogen levels were abnormally high would benefit from treatment with exogenous oestrogens but, on the other hand, such cases might well be improved by procedures such as oophorectomy, ovarian irradiation or adrenalectomy which are designed to reduce the amounts of physiologically active oestrogens in the body. Finally, it would be of considerable interest to study the metabolism of exogenously administered oestrogens in patients

with mammary carcinoma and to determine whether this differs in any way from that in normal individuals.

At the time of writing, a number of centres in the United Kingdom and elsewhere are conducting urinary oestrogen assays in cases of breast cancer, using the newer and more reliable chemical methods of determination which have recently been developed. At this juncture it would be premature to make any definite statement with respect to the diagnostic and prognostic value of such assays, although some of the preliminary results obtained may be briefly considered.

Strong *et al.* (1956) studied the excretion of oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol in thirteen patients who had previously undergone bilateral adrenalectomy and bilateral oophorectomy for mammary carcinoma. The patients were classified into two clinical groups, depending on their response to operation. It was found that the pattern of urinary oestrogen excretion in patients who responded favourably to the operations did not differ from that in patients who showed no improvement after removal of both adrenals and ovaries. Bulbrook and Greenwood (1957 *a, b*), using Brown's method, investigated the effect of bilateral oophorectomy, bilateral adrenalectomy and hypophysectomy on the urinary excretion of oestrogens in patients with mammary cancer. They showed that oestrogen excretion usually continued after oophorectomy and that, in a proportion of cases, it was not completely abolished by a subsequent adrenalectomy. Persistence of oestrogen production, as judged by the findings on urinary assay, was also demonstrated in post-menopausal and oophorectomised patients subjected to hypophysectomy.

7. Endometriosis.

This condition may be defined as the presence of endometrial elements in an abnormal situation. The symptomatology is largely due to the action of ovarian hormones upon the ectopic endometrium. The suggestion has been made that the cell metaplasia characteristic of endometriosis is initiated by oestrogenic stimulation during the active child-bearing period of a woman's life. Some support for this view comes from the observation that the condition is not uncommon in patients with functioning ovarian tumours. Oestrogen assays by reliable methods have not yet been reported in cases of endometriosis;

it is possible that such estimations might yield interesting information regarding the ætiology of the disease.

8. 'Senile' Vaginitis.

This is a low-grade chronic pyogenic infection occurring in post-menopausal subjects. The condition generally improves rapidly on œstrogen therapy, and this has prompted the suggestion that œstrogen lack is a factor in its pathogenesis. The validity of this theory should be tested by means of hormone assay.

9. Abnormal Pregnancy.

(a) PRE-ECLAMPTIC TOXÆMIA.—In the majority of cases the excretion of œstrogens is below the normal range (Smith and Smith, 1934, 1948; Browne *et al.*, 1938). Normal values and high values are encountered infrequently. Smith and Smith (1948) have emphasised that the curve of excretion in individual patients is more informative than the actual level at any one time during pregnancy. There appears to be no definite correlation between the low œstrogen level on the one hand and any specific clinical feature such as œdema, hypertension or albuminuria on the other. Rakoff (1939) has reported that the œstrogen levels in blood and urine tend to rise as the clinical condition of the patient improves. The decreased excretion of œstrogens in pre-eclamptic toxæmia may result from a number of causes, of which diminished production of the hormone by the placenta would appear to be the most important.

It will be remembered that a low serum œstrogen was one of the abnormalities noted by Smith and Smith in cases of pre-eclamptic toxæmia. This finding was one of the factors which prompted a therapeutic trial with œstrogens and progesterone in patients with this disease. The Smith theories in relation to the ætiology and treatment of pre-eclamptic toxæmia are not now generally accepted and will not be further discussed.

(b) DIABETIC PREGNANCY.—Few œstrogen assays have so far been performed in pregnant diabetics. In cases uncomplicated by pre-eclamptic toxæmia the excretion has usually been within the normal range (Rubin *et al.*, 1946), but in patients showing both diabetes and toxæmia abnormally low titres for the stage of pregnancy have been reported.

(c) **HYDATIDIFORM MOLE AND CHORIONEPITHELIOMA.**—Information regarding the oestrogen excretion in patients with these diseases is at present very scanty. Studies have been reported by a small number of investigators, including Smith and Werthessen (1941), Payne (1941) and Hinglais and Hinglais (1949). In all cases bio-assay methods were used. Levels have been reported as normal, abnormally high or unusually low. It is obvious that further work is necessary before any definite statement can be made on the diagnostic value of oestrogen assays in such patients.

(d) **THREATENED AND RECURRENT ABORTION.**—Smith and Smith (1935) found normal levels in all cases studied while Browne *et al.* (1939) obtained abnormally low values in patients who subsequently aborted. Käser and Eichenberger (1949) and Mayer (1950) reported that the oestrogen excretion decreased rapidly in cases of inevitable abortion or foetal death. A similar conclusion was reached by Jayle and Plantureux (1953).

The problem of oestrogen excretion in threatened and recurrent abortion should be reinvestigated now that more reliable assay methods are available. It is not unlikely that such a study would yield information of clinical importance.

10. Testicular Tumours.

Information on the pattern of oestrogen excretion in patients with testicular tumours is extremely scanty. Hamburger (1938) has reported that the oestrogen output in cases of *seminoma* is generally within normal limits, while patients with *chorion-epithelioma* of the testis may excrete abnormally large amounts. The very rare *Leydig cell tumours* are usually masculinising in character but may occasionally be associated with feminising symptoms such as gynæcomastia. The oestrogen excretion in such patients has not yet been adequately studied nor have determinations been reported in the even more uncommon *Sertoli cell tumours* of the testis.

11. Adrenocortical Tumours and Adrenocortical Hyperplasia.

The great majority of adrenocortical tumours produce masculinising effects, but approximately twenty cases have been reported in the literature in which the clinical picture

was one of feminisation. Estrogen determinations have been undertaken in a small number of patients with this type of feminising tumour (Simpson and Joll, 1938; Luft and Sjögren, 1949; Diczfalusy and Luft, 1952; Dohan *et al.*, 1953). In all the cases reported, the urinary excretion was found to be abnormally high.

Probably the most detailed study so far reported on the oestrogen excretion in a case of feminising adrenocortical tumour is that of Diczfalusy and Luft (1952). These workers purified their extracts by countercurrent distribution and subsequently estimated the individual oestrogens by fluorimetry. The urine extracts were shown to contain oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol in abnormally large amounts.

Migeon and Gardner (1952) have estimated the excretion of urinary oestrogens in cases both of adrenocortical tumour and of adrenocortical hyperplasia. Two methods of assay were used. One was a chemical procedure, slightly modified from that of Jailer (1948), in which the final determination was made by fluorimetry; the other was a bio-assay method depending on the enlargement of the uterus in intact immature mice. It was claimed that urinary oestrogen determinations, conducted before and after cortisone therapy, might be of value in differentiating between the two diseases. This claim was based on the observation that, in patients with adrenocortical hyperplasia, cortisone reduced the output of urinary oestrogens to normal levels, whereas in cases of adrenocortical tumour, therapy by cortisone did not appreciably alter the excretion of these hormones.

It should be emphasised that the assay methods used by Migeon and Gardner (1952) in their study are not very satisfactory from the quantitative point of view. Their work should be repeated with the more reliable assay methods for oestrogens now available.

12. Prostatic Carcinoma.

May and Stimmel (1948, 1955) have claimed that the metabolism of administered oestrogens differs in patients with prostatic carcinoma from that in normal men. These workers administered oestrone parenterally to both types of case and showed that, whereas the major oestrogen excreted in the urine of normal subjects was oestrone itself, the principal steroid

found in the urine of patients with prostatic carcinoma was α striol. The characteristic 'cancer pattern' was not altered by subsequent orchidectomy and was not found in patients with other forms of malignant disease.

The observations of May and Stimmel may well be of considerable interest in relation to the *ætiology* of prostatic cancer in man. Further studies along similar lines would be desirable.

13. Liver Disease.

Many observations both in animals and in humans support the view that the liver plays an important role in the metabolism of α estrogens. For example, it is well known that α estrogens when incubated with liver slices *in vitro* rapidly lose much of their biological activity. Furthermore, it is widely believed that, in patients with liver disease, certain clinical features such as gynecomastia, testicular atrophy, spider *nævi* and palmar erythema result from the presence in the circulation of abnormally large quantities of α estrogenic hormones.

Little information is available in the literature regarding the urinary excretion of endogenous α estrogens in patients with portal cirrhosis. The most careful investigation is that recently conducted by Cameron (1957). This worker, using Brown's method, estimated the urinary output of α estradiol-17 β , α estrone and α striol in twelve patients with chronic liver damage. In the majority of cases the readings obtained were within the normal range, and in only a few individuals were the levels abnormally high.

A number of studies have been made of the metabolic fate of injected α estrogens in patients with hepatic cirrhosis. The subject has recently been reviewed by May and Stimmel (1955). Earlier work in which biological methods of assay were employed indicated that when α estradiol-17 β and α estrone were administered to cirrhotics as much as 80 per cent. of the injected dose was subsequently recovered in the urine. These results were in keeping with the view that, in the presence of liver damage, α estrogen inactivation and degradation were considerably impaired. However, later work with more reliable chemical methods of estimation has not borne out this conclusion, and it has been shown that the total amount of injected α estrogen recovered from the urine of cirrhotic patients

is frequently no higher than that found when similar metabolic experiments are conducted in subjects with normal liver function. In the opinion of May and Stimmel (1955) impairment of oestrogen metabolism in cases of portal cirrhosis is indicative of a very poor prognosis, as this abnormality is not usually found unless the patient is in an almost moribund condition.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Oestrogen assays in human urine should now be conducted by chemical rather than by biological methods. Chemical methods depending on colorimetry are at present more reliable than fluorimetric techniques. Satisfactory methods are not yet available for the quantitative determination of oestrogens in blood.

For the estimation of urinary oestrogens in clinical conditions the methods described by Brown (1955 *a*) and by Bauld (1956) are recommended. These techniques measure with reasonable accuracy the three oestrogens, oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol, but do not determine the more newly discovered urinary oestrogens, 16-*epi*oestriol and 16 α -hydroxyoestrone.

Urinary oestrogen estimations can provide useful information regarding the secretion of endogenous oestrogens by the body.

Reliable figures are now available for the excretion of oestradiol-17 β , oestrone and oestriol during the normal menstrual cycle. Readings are low in the early proliferative phase and just prior to the onset of menstruation. Peaks of excretion occur at or about the time of ovulation and during the luteal phase. In normal pregnancy relatively large quantities of oestrogens are excreted; the levels gradually increase throughout pregnancy and fall rapidly after delivery. Readings remain low during the puerperium and in the lactation period. The oestrogen excretion in men, in post-menopausal women and in children is relatively low and is probably mainly of adrenal origin.

Urinary assays of oestrogens may sometimes be helpful in the investigation of menstrual abnormalities, in the diagnosis of functioning ovarian tumours and in the study of various abnormalities during pregnancy. It is possible that, in the

future, oestrogen estimations, conducted by improved methods, will be of diagnostic value in such conditions as genital carcinoma, mammary carcinoma, prostatic carcinoma and adrenocortical tumours.

REFERENCES

- AITKEN, E. H. & PREEDY, J. R. K. (1956). *Biochem. J.* **62**, 15P.
 ALBRIEUX, A. S. (1941). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **1**, 889.
 ALLEN, E. & DOISY, E. A. (1923). *J. Amer. med. Ass.* **81**, 819.
 ALLEN, W. M. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 71.
 ASTWOOD, E. B. (1938). *Endocrinology*, **23**, 25.
 BAULD, W. S. (1954). *Biochem. J.* **56**, 426.
 BAULD, W. S. (1956). *Biochem. J.* **63**, 488.
 BEALL, D. (1939). *Nature, Lond.* **144**, 76.
 BEALL, D. (1940). *Biochem. J.* **34**, 1293.
 BÉCLÈRE, C. & SIMMONET, H. (1949). *Trans. XIIth Brit. Congr. Obstet. Gynec.* p. 125. Eds., A. W. Bourne and W. C. W. Nixon. London: Austral Press.
 BEER, C. T. & GALLAGHER, T. F. (1955). *J. biol. Chem.* **214**, 351.
 BERTHRONG, M., GOODWIN, W. E. & SCOTT, W. W. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 579.
 BISHOP, P. M. F. (1954). *Recent Advances in Endocrinology*, 7th ed., chap. vii. London: Churchill.
 BRADSHAW, T. E. T. & JESSOP, W. J. E. (1953). *J. Endocrin.*, **9**, 427.
 BRAUNSBURG, H., STERN, M. I. & SWYER, G. I. M. (1955). *Mem. Soc. Endocrin.* **3**, 41.
 British Empire Cancer Campaign (1956). *Report of Conference on Oestrogen Methodology*. Ed., G. F. Marrian. In press.
 BROWN, J. B. (1952). *J. Endocrin.* **8**, 196.
 BROWN, J. B. (1955 a). *Biochem. J.* **60**, 185.
 BROWN, J. B. (1955 b). *Lancet*, **1**, 320.
 BROWN, J. B. (1955 c). *Mem. Soc. Endocrin.* **3**, 1.
 BROWN, J. B. (1956). *Lancet*, **1**, 704.
 BROWN, J. B. (1957). Personal Communication.
 BROWNE, J. S. L. Cited by J. B. Collip in *Proc. Calif. Acad. Med.*, 1931, **1**, 38.
 BROWNE, J. S. L., HENRY, J. S. & VENNING, E. H. (1938). *J. clin. Invest.* **17**, 503.
 BROWNE, J. S. L., HENRY, J. S. & VENNING, E. H. (1939). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **38**, 927.
 BÜLBRING, E. & BURN, J. H. (1935). *J. Physiol.* **85**, 320.
 BULBROOK, R. D. & GREENWOOD, F. C. (1957 a). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* suppl. 31, p. 324.
 BULBROOK, R. D. & GREENWOOD, F. C. (1957 b). *Brit. med. J.* **1**, 662.
 BULBROOK, R. D., GREENWOOD, F. C. & WILLIAMS, P. C. (1957). *J. Endocrin.* **15**, 206.
 BURNS, E. L. & SCHENKEN, J. R. (1940). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **43**, 608.
 CAMERON, C. B. (1957). *J. Endocrin.* **15**, 199.
 CLAYTON, B. E. & MARRIAN, G. F. (1950). *J. Endocrin.* **6**, 332.
 COHEN, S. L., MARRIAN, G. F. & WATSON, M. (1935). *Lancet*, **1**, 674.
 DAO, T. L.-Y. (1953). *Science*, **118**, 21.
 DICZFALUSY, E. (1953). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **12**, Suppl. 12.
 DICZFALUSY, E. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **15**, 317.
 DICZFALUSY, E. (1955). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **20**, 216.
 DICZFALUSY, E. & LINDKVIST, P. (1956). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **22**, 203.
 DICZFALUSY, E. & LUFT, R. (1952). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **9**, 327.
 DICZFALUSY, E. & WESTMAN, A. (1956). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **21**, 321.
 DINGEMANSE, E., LAQUEUR, E. & MÜHLBOCK, O. (1938). *Nature, Lond.* **141**, 927.
 DOHAN, F. C., ROSE, E., EIMAN, J. W., RICHARDSON, E. M. & ZINTEL, H. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 415.
 DOISY, E. A., VELER, C. D. & THAYER, S. A. (1929). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **90**, 329.

- DORFMAN, R. I. & DORFMAN, A. S. (1948). *Endocrinology*, **42**, 85.
- DORFMAN, R. I., GRUELICH, W. W. & SOLOMON, C. I. (1937). *Endocrinology*, **21**, 741.
- EMMENS, C. W. (1939). *Spec. Rep. Ser. med. Res. Coun., Lond.* No. 234.
- EMMENS, C. W. (1947). *J. Endocrin.* **5**, Proc. xxv.
- ENGEL, L. L., SLAUNWHITE, W. R., JR., CARTER, P. & NATHANSON, I. T. (1950). *J. biol. Chem.* **185**, 255.
- EVANS, J. S., HINES, L., VARNEY, R. & KOCH, F. C. (1940). *Endocrinology*, **26**, 1005.
- FELLNER, O. O. (1912). *Zbl. allg. Path. path. Anat.* **23**, 673.
- FLUHMAN, C. F. (1944). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **4**, 586.
- FLUHMAN, C. F. & MURPHY, K. M. (1939). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **38**, 778.
- FURUHJELM, M. (1948). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **1**, 189.
- GARDNER, W. U. (1937). Some Fundamental Aspects of the Cancer Problem. *Amer. Ass. Advanc. Sci.* **4**, 67.
- GARDNER, W. U., PFEIFFER, C. A., TRENTIN, J. J. & WOLSTENHOLME, J. T. (1953). In *Physiopathology of Cancer*, p. 225. Eds., F. Homburger and W. H. Fishman. New York: Hoeber.
- GESCHICKTER, C. F. (1945). *Diseases of the Breast*, 2nd ed., p. 836. Philadelphia: Lippincott.
- GLASS, S. J. & MCKENNON, B. J. (1937). *West. J. Surg.*, **45**, 467.
- GOLDZIEHER, J. W. & ROBERTS, I. S. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **12**, 143.
- GUSTAVSON, R. G., MASON, L. W., HAYS, E. E., WOOD, T. R. & D'AMOUR, F. E. (1938). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **35**, 115.
- HAMBURGER, C. (1938). In *Les Hormones Sexuelles*, p. 345. Ed., L. Brouha. Paris: Hermann.
- HELLER, C. G., CHANDLER, R. E. & MYERS, G. B. (1944). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **4**, 109.
- HINGLAIS, H. & HINGLAIS, M. (1949). *C.R. Soc. Biol.* **143**, 321.
- HISAW, F. L. & LENDRUM, F. C. (1936). *Endocrinology*, **20**, 228.
- HOWARD, R. P., SNIFFEN, R. C., SIMMONS, F. A. & ALBRIGHT, F. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrinol.* **10**, 121.
- HUFFMAN, M. N. & GROLLMAN, A. (1947). *Endocrinology*, **41**, 12.
- HUFFMAN, M. N., MACCORQUODALE, D. W., THAYER, S. A., DOISY, E. A., SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1940 a). *J. biol. Chem.* **134**, 591.
- HUFFMAN, M. N., THAYER, S. A. & DOISY, E. A. (1940 b). *J. biol. Chem.* **133**, 567.
- HUGGINS, C. & MOULDER, P. V. (1945). *Cancer Res.* **5**, 510.
- JAILER, J. W. (1948). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **8**, 564.
- JAYLE, M. F. & CRÉPY, O. (1952). *Pr. méd.* **60**, 659.
- JAYLE, M. F. & PLANTUREUX, C. (1953). *Bull. Fed. Soc. Gynéc. Obstét.* **5**, 551.
- KÄSER, O. (1949). *Gynaecologia*, **128**, 2.
- KÄSER, O. & EICHENBERGER, E. (1949). *Gynaecologia*, **127**, 114.
- KRICHESKY, B. & GLASS, S. J. (1947). *Endocrinology*, **41**, 196.
- KOBER, S. (1931). *Biochem. Z.* **239**, 209.
- LACASSAGNE, A. (1932). *C.R. Acad. Sci.* **195**, 630.
- LAUSON, H. D., HELLER, C. G., GOLDEN, J. B. & SEVERINGHAUS, E. L. (1939). *Endocrinology*, **24**, 35.
- LEVIN, L. (1945). *J. biol. Chem.* **158**, 725.
- LIPSCHUTZ, A. (1950). *Steroid Hormones and Tumours*, p. 309. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins.
- LITTRELL, J. L., TOM, J. & HARTMANN, C. G. (1946). *Fed. Proc.* **5**, 65.
- LORRAINE, J. A., MARRIAN, G. F. & MACKAY, M. A. (1957). Unpublished observations.
- LUFT, R. & SJÖGREN, B. (1949). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **3**, 342.
- MACCORQUODALE, D. W., THAYER, S. A. & DOISY, E. A. (1935). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **32**, 1182.
- MACCORQUODALE, D. W., THAYER, S. A. & DOISY, E. A. (1936). *J. biol. Chem.* **115**, 435.
- MARRIAN, G. F. (1930). *Biochem. J.* **24**, 435.
- MARRIAN, G. F. (1948). *J. Endocrin.* **5**, Proc. lxxi.
- MARRIAN, G. F. (1955). *Mem. Soc. Endocrin.* **3**, 48.
- MARRIAN, G. F. & BAULD, W. S. (1955). *Biochem. J.* **59**, 136.
- MARRIAN, G. F., LOKE, K. H., WATSON, E. J. D. & PANATTONI, T. (1957). *Biochem. J.* **66**, 60.
- MARRIAN, G. F. & PARKES, A. S. (1929). *J. Physiol.* **67**, 389.

- MATTHEW, G. D., KELLAR, R. J. & SALVATORE, C. (1956). Communication read to Edinburgh Obstetrical Society, 11th January.
- MAY, J. A. & STIMMEL, B. F. (1948). *J. Urol.* **59**, 396.
- MAY, J. A. & STIMMEL, B. F. (1955). *Calif. Med.* **82**, 171.
- MAYER, C. (1950). *Bull. Acad. méd. Belg.* **15**, 132.
- MIGEON, C. J. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 674.
- MIGEON, C. J. & GARDNER, L. I. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **12**, 1513.
- MITCHELL, F. L. & DAVIES, R. E. (1954). *Biochem. J.* **56**, 690.
- NATHANSON, I. T., TOWNE, L. E. & AUB, J. C. (1941). *Endocrinology*, **28**, 851.
- ONESON, I. B. & COHEN, S. L. (1952). *Endocrinology*, **51**, 173.
- PAYNE, F. L. (1941). *Surg. Gynec. Obstet.* **73**, 86.
- PEARLMAN, W. H., RAKOFF, A. E., CANTAROW, A. & PASCHKIS, K. E. (1947). *J. biol. Chem.* **170**, 173.
- PEDERSEN-BJERGAARD, K. (1939). *Comparative Studies concerning the Strengths of Estrogenic Substances*. London: Oxford University Press.
- PEDERSEN-BJERGAARD, K. & TØNNESEN, M. (1948). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **1**, 38.
- PEDERSEN-BJERGAARD, K. & TØNNESEN, M. (1951). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **7**, 270.
- PREEDY, J. R. K. & AITKEN, E. H. (1957). *Lancet*, **1**, 191.
- RAKOFF, A. E. (1939). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **38**, 371.
- RUBIN, B. L., DORFMAN, R. I. & MILLER, M. (1946). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **6**, 347.
- SECKEL, H. P. G. (1946). *Med. Clin. N. Amer.* **30**, 183.
- SHIMKIN, M. B. & WYMAN, R. S. (1946). *J. nat. Cancer Inst.* **7**, 71.
- SIMPSON, S. L. & JOLL, C. A. (1938). *Endocrinology*, **22**, 595.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1934). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **107**, 128.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1935). *Surg. Gynec. Obstet.* **61**, 27.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1948). *Physiol. Rev.* **28**, 1.
- SMITH, G. V., SMITH, O. W. & PINCUS, G. (1938). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **121**, 98.
- SMITH, J. T. & WERTHESEN, N. T. (1941). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **41**, 153.
- STEVENSON, M. F. & MARRIAN, G. F. (1947). *Biochem. J.* **41**, 507.
- STIMMEL, B. F. (1946). *J. biol. Chem.* **162**, 99.
- STØA, K. F. & KNUTSEN, K. O. H. (1957). *Acta endocr. Kbh. suppl.* **31**, p. 209.
- STOHR, G. (1942). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **43**, 586.
- STRONG, J. A., BROWN, J. B., BRUCE, J., DOUGLAS, M., KLOPPER, A. & LORAIN, J. A. (1956). *Lancet*, **2**, 955.
- TILLINGER, K.-G., DICZFALUSY, E. & WESTMAN, A. (1957). *Acta endocr. Kbh. suppl.* **31**, p. 47.
- VENNING, E. H. (1948). *Obstet. Surv. Baltim.* **3**, 661.
- VENNING, E. H., EVELYN, K. A., HARKNESS, E. V. & BROWNE, J. S. L. (1937). *J. biol. Chem.* **120**, 225.
- VIGDOFF, B., HILL, R., VEHR, H. & KUBIN, R. (1939). *Endocrinology*, **25**, 391.
- WATSON, E. J. D. & MARRIAN, G. F. (1956). *Biochem. J.* **63**, 64.
- WESTERFELD, W. W., MACCORQUODALE, D. W., THAYER, S. A. & DOISY, E. A. (1938). *J. biol. Chem.* **126**, 195.

CHAPTER X

Progesterone and its Metabolites

INTRODUCTION

IN 1929 Corner and Allen showed that lipid extracts prepared from the corpora lutea of swine were capable of causing progestational changes in the uterine endometrium of castrated rabbits. This observation indicated strongly that the corpus luteum secreted a specific hormone, and in 1934 this hormone, which is now known as progesterone, was isolated as a chemically pure substance from the luteal tissue of sow's ovaries. The isolation was accomplished almost simultaneously by four different groups of workers (Butenandt *et al.*, 1934; Slotta *et al.*, 1934; Allen and Wintersteiner, 1934; Hartmann and Wettstein, 1934). Very shortly afterwards the structure of the hormone was completely elucidated by Butenandt and Schmidt (1934) and by Fernholz (1934).

In more recent years progesterone has been isolated in relatively small quantities from sources other than the ovary. These have included ox adrenal tissue and human placental tissue. The presence of the hormone has also been detected in human blood during pregnancy and during the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle. Attempts to demonstrate progesterone in human urine have usually been unsuccessful although Ungar *et al.* (1951) were able to detect its presence in urine extracts after the administration of very large doses of the hormone to patients with rheumatoid arthritis.

Progesterone and its metabolites are all derivatives of two parent hydrocarbons, 5 α -pregnane (*allopregnane*) and 5 β -pregnane, the structural formulæ of which are shown in Fig. 45.

These two substances differ only in the spatial configuration of the hydrogen atom at C-5. Among the metabolic reduction products of progesterone, those with the 5 β configuration are much the more important from the

quantitative point of view. In this group are included the two compounds 5β -pregnane- $3\alpha:20\alpha$ -diol (pregnanediol) and 5β -pregnan- 3α -ol- 20 -one (pregnanolone).

In Fig. 46 are shown the structural formulæ for progesterone and for some of its urinary metabolites.

Only pregnanediol, *allopregnanediol* and pregnanolone have so far been definitely proved to be metabolic reduction products of progesterone, but it is very probable that the other compounds listed have a similar origin.

Progesterone metabolites can be divided into three groups, depending on their degree of reduction. These are (1) the

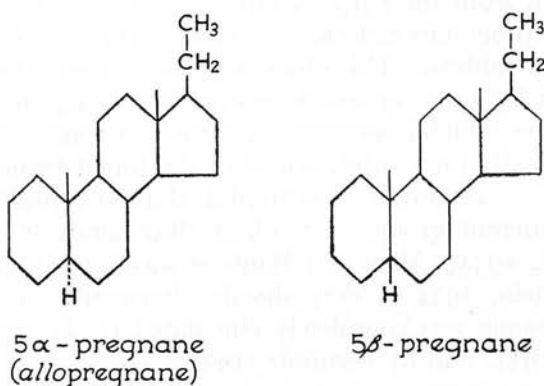


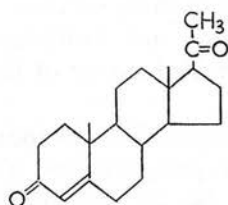
FIG. 45

Structural formulæ of 5α -pregnane (*allopregnane*) and 5β -pregnane.

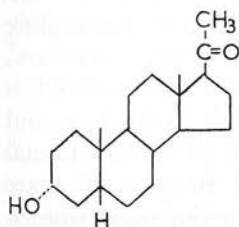
pregnanediones, (2) the *pregnanolones* and (3) the *pregnanediols*. These three groups of compounds contain respectively two, four and six more hydrogen atoms than does progesterone itself.

Very small quantities of *pregnanediones* have been demonstrated in extracts of human pregnancy urine. There is no reason to believe that these substances are of any physiological significance, and at present satisfactory methods are not available for their quantitative determination in blood and urine.

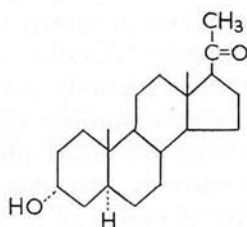
The most important compound among the *pregnanolones* is 5β -pregnan- 3α -ol- 20 -one (pregnanolone). This substance is excreted in gradually increasing amounts during normal pregnancy and it can be recovered from male urine following



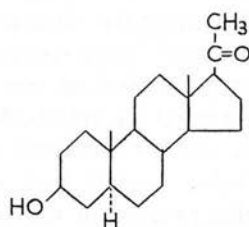
pregn-4-ene-3:20-dione
(progesterone)



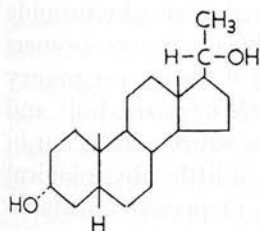
5β-pregnan-3α-ol-20-one
(pregnanolone)



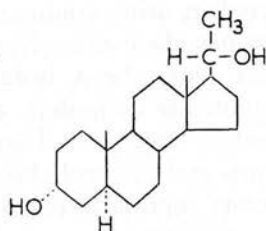
5α-pregnan-3α-ol-20-one
(allopregnanolone)



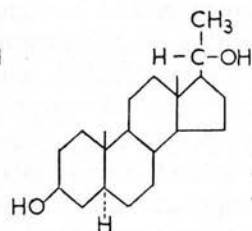
5α-pregnan-3β-ol-20-one



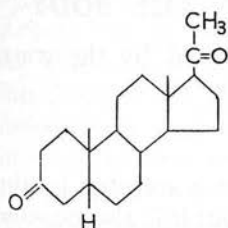
5β-pregnane-3α:20α-diol
(pregnanediol)



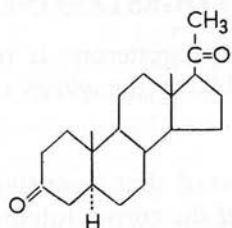
5α-pregnane-3α:20α-diol
(allopregnanediol)



5α-pregnane-3β:20α-diol



5β-pregnane-3:20-dione
(pregnanedione)



5α-pregnane-3:20-dione
(allopregnanedione)

FIG. 46

Structural formulæ of progesterone and of some of its urinary metabolites.

the oral administration of progesterone. At the time of writing satisfactory methods are not available for the quantitative determination of pregnanolone or of its stereo-isomers in the body fluids of man.

The group of *pregnanediols* includes the substance 5β -pregnane- $3\alpha:20\alpha$ -diol (pregnanediol) which from the quantitative point of view is by far the most important metabolic reduction product of progesterone. This compound was first isolated from pregnancy urine by Marrian in 1929 and was subsequently shown to have a structure closely resembling that of progesterone itself. Unlike the latter, however, pregnanediol is not progestationally active. The steroid is excreted in relatively large quantities during pregnancy and in smaller amounts during the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle. Small but measurable amounts of pregnanediol are also present in the urine of males, of post-menopausal women and of women during the follicular phase of the menstrual cycle. As first demonstrated by Venning and Browne (1936) pregnanediol is excreted in urine conjugated with glucuronic acid as *sodium pregnanediol glucuronide* (NaPG). Stereo-isomers of pregnanediol which have been isolated from pregnancy urine include 5α -pregnane- $3\alpha:20\alpha$ -diol (*allopregnanediol*) and 5α -pregnane- $3\beta:20\alpha$ -diol (Fig. 46). These substances occur in relatively small amounts and are probably of little physiological importance. Satisfactory methods are not at present available for their quantitative estimation.

SOURCES OF PROGESTERONE IN THE BODY

In human subjects progesterone is produced by the *ovary*, the *placenta* and probably by the *adrenal cortex*.

1. Ovary.

It is generally believed that progesterone is secreted by the granulosa lutein cells of the corpus luteum, but it is also possible that the cells of the theca interna are capable of elaborating the hormone. Many investigators have shown that pregnanediol is excreted in relatively large quantities during the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle. This material, which may be termed *ovarian pregnanediol*, is derived from the progesterone secreted by the luteal tissue of the ovary.

2. Placenta.

Progesterone has been isolated from human placental tissue by Salhanick *et al.* (1952), Pearlman and Cerceo (1952) and Diczfalusy (1952), while Pearlman and Thomas (1953) have demonstrated the presence of the hormone in human placental blood. Although large amounts of urinary progesterone metabolites are excreted throughout pregnancy, the progesterone content of the placenta, as determined by existing methods, is relatively low. This finding is in keeping with the view that the placenta produces but does not store progesterone. During pregnancy the placenta gradually takes over from the ovary the production of progesterone and in the second and third trimesters of pregnancy this organ is probably the dominant source of the hormone.

3. Adrenal Cortex.

In 1938 Beall and Reichstein isolated progesterone from ox adrenal tissue, and although the hormone has not yet been identified in human adrenals, there is a reasonable amount of indirect evidence to suggest that this organ in man is capable of progesterone secretion. In men, in post-menopausal women and in women during the follicular phase of the menstrual cycle, small but measurable quantities of urinary pregnanediol are excreted (Engel *et al.*, 1941; Westphal, 1944; Klopper *et al.*, 1955). It is widely believed that this material, which has been termed *adrenal pregnanediol*, is derived from some precursor or precursors—possibly progesterone—which have been secreted by the adrenal cortex. Recent studies by Klopper *et al.* (1957) provide strong support for this view. These workers have demonstrated that the intravenous administration of ACTH to men and to post-menopausal and oöphorectomised women results in a sharp increase in the urinary excretion of pregnanediol and that in patients who have been both oöphorectomised and adrenalectomised the urinary pregnanediol output generally falls to levels which are indistinguishable from zero. These observations suggest that urinary pregnanediol estimations may be a useful means of assessing adrenocortical function in men and in post-menopausal women.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF PROGESTERONE IN BLOOD

Until recently an assessment of the endogenous production of progesterone by the ovary, adrenal cortex or placenta has depended almost entirely on the measurement of urinary pregnanediol excretion. Within the past few years, however, methods have been developed for the estimation of progesterone itself in blood. Such techniques may become of importance in clinical work as they provide a more direct means than has previously existed of studying one aspect of ovarian and placental function in health and disease.

Assays of blood progesterone can be performed either by *biological* or by *chemical* methods. For reasons which will be discussed below it is probable that in future investigations chemical techniques will entirely replace bio-assay procedures.

1. Biological Methods.

(a) THE HOOKER-FORBES TEST (Stromal nuclear hypertrophy in mice).—In 1947 Hooker and Forbes described a method which was claimed to be sufficiently sensitive to detect the presence of progesterone in blood. The technique involves the intra-uterine injection of very small amounts of the hormone in ovariectomised mice followed by histological examination of the endometrium. When stimulated by progesterone the stromal nuclei enlarge, their nucleoli become conspicuous and their chromatin particles become evenly distributed; in untreated animals on the other hand the nuclei are shrunken, the nucleoli are small and inconspicuous and the chromatin particles remain clumped. This method probably has a low degree of precision but is claimed to be very sensitive, positive responses being obtained with total doses as small as $0.0002 \mu\text{g.}$ of progesterone per animal. In their earlier publications Hooker and Forbes stated that their method was reasonably specific. However, subsequent investigations showed that this claim was not justified and the original authors now suggest that the technique measures 'progestogens' or 'progestin activity' rather than progesterone itself. In a study of blood levels of 'progestogens' in human pregnancy and in the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle in women and in monkeys, Forbes (1951) obtained values ranging from 4 to 8 $\mu\text{g.}$ per ml.

There has been much controversy regarding the extent to which other steroids, in particular the oestrogens, interfere with the Hooker-Forbes test. Salhanick *et al.* (1951) found that oestradiol-17 β in relatively small amounts was capable of inhibiting the action of progesterone on the stromal nuclei of ovariectomised mice. This observation led these workers to suggest that, in assays conducted on untreated blood samples containing both oestrogens and progesterone, falsely low readings for the progesterone concentration might easily be obtained. Zarrow and Neher (1953) showed that oestrone as well as oestradiol-17 β could modify the response of the endometrium to progesterone. They stated, however, that the quantity of oestrogenic material present in blood was insufficient to interfere with the response and concluded that the method could probably be employed for progesterone determinations in untreated blood.

In view of the low degree of precision and questionable specificity of the Hooker-Forbes test, it is not possible to recommend the method, at least in its present form, for the quantitative determination of progesterone in blood.

(b) METHODS EMPLOYING RABBITS.—Various assay methods for progesterone employing rabbits have been proposed. One of the more popular of these was described by McPhail (1934) and depended on the production of progestational changes in the uterine endometrium. This test and others like it are too insensitive for clinical use and will not be further discussed.

2. Chemical Methods.

Numerous attempts have been made to estimate the progesterone content of peripheral blood, but in earlier studies such as those by Haskins (1950) and by Butt *et al.* (1951) negative results were reported.

Recently Zander and Simmer (1954) have developed a micro method which is sufficiently sensitive to estimate the blood concentration of progesterone in human subjects. The main steps in this procedure are as follows: (a) extraction of progesterone with a mixture of ethanol and ether, (b) distribution of the concentrated extract between water and ethyl acetate in order to remove non-lipoid material, (c) precipitation of lipid impurities by dissolving the dry residue from the ethyl acetate phase in methanol and by chilling to -15°C. ,

(*d*) extraction of progesterone from the water-diluted methanolic solution by petroleum ether, (*e*) separation of progesterone by paper chromatography, (*f*) final determination of the hormone by means of ultra-violet spectroscopy.

The accuracy of the method was tested in a series of recovery experiments in which known amounts of progesterone were added to blood. The mean recovery figure obtained was approximately 80 per cent. As little as 0.05 μ g. of progesterone per ml. of blood could be detected. The mean concentration of blood progesterone in women during the second half of pregnancy was 0.078 μ g. per ml., while in women during the normal menstrual cycle the concentration was generally below 0.05 μ g. per ml. It will be noted that these figures are considerably lower than those obtained by the Hooker-Forbes test. This finding supports the view that the latter method is less specific than was originally supposed.

Zander (1954) has been able to detect the presence of progesterone by chemical means in human placental tissue, in corpora lutea, in corpus luteum cysts and in follicular fluid. He also showed that, following the intravenous administration of progesterone to ovariectomised and post-menopausal women, the blood level of the hormone rose significantly and attained a maximum some three to five minutes after the injection. Subsequently a rapid fall in the titre occurred and within twenty-four hours the substance could no longer be detected in the peripheral blood.

The introduction of a reliable chemical method for the determination of the progesterone content of blood and tissues is an event of considerable importance. The technique of Zander and Simmer is probably not suitable for routine use but should be of value in research centres. Estimations by this method in normal and pathological conditions in man will be awaited with interest, and such studies should yield important information in the fields of obstetrics, gynaecology and internal medicine.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF PREGNANEDIOL IN BLOOD

In 1952 Sommerville stated that he had developed a chemical method for the determination of pregnanediol in

blood. Figures were presented for the concentration of blood pregnanediol before and after the intravenous administration of progesterone to healthy male subjects. This work was subsequently quoted in review articles by Samuels and West (1952) and by Lieberman and Teich (1953). Somewhat surprisingly, however, in view of the great importance of the original claims the details of the actual technique employed have not yet been published.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF PREGNANEDIOL IN URINE

Chemical methods for the determination of pregnanediol fall into two main groups:

1. Those in which pregnanediol is estimated conjugated with glucuronic acid as sodium pregnanediol glucuronide or *NaPG*.
2. Those in which 'free' pregnanediol is estimated after hydrolysis of the glucuronide complex by acid or by enzymes. Methods for estimating 'free' pregnanediol can be further subdivided into (a) precipitation methods and (b) chromatographic methods.

1. Estimation of 'Conjugated' Pregnanediol.

(a) THE METHOD OF VENNING (1937, 1938).—The main steps in this procedure are as follows: (1) extraction of the urine with butanol, (2) distribution of the butanol-soluble material between butanol and aqueous NaOH, (3) precipitation of the material in the water-washed butanolic phase from aqueous solution by acetone, (4) weighing of the precipitate formed. The latter is assumed to consist largely of sodium pregnanediol glucuronide.

The Venning method has been widely used in the clinical field and has yielded much valuable information. It has, however, certain important limitations which should be recognised by those employing it. In the first place stringent precautions must be taken to avoid growth of bacteria in urine as this may cause conversion of the 'conjugated' to 'free' pregnanediol; if the urine is not suitably preserved and adequately refrigerated after collection falsely low readings for *NaPG* will be obtained. Secondly, although the method

yields reasonably satisfactory results when quantities greater than 15 mg. of pregnanediol per twenty-four hours are being measured, the procedure is unreliable in urine specimens containing smaller concentrations of pregnanediol. For this reason results obtained during the normal menstrual cycle and in early pregnancy should be accepted with some reserve. Finally it has been shown that the apparently purified final product of NaPG is contaminated with glucuronides of substances other than pregnanediol. Marrian and Gough (1946) demonstrated that the NaPG obtained from pregnancy urine by the Venning method contained approximately 20 per cent. of a water-soluble derivative of 5β -pregnan-3 α -ol-20-one, and in the following year Sutherland and Marrian (1947) identified this contaminating substance as sodium pregnanolone glucuronide.

(b) MODIFICATIONS OF THE VENNING METHOD.—Numerous modifications of the Venning method have been proposed, but in general these procedures are open to the same objections as is the original technique. Westphal (1944) precipitated pregnanediol glucuronide from urine extracts by means of barium acetate. He found that the barium salt of pregnanediol glucuronide was more insoluble than the sodium salt and concluded that the precipitation was probably more complete than in the original Venning procedure. Various investigators have attempted to assay pregnanediol by measuring the glucuronic acid liberated from the NaPG after hydrolysis by acid. In the technique described by Allen and Viergiver (1941) pregnanediol glucuronide was precipitated as its lead salt and the reducing power of the precipitate was estimated by means of an alkaline copper reagent. Acid hydrolysis was carried out and the reducing power was re-estimated. The difference in reducing power before and after hydrolysis was considered to provide a measurement of the glucuronic acid content of the precipitate. Crismer (1939), Jayle *et al.* (1943 *a, b*) and Bissett *et al.* (1948) determined the glucuronic acid content of NaPG by means of a colour reaction with Tollens naphtho-resorcinol reagent. This reaction has a high degree of sensitivity but is probably relatively non-specific.

Jayle and his collaborators (Jayle, 1950; Jayle *et al.*, 1949; Libert, 1950) have published a long series of papers in which they claim that, by extracting urine at varying pH's with butanol, different groups of steroid glucuronides can be

determined. The procedure has been termed a 'butylogram.' The final step in the method is a colorimetric estimation of glucuronic acid. Much of the data presented deals with fractions extracted from urine at pH 13; such fractions are stated to consist mainly of pregnanediol glucuronide. The urinary glucuronide excretion has been studied in a large number of clinical conditions in man and attempts have been made to correlate the glucuronide excretion with the clinical features of certain disease states. The methods of Jayle and his associates have been used by investigators in France but have not found favour with workers in most other countries. The terminology employed is complex and specialised and the procedures themselves have many disadvantages from the quantitative point of view. In the opinion of the author the work is outside the scope of the present book. For further information the reader is referred to the original articles.

2. Estimation of 'Free' Pregnanediol.

(a) Precipitation Methods.

(1) THE ASTWOOD-TALBOT PROCEDURE.—In 1941 Astwood and Jones described a new method for the quantitative determination of urinary pregnanediol which avoided certain of the disadvantages of the original Venning procedure. The main steps in this method were as follows: (i) hydrolysis of the urine by boiling with hydrochloric acid, (ii) extraction by toluene, (iii) removal of acidic and phenolic substances from the extract by treatment with NaOH, (iv) purification of the pregnanediol in the neutral toluene-soluble fraction so obtained by repeated precipitation from alcoholic solution by 0.1 N-NaOH and water, (v) weighing of the final product.

This method represented one of the first attempts to estimate urinary pregnanediol in the free instead of in the conjugated form. However, the accuracy of the technique was not high and frequently losses of pregnanediol amounted to 20 per cent. or more. The sensitivity of the procedure was increased by Talbot *et al.* (1941) who determined the finally purified pregnanediol, not by weighing but by means of the yellow colour it yields with concentrated sulphuric acid.

This colour reaction with minor modifications has been employed by most investigators who have subsequently

developed assay methods for pregnanediol. It must be emphasised that the reaction itself is by no means specific for this steroid and accordingly the specificity of methods based on it depends entirely on the purity and identity of the final product obtained. It is, for example, well known that a considerable over-estimate of 'apparent' pregnanediol will occur if the final extract is contaminated with urinary pigments, with certain steroids other than pregnanediol, particularly decomposition products of 5β -pregnane- $3\alpha:17\alpha:20\alpha$ -triol, and also perhaps with non-steroidal colourless substances. For a more detailed account of the various factors influencing the sulphuric acid colour reaction the reader is referred to a recent article by Kloppe (1956 a).

(2) THE METHOD OF GUTERMAN AND SCHROEDER (1948).—This is merely a simplified and shortened version of the Astwood-Talbot procedure by means of which pregnanediol determinations can be completed in a few hours. The technique has been used as a method of diagnosing pregnancy. It is, however, probable that the results obtained by this procedure have little significance from the quantitative point of view.

(3) THE METHOD OF SOMMERVILLE, GOUGH AND MARRIAN (1948 a).—This method is also a modification of the Astwood-Talbot procedure and will measure with reasonable accuracy (ca. 82 per cent.) approximately 2 mg. of pregnanediol per twenty-four-hour urine specimen. At lower levels of excretion, however, its accuracy is unsatisfactory. Furthermore, the procedure is laborious and time-consuming and its specificity is somewhat questionable. In view of the development of better techniques for the assay of urinary pregnanediol such as that recently published by Kloppe *et al.* (1955) it is unlikely that this procedure will continue to be used in clinical studies.

(4) THE METHOD OF SOMMERVILLE, MARRIAN AND KELLAR (1948 b).—This is a more rapid and less elaborate version of method (3). The original authors claimed that the technique could measure pregnanediol levels of 5 mg. per twenty-four hours or more and that it was therefore suitable for routine estimations in mid and late pregnancy. Subsequent work has, however, demonstrated that the procedure is inaccurate and relatively non-specific and it is doubtful if the results obtained by its use have much quantitative significance.

(b) **Chromatographic Methods.**

A number of techniques have been proposed in which urinary pregnanediol is purified by methods depending on chromatography. The most satisfactory procedures from the clinical point of view are those described by de Watteville, Borth and Gsell (1948) and by Klopper, Michie and Brown (1955).

(1) **THE METHOD OF DE WATTEVILLE, BORTH AND GSELL (1948).**—This procedure is based on a method originally described by Huber (1947) and is essentially a modification of the technique of Astwood and Jones (1941). The neutral steroid fraction which is obtained after hydrolysis of the glucuronide by acid is chromatographed on alumina columns; subsequently the free crystalline pregnanediol, obtained by elution with a benzene-alcohol mixture, is weighed. Much clinically useful information has been obtained by the use of this technique in normal and pathological conditions. The method is, however, rather less sensitive and somewhat less specific than that recently developed by Klopper *et al.* (1955).

(2) **THE METHOD OF KLOPPER, MICHIE AND BROWN (1955).**—This method, which includes several novel features, is probably superior in all respects to any that have been previously described. The main steps in the procedure are (i) acid hydrolysis, (ii) toluene extraction, (iii) a new permanganate oxidation step designed to remove from the pregnanediol fraction a contaminant which is probably a decomposition product of pregnanetriol, (iv) chromatography on alumina columns, (v) acetylation, (vi) further chromatography on alumina, (vii) colorimetry by means of a modified version of the usual sulphuric acid reaction. By infra-red spectroscopy and by melting point and mixed melting point determinations, it has been shown that the finally purified product contains 5 β -pregnane-3 α :20 α -diol diacetate and virtually nothing else (Klopper *et al.*, 1955; Coyle *et al.*, 1956). Accordingly it can be claimed that the method is highly specific for 5 β -pregnane-3 α :20 α -diol.

The accuracy of the procedure was tested in a series of recovery experiments in which known amounts of pure pregnanediol were added to portions of twenty-four-hour urine samples obtained from non-pregnant subjects. At concentrations of the steroid as low as 0.5 mg. per twenty-four hours

the mean recovery of added pregnanediol was approximately 92 per cent.; at higher concentrations of pregnanediol the mean recovery figures were even better.

Typical pregnanediol values obtained from the urine of men and of women during the menstrual cycle and after the menopause are shown in Table XVI.

TABLE XVI
PREGNANEDIOL CONTENT OF TWENTY-FOUR-HOUR
URINES FROM VARIOUS SOURCES

(From Kloppe *et al.*, 1955)

Type of Urine.	Number of Individuals.	Number of Determinations.	Range, mg. per Twenty-four Hours.	Average Excretion, mg. per Twenty-four Hours.
Male	9	50	0.38 to 1.42	0.92
Female, proliferative phase	4	8	0.78 to 1.50	1.12
Female, luteal phase .	2	18	2.1 to 4.2	3.30
Female, post-menopausal .	5	23	0.28 to 0.86	0.63

It will be noted that the technique is sufficiently sensitive to measure 'adrenal' as well as 'ovarian' pregnanediol. The significance of this finding will be discussed later in this chapter.

The method is less exacting and time-consuming than many of the previously published techniques, and it is probably suitable for routine application in the clinical field. One technician can complete approximately twenty estimations in one week.

THE CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF URINARY PREGNANEDIOL ESTIMATIONS

One of the main reasons for performing urinary pregnanediol determinations in the clinical field is to obtain information regarding the production of endogenous progesterone by the body. Accordingly it is necessary to consider the quantitative relationship between the secretion of progesterone on the one hand and the excretion of urinary pregnanediol on the other.

Information pertaining to this problem can be accumulated by studying the relationship of the blood progesterone concentration to the urinary pregnanediol excretion, by measuring the urinary pregnanediol output following the administration of progesterone in normal and disease states, and by investigating the role of various organs, particularly the liver, in the conversion of progesterone to pregnanediol.

It is generally agreed that the concentration of progesterone in human blood is very low. This is the case whether the hormone is assayed by biological or by chemical methods. The most reliable estimates of blood progesterone at present available are those of Zander (1954) who reported mean concentrations of less than $0.1 \mu\text{g. per ml.}$ in the second half of pregnancy and of less than $0.05 \mu\text{g. per ml.}$ during the luteal phase of the normal menstrual cycle. On the other hand pregnanediol, which is the principal urinary metabolite of progesterone, is excreted in relatively large quantities; in late pregnancy figures varying from 40 to 80 mg. per twenty-four hours are frequently encountered, and in the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle the excretion values generally lie between 2 and 5 mg. per twenty-four hours. These two sets of observations taken in conjunction support the view that progesterone is rapidly metabolised in the body and this has indeed been found to be so when the hormone has been administered intravenously to human subjects and to animals. In such experiments progesterone was shown to disappear very rapidly from the circulation and could no longer be detected in the blood a few hours after the injection.

Much has been written regarding the urinary excretion of pregnanediol in human subjects following the administration of progesterone. Some of the early work in this field is probably of little significance as the methods of estimation of urinary pregnanediol were of doubtful reliability at the low levels of excretion often encountered in such metabolic studies. More recent investigations with improved methods of assay have shown that in males and in post-menopausal females less than 20 per cent. of the dose of administered progesterone is excreted in the urine as pregnanediol. This observation merits emphasis in view of the widely held assumption that the urinary pregnanediol excretion is a reasonably exact index of the endogenous progesterone production.

A considerable body of experimental evidence indicates that the liver is intimately concerned with progesterone metabolism and that therefore this organ is capable of influencing the urinary pregnanediol excretion in health and disease. This evidence, some of which will be briefly considered below, has led to the conclusion that the liver is the organ mainly responsible not only for the reduction of progesterone to pregnanediol but also for the conjugation of pregnanediol with glucuronic acid.

Many investigators have demonstrated that liver slices can metabolise progesterone and have studied the enzyme systems responsible for this effect. Pellets of progesterone implanted into the spleen or mesentery of rabbits rapidly lose their biological activity and this finding supports the view that the liver is the main site of progesterone inactivation in the body. Riegel *et al.* (1950) administered progesterone labelled with ^{14}C to rats and mice and found that relatively large amounts of radio-activity appeared in the liver and in the faeces. Grady *et al.* (1952) showed that in rats radio-active progesterone passed from the liver to the intestine via the common bile duct and that complete biliary obstruction resulted in the appearance of considerable quantities of radio-activity in the urine. Rogers and McLellan (1951) and Klopper (1956 *b*) have detected the presence of pregnanediol in human bile following the administration of progesterone to patients in whom biliary drainage had been established. Rogers (1956) estimated the urinary pregnanediol output after the administration of progesterone to patients with biliary obstruction and found that in such individuals abnormally large quantities of pregnanediol were excreted. He concluded that, when the biliary tract is obstructed, the route of excretion of pregnanediol is altered and a greater proportion of the steroid appears in the urine than under normal conditions. This interesting observation requires confirmation.

The preceding discussion has emphasised that urinary pregnanediol estimations cannot provide the clinician with a quantitative measurement of endogenous progesterone production. However, there can be no doubt that the pregnanediol excretion does to some extent at least reflect the output of the hormone by the ovary or the placenta. It is, for example, well established that the excretion of urinary pregnanediol is

generally high in cases in whom it would be reasonable to expect that the progesterone production is relatively high and that the output is frequently low in patients who show evidence of luteal deficiency or placental failure. In view of these observations it would appear justifiable to conclude that clinically useful information can often be obtained by pregnanediol assays in urine, although the exact significance of such determinations remains a problem for future elucidation.

THE URINARY EXCRETION OF PREGNANEDIOL IN NORMAL SUBJECTS

1. Children.

Bergstrand and Gemzell (1957) have recently applied the assay method described by Kloppe *et al.* (1955) to a study of the urinary pregnanediol excretion in eighty-seven normal children between the ages of three and fifteen. They found that in boys the mean pregnanediol output was 0.75 mg. per twenty-four hours while in girls the corresponding figure was 0.72 mg. per twenty-four hours. No correlation could be demonstrated between the pregnanediol excretion on the one hand and the age of the children on the other.

2. Normally Menstruating Women.

The urinary excretion of pregnanediol during the normal menstrual cycle has been studied by numerous investigators over the past two decades. In the earlier investigations the method of pregnanediol assay described by Venning (1937) was used. By means of this technique urinary pregnanediol could be demonstrated in the luteal but not in the follicular phase of the cycle. It was also shown that a rapid fall in the pregnanediol excretion occurred one or two days prior to the onset of menstruation. Values obtained from normal women at the same stage of the cycle showed a very wide scatter from one subject to another, but the average excretion during the luteal phase was approximately 5 mg. of NaPG per twenty-four hours.

One of the more careful studies of the urinary pregnanediol excretion in normally menstruating women is that of de Watteville (1951) who used the technique of pregnanediol assay described by de Watteville *et al.* (1948). This method,

which depends on chromatography, is probably more specific than that of Venning, and for this reason the figures for the pregnanediol excretion are somewhat lower than those obtained by the Venning method. De Watteville (1951) found that the excretion of pregnanediol in individual cases varied greatly from one day to another and did not follow any definite pattern. There was also considerable variation in excretion from one subject to another at comparable stages of the cycle. In a small proportion of apparently healthy women pregnanediol

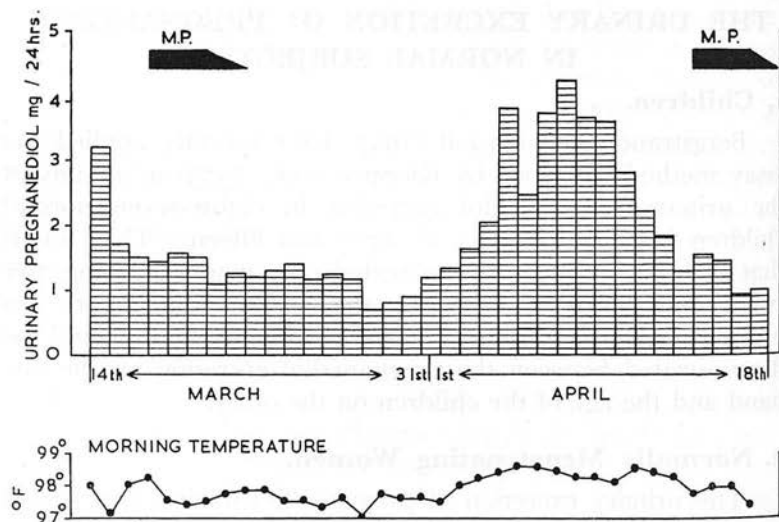


FIG. 47

Urinary excretion of pregnanediol in a typical menstrual cycle. Basal temperature readings are also shown. M.P. = menstrual period. (From Klopper, 1957.)

could not be detected at any time during the cycle. This worker wisely emphasised that the trend in a series of pregnanediol determinations in the same patient gives much more information to the clinician than isolated readings taken at widely separated intervals.

The development by Klopper *et al.* (1955) of a more sensitive procedure for the quantitative measurement of urinary pregnanediol has made it possible to estimate this steroid in urine during the whole of the normal menstrual cycle. Typical results obtained by this method in individual cases are shown in Figs. 47, 48 and 49 which are taken from a paper by Klopper (1957).

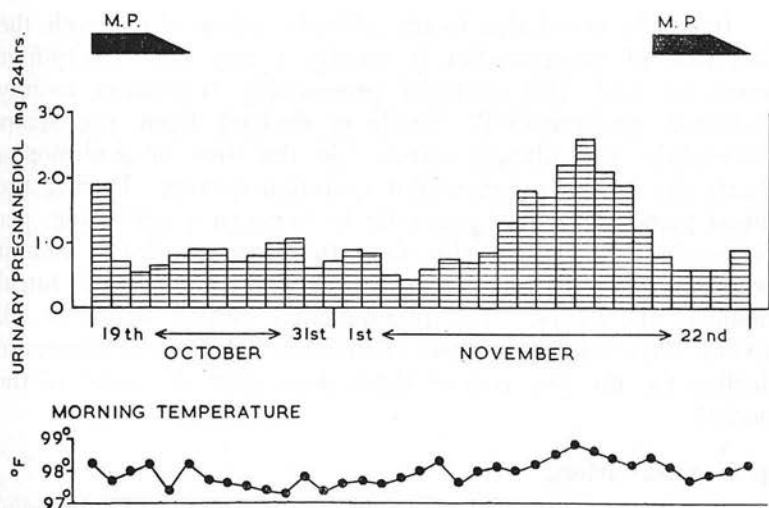


FIG. 48

Urinary excretion of pregnanediol in a normal menstrual cycle—juvenile type. Basal temperature readings are also shown. M.P.=menstrual period. (From Klopfer, 1957.)

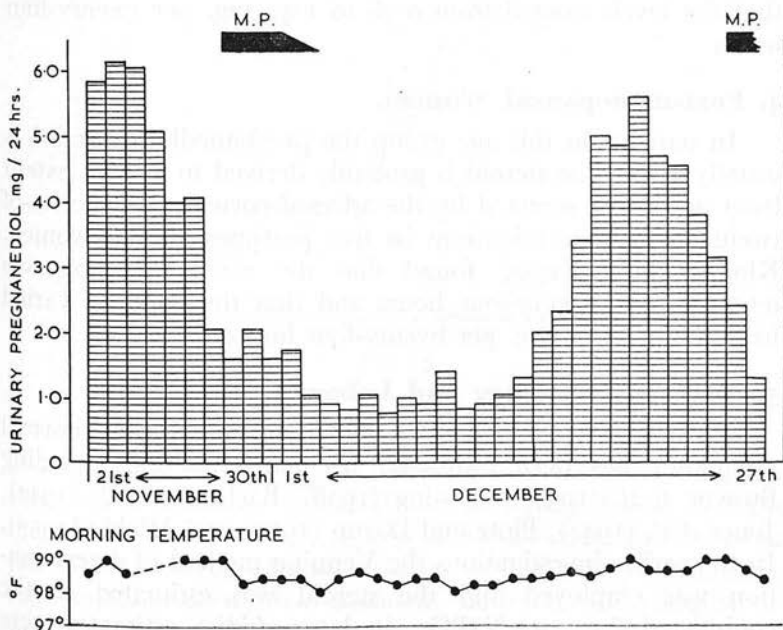


FIG. 49

Urinary excretion of pregnanediol in a normal menstrual cycle—adult type. Basal temperature readings are also shown. M.P.=menstrual period. (From Klopfer, 1957.)

It will be noted that in the follicular phase of the cycle the excretion of pregnanediol is usually 1 mg. per twenty-four hours or less; this material presumably represents mainly 'adrenal pregnanediol' which is derived from precursors secreted by the adrenal cortex. At the time of ovulation a sharp rise in the pregnanediol excretion occurs. During the luteal phase the values generally lie between 2 and 5 mg. per twenty-four hours; at this time the pregnanediol is almost certainly derived from the progesterone secreted by the luteal tissue of the ovary. The pregnanediol output begins to fall several days before the onset of menstruation and continues to decline for the first two or three days after the onset of the period.

3. Normal Men.

Small but measurable quantities of 'adrenal' pregnanediol are present in male urine. In a series of fifty determinations in nine normal male subjects, Klopper *et al.* (1955) found that the mean excretion was 0.92 mg. per twenty-four hours and that the levels ranged from 0.38 to 1.42 mg. per twenty-four hours.

4. Post-menopausal Women.

In patients in this age group the pregnanediol excretion is usually low. The steroid is probably derived to a large extent from precursors secreted by the adrenal cortex. In a series of twenty-three determinations in five post-menopausal women, Klopper *et al.* (1955) found that the mean excretion was 0.63 mg. per twenty-four hours and that the readings varied from 0.38 to 0.86 mg. per twenty-four hours.

5. Normal Pregnancy and Labour.

The urinary excretion of pregnanediol during normal pregnancy has been estimated by many workers including Browne *et al.* (1937), Venning (1938), Bachman *et al.* (1941), Jones *et al.* (1944), Plotz and Darup (1950) and Michie (1953). In the earlier investigations the Venning method of determination was employed and the steroid was estimated in the conjugated form as NaPG; in later studies estimates were made by techniques which measured the urinary pregnanediol in the 'free' rather than the conjugated state.

The original curve for urinary NaPG during pregnancy as published by Venning (1938) is shown in Fig. 50.

It will be noted that the pregnanediol excretion gradually increases as pregnancy advances. At the twelfth week the readings generally lie between 10 and 15 mg. per twenty-four hours. By the twentieth week the excretion averages 30 mg. per twenty-four hours and by the thirty-six week the output

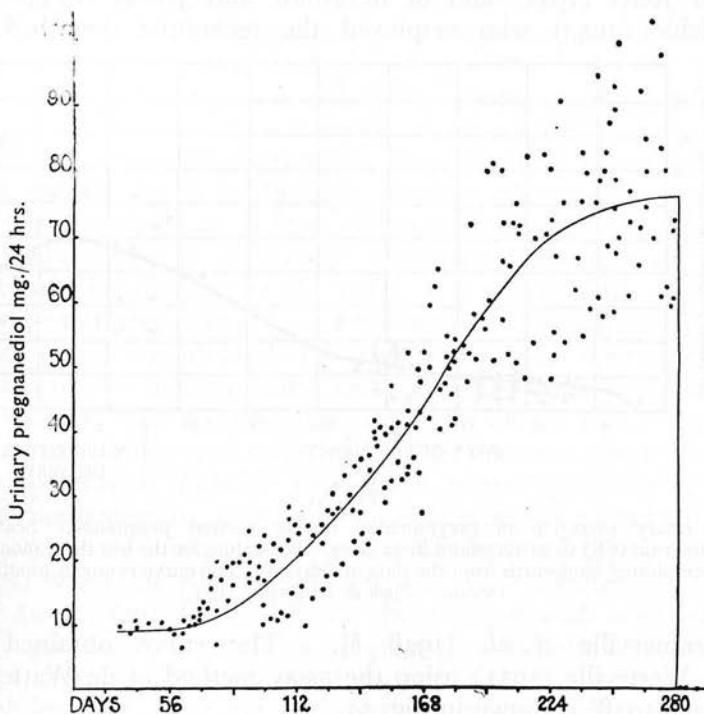


FIG. 50

Urinary excretion of pregnanediol during normal pregnancy in eight subjects. (From Venning, 1938.)

is approximately 80 mg. per twenty-four hours. From the thirty-sixth week onwards most workers have found that the mean excretion of urinary pregnanediol does not show a further rise and may even decrease slightly. No definite relationship has so far been demonstrated between the output of pregnanediol on the one hand and the onset of labour on the other. After delivery the amount of pregnanediol in the urine decreases rapidly and by the first few days of the puerperium

the levels have fallen to those normally encountered in non-pregnant individuals.

Curves of the same general shape as that obtained by Venning (1938) have been published by later workers who determined urinary pregnanediol in the 'free' rather than the conjugated form. Among the more detailed of such studies are those of Jones *et al.* (1944) who used the method of Astwood and Jones (1941) and of Bradshaw and Jessop (1953) and Michie (1953) who employed the technique described by

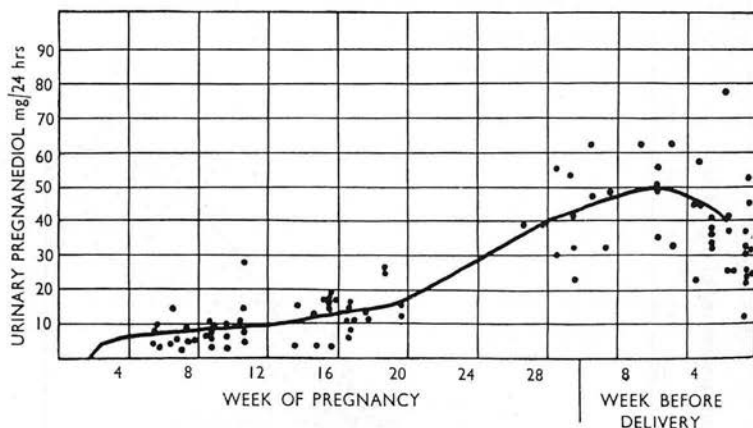


FIG. 51

Urinary excretion of pregnanediol during normal pregnancy. Scatter diagram of 87 determinations in 52 cases. The values for the last three months are plotted backwards from the date of delivery. The curve connects monthly means. (From de Watteville, 1951.)

Sommerville *et al.* (1948 *b*). The curve obtained by de Watteville (1951) using the assay method of de Watteville *et al.* (1948) is shown in Fig. 51.

It is probable that the pregnanediol output reflects to some extent the growth and development of the placenta. The excretion of the steroid starts to rise when the placenta is formed; it increases progressively during the period of active proliferation of the cytotrophoblast and it remains relatively constant after the thirty-sixth week by which time placental growth is virtually complete.

All the work published so far has indicated that the urinary pregnanediol excretion varies greatly from one subject to another at comparable stages of pregnancy and that large variations also occur in the daily excretion of the steroid in

the same individual. Accordingly, it is unlikely that the clinician will derive much benefit from data based on single determinations of pregnanediol in individual cases or on isolated readings made at widely separated intervals during pregnancy in the same patient. Only by studying the trend in a series of pregnanediol determinations in individual cases will it be possible to obtain information of clinical importance.

Most investigators who have published curves for the urinary excretion of pregnanediol during normal pregnancy have employed assay methods of doubtful accuracy and specificity, such as those developed by Venning (1938), Astwood and Jones (1941) and Sommerville *et al.* (1948 *b*). Although valuable clinical information has been obtained by the use of such techniques, it is doubtful whether the results reported have much significance from the quantitative point of view. Recently Coyle *et al.* (1956) employed the assay method described by Kloppe *et al.* (1955) in a study of the urinary excretion of pregnanediol in a small series of normally pregnant women, and it is probable that the results which these workers obtained are more reliable than any previously published. They found that the pregnanediol levels during normal pregnancy were lower than those reported by previous investigators; this observation probably reflects the greater specificity of the assay method used. During the gestation period a gradual rise in pregnanediol output was noted until about the thirty-second week, when the mean excretion was approximately 40 mg. per twenty-four hours. From the thirty-second week until term no further increase in pregnanediol excretion occurred. After delivery the output fell rapidly and in less than one week levels of 2 to 3 mg. per twenty-four hours were observed.

Urinary Pregnanediol Assay as a Means of Pregnancy Diagnosis.

Guterman (1947) attempted to use pregnanediol estimations for this purpose. He developed a simple and rapid semi-quantitative method of determination by the use of which results were obtained in a few hours. The Guterman test has been severely criticised by many workers and should no longer be used as a method of pregnancy diagnosis. One of the main disadvantages of the test is the fact that values obtained in early pregnancy are often quantitatively similar to those

found during the luteal phase of the normal menstrual cycle. The subject of pregnancy diagnosis is considered in detail in Chapter III.

THE EXCRETION OF URINARY PREGNANEDIOL IN PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

1. Disorders of Menstruation.

(a) ANOVULAR MENSTRUATION.—In this condition cyclic uterine bleeding occurs in the absence of ovulation and corpus luteum formation. The uterine bleeding therefore takes place from a proliferative and not from a secretory endometrium. Anovulatory cycles probably occur relatively frequently in the human female but are more common at the beginning and towards the end of reproductive life. For further information on the clinical features of anovular menstruation the reader is referred to Chapter IX.

Many workers over the past two decades have demonstrated that the pattern of excretion of urinary pregnanediol in normally menstruating women differs from that found in patients with anovular menstruation. In the former group the steroid was not detected in the urine at any time during the follicular phase of the cycle, but appeared in relatively large quantities during the luteal phase; in the latter group, on the other hand, pregnanediol was shown to be absent from the urine during the whole cycle. These findings taken in conjunction form the basis of the widely held belief that urinary pregnanediol assays are of considerable clinical value in determining the time of ovulation in women and in differentiating ovular from anovular menstruation. However, recent developments in the field of pregnanediol assay have suggested that these views may have to be modified and that urinary pregnanediol estimations may be of rather less diagnostic value than was previously supposed in cases of suspected anovular menstruation.

In the majority of the investigations in which the pregnanediol excretion in ovular and anovular menstruation were compared, relatively insensitive assay methods such as those of Venning (1938) or of de Watteville *et al.* (1948) were employed. Such techniques were probably not capable of detecting the steroid at concentrations of less than 2 mg. per twenty-four hours. Recently Klopper *et al.* (1955) have developed a more

sensitive assay procedure for pregnanediol which will estimate with reasonable accuracy as little as 0.5 mg. in a twenty-four-hour specimen of urine. This technique is sufficiently sensitive to detect the presence of the steroid in the follicular as well as the luteal phase of the normal menstrual cycle (Figs. 47 to 49). During the follicular phase the urinary pregnanediol is probably derived to a large extent from precursors secreted by the adrenal cortex and may be termed 'adrenal' pregnanediol. Although studies of pregnanediol excretion in anovular menstruation using this assay method have not yet been published, it is reasonable to assume that in such patients also 'adrenal' pregnanediol will be demonstrated in the urine.

These recent findings lead to the conclusion that the mere presence of pregnanediol in the urine is not of itself evidence that ovulation has occurred. Accordingly it would appear that urinary pregnanediol determinations can only be of limited diagnostic value in cases of suspected anovular menstruation. In this type of case such estimations should be regarded as complementary to other more routine methods of assessing corpus luteum function such as those depending on basal temperature curves, on vaginal smears or on endometrial biopsy.

(b) AMENORRHOEA.—In cases of both primary and secondary amenorrhœa the pregnanediol excretion is low, being generally below 1 mg. per twenty-four hours (Klopper, 1956 *b*). It is probable that the material present represents 'adrenal' rather than 'ovarian' pregnanediol.

(c) PERSISTENT CORPUS LUTEUM.—This is a rare condition of unknown ætiology. The corpus luteum is cystic and resembles very closely the corpus luteum of early pregnancy. The endometrium shows advanced secretory changes. Amenorrhœa is generally present and it is believed that menstruation is prevented by the presence in the circulation of large quantities of progesterone. In the few cases of persistent corpus luteum so far reported in the literature, hormone assays by reliable methods have not been conducted.

(d) 'IRREGULAR SHEDDING OF THE ENDOMETRIUM.'—This condition was first described by Pankow in 1924. The characteristic feature of the disease is the fact that the endometrium is shed over an abnormally long period of time. Histological examination of the endometrium obtained during the bleeding

phase shows the presence of secretory changes. Clinically the condition is characterised by prolonged and excessive bleeding at the time of menstruation. The cycles themselves are not increased in length.

McKelvey and Samuels (1947) demonstrated that pregnanediol measured as NaPG was excreted in the urine throughout the period of uterine bleeding. These workers suggested that an ætiological factor in this disease might be delayed involution of the corpus luteum. Further hormone estimations in patients with this condition will be awaited with interest.

(e) STEIN - LEVENTHAL SYNDROME.—The main clinical features of this relatively rare disease are cystic enlargement of both ovaries, secondary amenorrhœa, sterility and various stigmata of masculinisation of which hirsutism is the most prominent. The characteristic finding on histological examination of the ovaries is hyperplasia of the cells of the theca interna. For a detailed account of the clinical and pathological features of the Stein-Leventhal syndrome the reader is referred to a recent article by Shippel (1955).

Numerous theories have been advanced to explain the virilisation which is frequently found in this disease. Leventhal and Cohen (1951) considered that this might be caused by excessive production of progesterone by the theca cells. On the other hand Shippel (1955) believes that the theca cells are capable of elaborating an androgenic hormone which is responsible for the masculinising features of the syndrome.

At the time of writing urinary pregnanediol assays have been performed in relatively few patients with the Stein-Leventhal syndrome. In the case studied by Fischer and Riley (1952) abnormally large quantities of this steroid were excreted, but in a patient recently investigated in Edinburgh by Kloppe (1956 *b*) the pregnanediol output was within the normal range.

2. Abnormal Pregnancy.

(a) THREATENED AND RECURRENT ABORTION.—Views are conflicting with respect to the clinical value of urinary pregnanediol assays in patients with these conditions. The subject has recently been reviewed by Borth and de Watteville (1952). Although several investigators have demonstrated subnormal

values preceding abortion, cases are frequently encountered in which interruption of pregnancy occurs in the presence of normal pregnanediol values or fails to occur despite abnormally low values. Findings of this type are not surprising in view of the multiplicity of causes of abortion among which progesterone deficiency is probably by no means the most frequent. After three years of experience of 'routine' pregnanediol assays carried out in the laboratory of the Simpson Memorial Maternity Pavilion in Edinburgh, Kellar (1952) came to the conclusion that the test was of little diagnostic value in cases of threatened and recurrent abortion. This worker found that, in cases in which a falling pregnanediol excretion was observed, there were generally very obvious clinical signs of the inevitability of a threatened abortion. A similar conclusion was reached by Cope (1940), Swyer (1949) and others.

Guterman (1950) believes that the trend of the urinary pregnanediol excretion may sometimes be of prognostic value in cases of threatened abortion. In his series of cases he found that abortion occurred frequently in patients who showed a progressive fall in pregnanediol excretion to levels abnormally low for the period of gestation. He also demonstrated that abortion was relatively rare in patients in whom the pregnanediol excretion was within the normal range or had risen to normal from an initially low level. De Watteville (1951) emphasised that single readings in individual patients or isolated pregnanediol determinations made at widely separated intervals in the same patient were of virtually no diagnostic value. He did, however, suggest that clinically useful information could sometimes be obtained by following the trend in a series of urinary pregnanediol determinations in selected cases. After a careful and critical review of the literature Borth and de Watteville (1952) concluded that in cases of threatened abortion and premature labour, serial estimations of urinary pregnanediol may sometimes be of value in assessing the functional state of the trophoblast. In the opinion of these workers, foetal death is generally associated with decreasing or consistently low levels of urinary pregnanediol. Furthermore, they believe that abnormally low values occurring in early pregnancy in patients with a history of repeated abortions may precede any clinical sign of abortion and may justify preventive therapy by means of progesterone.

It is obvious that, at the time of writing, there is much controversy regarding the clinical value of pregnanediol assays in patients with threatened and recurrent abortion. Further work is necessary before any definite conclusions can be drawn.

(b) PRE-ECLAMPTIC TOXÆMIA.—An abnormally low excretion of urinary pregnanediol in a proportion of toxæmic patients has been reported by numerous investigators including Browne *et al.* (1938), Smith and Smith (1938) and de Watteville (1951). There appears to be little or no correlation between

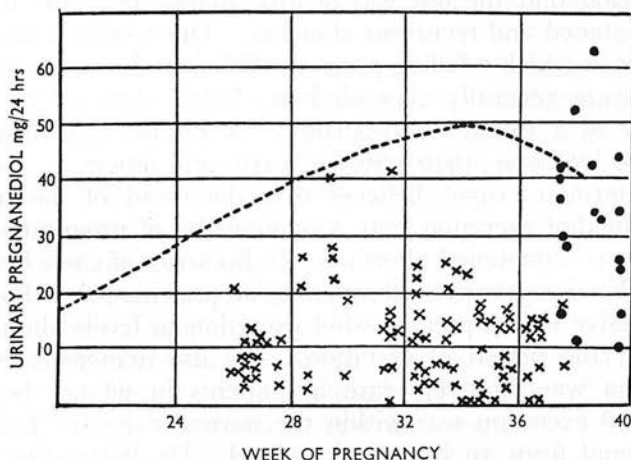


FIG. 52

Urinary excretion of pregnanediol in patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia. Closed circles denote normal child; crosses denote dead or under-developed child. The dotted line is the mean curve shown in Fig. 51. (From de Watteville, 1951.)

the pregnanediol output on the one hand and any clinical feature of the disease, such as hypertension, œdema or albuminuria, on the other. De Watteville (1951), in a careful study, reported that the excretion varied greatly from one subject to another but found that the majority of estimations lay below the normal range. He divided his cases into two groups. In the first group, consisting of patients who were delivered of normal babies, the pregnanediol excretion was generally within normal limits. The second group consisted of cases in which the child was born dead or under-developed, and in these patients almost all the readings obtained were abnormally low. De Watteville's results are shown in Fig. 52.

The cause of the low pregnanediol excretion in pre-eclamptic toxæmia is not known with certainty. It could be due to impaired placental function as a result of spasm of the spiral arterioles in the decidua, to alterations in the metabolism of progesterone, or to abnormalities in the renal clearance of the hormone. Smith and Smith (1940, 1948) were among the first to note the low pregnanediol excretion in cases of pre-eclamptic toxæmia, and these workers attempted to weave this finding into a complicated pattern of ætiology of pre-eclampsia. The Smith theories, although stimulating and provocative, have never been substantiated and are not now generally accepted as valid. For further information on these theories the reader is referred to the original articles.

(c) DIABETIC PREGNANCY.—White and her collaborator (White, 1947, 1952; White and Hunt, 1943) have stated that a relatively high proportion of pregnant diabetics show an abnormally low excretion of urinary pregnanediol and have claimed that this finding is of diagnostic and prognostic value in relation to the fate of the foetus. In the experience of those investigators many patients showed the condition of 'hormonal imbalance' which was characterised by abnormally low levels of urinary pregnanediol and serum oestrogens and by abnormally high concentrations of serum HCG. In such patients the incidence of obstetrical complications was much higher than in those in whom the 'hormonal balance' was normal. 'Correction of the hormonal imbalance' by 'substitution therapy' by oestrogens and progesterone was said to restore the hormone readings to normal and to improve greatly the prognosis for the foetus.

Other workers have been unable to confirm White's findings in relation to urinary pregnanediol estimations in cases of pregnancy complicated by diabetes. Keltz *et al.* (1950) noted that the mean figure for pregnanediol excretion in the third trimester of pregnancy was significantly higher in patients delivering a viable foetus than in those in whom foetal death occurred. However, these investigators were unable to convince themselves that pregnanediol assays were of any diagnostic or prognostic value in pregnant diabetics. A similar conclusion was reached by Michie (1954) after a careful study conducted in Edinburgh. It should be emphasised that pre-eclamptic toxæmia may frequently co-exist with

diabetic pregnancy. This is of some importance in relation to urinary pregnanediol assays as the former condition *per se* may markedly influence the urinary output of this steroid. The subject of hormone assays in pregnant diabetics is further discussed in Chapter III.

3. Adrenal Disease.

Urinary pregnanediol assays in patients with adrenal hyperplasia and adrenal tumours present considerable difficulties owing to the presence in the urine of large quantities of 17-ketosteroids and 5 β -pregnane-3 α :17 α :20 α -triol. These substances when they occur in high concentration may interfere to a considerable extent with the specificity of colorimetric assay methods for urinary pregnanediol. Accordingly, figures for the excretion of 'pregnanediol' in such cases should be viewed with some reserve unless evidence has been produced that the steroid has actually been isolated and identified by chemical means.

Various investigators, including Malley and Bradshaw (1941), Talbot *et al.* (1942) and Lloyd *et al.* (1951), have claimed that patients with adrenal hyperplasia and adrenal tumours excrete abnormally large quantities of urinary pregnanediol. The methods of assay used by these workers were relatively non-specific, and it is doubtful if the results they obtained had much quantitative significance. Bongiovanni *et al.* (1954) have shown that, although pregnanediol excretion may sometimes be increased in cases of adrenocortical hyperfunction, this increase is usually overshadowed by the presence in the urine of abnormally large amounts of pregnanetriol. In view of this observation it is quite possible that the 'pregnanediol' estimated by previous investigators consisted largely of decomposition products of pregnanetriol which had been formed after acid hydrolysis. As emphasised by Klopper *et al.* (1957) the presence of abnormally high levels of urinary pregnanediol in cases of adrenocortical hyperfunction cannot be definitely established until methods of assay have been applied which are capable of separating urinary pregnanediol from large amounts of other steroids such as pregnanetriol, pregnanolone and androstanediol.

URINARY PREGNANEDIOL ESTIMATIONS AS A TEST OF ADRENOCORTICAL FUNCTION IN MAN.—Klopper *et al.* (1957) have recently studied the effect of ACTH administration and of

bilateral adrenalectomy on the urinary excretion of pregnanediol. They found that the intravenous infusion of ACTH at a rate of one international unit per hour caused a sharp rise in urinary pregnanediol output and that a similar effect was produced by operative stress. Results in a healthy male subject before and after ACTH administration are shown in Fig. 53. It will be noted that in this subject ACTH produced a fourfold increase in urinary pregnanediol excretion.

After bilateral adrenalectomy, on the other hand, Kloppe

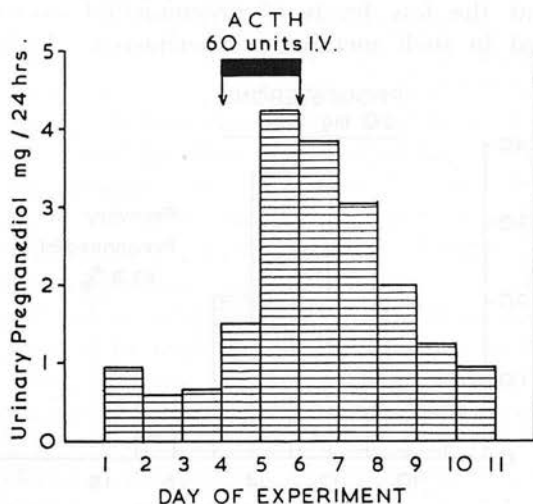


FIG. 53

The effect of ACTH on the urinary excretion of pregnanediol in a normal male subject. (From Kloppe *et al.*, 1957.)

et al. (1957) and Strong *et al.* (1956) showed that the urinary pregnanediol output fell to very low levels. The intravenous administration of ACTH to adrenalectomised patients failed to produce any rise in pregnanediol output.

On the basis of these observations Kloppe *et al.* (1957) have suggested that urinary pregnanediol assays may be of value as a means of assessing adrenocortical function in man. The test appears to offer an alternative to such well-recognised methods of estimating adrenocortical activity as eosinophil counts, water excretion tests, electrolyte studies, the estimation of 17-ketosteroids in urine and the determination of 17, 21-dihydroxy-20-ketosteroids in blood and in urine.

THE EXCRETION OF URINARY PREGNANEDIOL FOLLOWING PROGESTERONE ADMINISTRATION IN NORMAL AND DISEASE STATES

1. Normal Non-pregnant Subjects.

Many investigators have accumulated information on the urinary excretion of pregnanediol in men and women following the administration of progesterone. Much of the early work in this field was performed with methods which were of doubtful accuracy at the low levels of pregnanediol excretion often encountered in such metabolic experiments. It is therefore

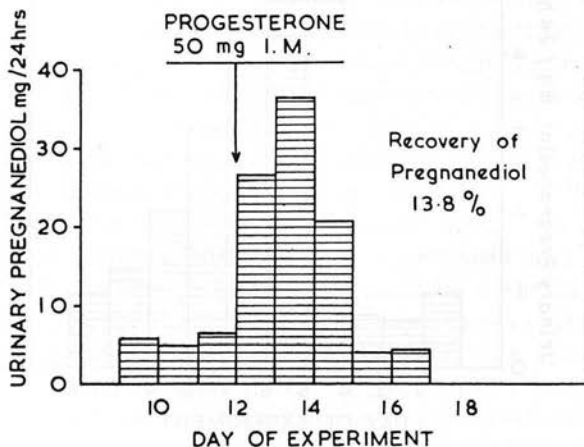


FIG. 54

A typical recovery experiment in a post-menopausal subject.
(From Kloppe, 1956 b.)

not surprising that the amounts of progesterone recovered as urinary pregnanediol varied greatly from one laboratory to another. More recent studies with superior methods have demonstrated that in men and post-menopausal women the proportion of administered progesterone excreted as urinary pregnanediol generally ranges from 10 to 20 per cent. A typical experiment in a post-menopausal subject in which the assay method of Kloppe *et al.* (1955) was used is shown in Fig. 54.

According to Fischer and McColgan (1953) the conversion rate of progesterone to pregnanediol is not affected by the mode of exhibition of the hormone. Similar conversion rates

were obtained using oral, sublingual or parenteral routes of administration of standard doses of progesterone.

PROGESTERONE 'PRIMING.'—Sommerville and Marrian (1950) and Sommerville (1950), using the method of pregnanediol assay described by Sommerville *et al.* (1948 *a*), reported that, on administering progesterone daily to intact post-menopausal women for periods up to twenty-seven days, two plateaux levels of pregnanediol excretion were observed. The first of these was found on the second or third day; at this time the conversion rate of progesterone to pregnanediol usually lay between 10 and 20 per cent. Thereafter at about the fifth to the eighth day the pregnanediol output rose in a regular stepwise manner to a second plateau level which was maintained for the duration of the experiment. At the time of the second plateau the conversion rate was greater than 20 per cent. This phenomenon was termed a progesterone 'priming' effect. Sommerville and Marrian (1950) and Sommerville (1950) also claimed that no 'priming' effect was observed when progesterone was administered daily to normal men and to post-menopausal subjects who had been subjected to hysterectomy or to hysterectomy and oöphorectomy. They therefore concluded that the uterus was necessary for the occurrence of progesterone 'priming' and that this organ must therefore be concerned in the conversion of progesterone to pregnanediol.

The work of Sommerville and Marrian (1950) has not been subsequently confirmed. For example, Rothchild (1953) was unable to demonstrate progesterone 'priming' in clinical conditions in which it might reasonably have been expected to occur. The doubts cast on the validity of the original observation of Sommerville and Marrian (1950) led Marrian, Russell and Atherden (1954) to reinvestigate the whole problem. These workers used the same assay method for urinary pregnanediol as that employed by Sommerville and Marrian (1950) and selected a similar series of experimental subjects. They were unable to substantiate the previous findings. Recently Kloppe and Michie (1956), using the method of pregnanediol assay developed by Kloppe *et al.* (1955), studied the urinary excretion of pregnanediol in post-menopausal women and in normal men during prolonged daily administration of progesterone. They found that

post-menopausal subjects did not show two plateaux of pregnanediol excretion and that the pattern of excretion of this steroid in post-menopausal women did not differ in any way from that in a series of men similarly treated.

It can therefore be concluded that the phenomenon which has been termed progesterone 'priming' does not exist and that the original observation of Sommerville and Marrian (1950) and of Sommerville (1950) was incorrect.

2. Pregnant Women.

Venning and Brown (1940) have claimed that during normal pregnancy the conversion rate of progesterone to pregnanediol is greater than is found in non-pregnant subjects. Guterman (1950) has studied the conversion of progesterone to pregnanediol in cases of habitual abortion and has attempted to correlate these studies with the clinical course of the disease. He found that abortion almost always occurred in patients in whom the conversion rate was less than 13 per cent. while in cases showing a conversion rate of 37 per cent. or more pregnancy was usually maintained. This work should be repeated using more accurate and specific methods of assay for urinary pregnanediol than were employed by Guterman in his original experiments.

3. Patients with Rheumatoid Arthritis.

Sommerville, Marrian, Duthie and Sinclair (1950) and Sommerville (1950) claimed to have shown conclusively that in post-menopausal women suffering from rheumatoid arthritis an abnormally high proportion of progesterone administered by the intramuscular route was excreted as urinary pregnanediol. The conversion rate of progesterone to pregnanediol lay between 19 and 36 per cent. in the patients with rheumatoid arthritis and between 9 and 16 per cent. in the series of normal subjects. There was no overlap between the two groups. This finding of abnormal progesterone metabolism was thought to be of possible significance in relation to the aetiology of rheumatoid arthritis since the symptoms of that disease were known to be suppressed by cortisone, a substance which bears a close chemical relationship to progesterone and may be metabolised in the body in a somewhat similar manner to progesterone.

The original observations of Sommerville *et al.* (1950) and of Sommerville (1950) have not been subsequently confirmed by Marrian and Atherden (1953) and by Roy, Wigzell, Demers, Sinclair, Duthie, Atherden and Marrian (1955). These latter two groups of investigators showed that the conversion rate of progesterone to pregnanediol did not differ significantly in patients with rheumatoid arthritis from that of normal individuals. Accordingly it must be concluded that the earlier reports of Sommerville *et al.* (1950) and of Sommerville (1950) were incorrect.

4. Patients with Liver Disease.

It is generally believed that the liver is the organ mainly responsible not only for the reduction of progesterone to pregnanediol but also for the conjugation of pregnanediol with glucuronic acid. Various investigators, using rather unreliable assay methods, have reported that patients with chronic hepatic disease show a higher rate of conversion of progesterone to pregnanediol than do patients with normal liver function. However, more recent work with better assay methods has tended to show that the conversion rate may be within normal limits even in the presence of advanced hepatic disease.

THE EFFECT OF STILBŒSTROL ON THE URINARY EXCRETION OF PREGNANEDIOL IN NORMAL AND DIABETIC PREGNANCY

One of the main tenets of the theories of Smith and Smith in relation to pre-eclamptic toxæmia was the interdependence of œstrogen and progesterone metabolism. In 1946 Smith *et al.*, using the method of assay of pregnanediol described by Venning (1937), reported that they had been able to cause a sharp rise in the urinary excretion of this steroid in a pregnant diabetic woman following the administration of stilbœstrol. These workers concluded that this effect on urinary pregnanediol output was a result of an increased production of progesterone by the placenta and suggested that treatment with stilbœstrol might be of value in patients with histories of repeated obstetrical accidents during pregnancy. Some doubts regarding the correctness of the experimental results of Smith

et al. (1946) were raised when subsequent investigators including Davis and Fugo (1948) and Seitchik (1950) reported that stilboestrol had no effect on the urinary excretion of pregnanediol in normal and abnormal pregnancy.

Sommerville, Marrian and Clayton (1949), using a modified Astwood-Talbot procedure, studied the urinary pregnanediol excretion in normal and diabetic pregnancy before, during and after the administration of stilboestrol. They obtained results exactly opposite to those of Smith *et al.* (1946). A sharp fall in the urinary pregnanediol output followed the administration of stilboestrol in all cases and withdrawal of the drug resulted in a rapid return to levels encountered in the control period. The whole problem was recently reinvestigated in Edinburgh by Michie (1955), using the assay methods described by Sommerville *et al.* (1948 *a*) and by Klopper *et al.* (1955). This worker was unable to confirm the previous observations of Sommerville *et al.* (1949) and concluded that the oral administration of stilboestrol to normally pregnant women and to pregnant diabetics had no consistent effect on the excretion of urinary pregnanediol.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Assays of progesterone in blood should be conducted by chemical rather than by biological methods. The technique recently described by Zander and Simmer (1954) is probably suitable for use in research laboratories and should in the future provide information of clinical importance.

For the assay of pregnanediol in urine the method described by Klopper *et al.* (1955) is recommended. This procedure will measure with reasonable accuracy as little as 0.5 mg. of pregnanediol in a twenty-four-hour specimen. Satisfactory methods are not yet available for the quantitative determination of other progesterone metabolites in urine.

Urinary pregnanediol determinations cannot provide an exact quantitative measure of progesterone production but reflect to some extent the output of the hormone by the corpus luteum or the placenta.

Pregnanediol is excreted in the urine in the follicular as well as in the luteal phase of the normal menstrual cycle. The steroid is also present in the urine of children, of men and

of post-menopausal women. During normal pregnancy the pregnanediol excretion gradually increases and after delivery the levels fall rapidly. It is suggested that, when the presence of an active corpus luteum or a placenta can be excluded, the urinary pregnanediol is derived from precursors which have been secreted by the adrenal cortex.

Pregnanediol assays may sometimes be of value in the investigation of menstrual abnormalities and as an index of placental function during pregnancy. Recent work has indicated that urinary pregnanediol determinations may provide a useful index of adrenocortical activity in men and in post-menopausal women.

Claims made some years ago that the uterus was necessary for the conversion of progesterone to pregnanediol and that progesterone metabolism was abnormal in patients with rheumatoid arthritis have not been subsequently confirmed.

REFERENCES

- ALLEN, W. M. & WINTERSTEINER, O. (1934). *Science*, **80**, 190.
- ALLEN, W. M. & VIERGIVER, E. (1941). *J. biol. Chem.* **141**, 837.
- ASTWOOD, E. B. & JONES, G. E. S. (1941). *J. biol. Chem.* **137**, 397.
- BACHMAN, C., LEEKLEY, D. & HIRSCHMANN, H. (1941). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **1**, 206.
- BEALL, D. & REICHSTEIN, T. (1938). *Nature, Lond.* **142**, 479.
- BERGSTRAND, C. G. & GEMZELL, C. A. (1957). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **17**, 870.
- BISSETT, N. G., BROOKSBANK, B. W. L. & HAZELWOOD, G. A. D. (1948). *Biochem. J.* **42**, 366.
- BONGIOVANNI, A. M., EBERLEIN, W. R. & CARA, J. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 409.
- BORTH, R. & DE WATTEVILLE, H. (1952). *Vitam. & Horm.* **10**, 141.
- BRADSHAW, T. E. T. & JESSOP, W. J. E. (1953). *J. Endocrin.* **9**, 427.
- BROWNE, J. S. L., HENRY, J. S. & VENNING, E. H. (1937). *J. clin. Invest.* **16**, 678.
- BROWNE, J. S. L., HENRY, J. S. & VENNING, E. H. (1938). *J. clin. Invest.* **17**, 503.
- BUTENANDT, A. & SCHMIDT, J. (1934). *Ber. dtsch. chem. Ges.* **67**, 1901.
- BUTENANDT, A., WESTPHAL, U. & HOHLWEG, W. (1934). *Hoppe-Seyl. Z.* **227**, 84.
- BUTT, W. R., MORRIS, P., MORRIS, C. J. O. R. & WILLIAMS, D. C. (1951). *Biochem. J.* **49**, 434.
- COPE, C. L. (1940). *Brit. med. J.* **2**, 545.
- CORNER, G. W., & ALLEN, W. M. (1929). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **88**, 326.
- COYLE, M. G., MITCHELL, F. L. & RUSSELL, C. S. (1956). *J. Obstet. Gynec., Brit. Emp.* **63**, 560.
- CRISMER, R. (1939). *C.R. Soc. Biol., Paris*, **132**, 50.
- DAVIS, M. E. & FUGO, N. W. (1948). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **69**, 436.
- DICZFALUSY, E. (1952). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **10**, 373.
- ENGEL, L. L., THORN, G. W. & LEWIS, R. P. (1941). *J. biol. Chem.* **137**, 205.
- FERNHOLZ, E. (1934). *Ber. dtsch. chem. Ges.* **67**, 1855.
- FORBES, T. R. (1951). *Endocrinology*, **49**, 218.
- FISCHER, R. H. & MCCOLGAN, S. P. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 1043.
- FISCHER, R. H. & RILEY, C. L. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **12**, 890.
- GRADY, H. J., ELLIOTT, W. H., DOISY, E. A., JR., BOCKLAGE, B. C. & DOISY, E. A. (1952). *J. biol. Chem.* **195**, 755.
- GUTERMAN, H. S. (1947). *Proc. Third Amer. Congr. Obstet. Gynec.* p. 332.

- GUTERMAN, H. S. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 641.
- GUTERMAN, H. S. & SCHROEDER, M. S. (1948). *J. Lab. clin. Med.* **33**, 356.
- HARTMANN, M. & WETTSTEIN, A. (1934). *Helv. chim. acta*, **17**, 1365.
- HASKINS, A. L., JR. (1950). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **73**, 439.
- HOOKE, C. W. & FORBES, T. R. (1947). *Endocrinology*, **41**, 158.
- HUBER, D. (1947). *Biochem. J.* **41**, 609.
- JAYLE, M. F. (1950). *Gynéc. et Obstét.* **49**, 336.
- JAYLE, M. F., CRÉPY, O. & JUDAS, O. (1943 a). *Bull. Soc. Chim. biol., Paris*, **25**, 301.
- JAYLE, M. F., CRÉPY, O. & WOLF, P. (1943 b). *Bull. Soc. Chim. biol., Paris*, **25**, 308.
- JAYLE, M. F., CRÉPY, O. & MESLIN, F. (1949). *Ann. Endocrinol., Paris*, **10**, 145.
- JONES, G. E. S., DELFS, E. & STRAN, H. M. (1944). *Johns Hopk. Hosp. Bull.* **75**, 359.
- KELLAR, R. J. (1952). Personal communication.
- KELTZ, B. F., KEATY, E. C. & HELLBAUM, A. A. (1950). *Southern med. J.* **43**, 803.
- KLOPPER, A. (1956 a). *J. Endocrin.* **13**, 291.
- KLOPPER, A. (1956 b). Personal communication.
- KLOPPER, A. (1957). *J. Obstet. Gynec., Brit. Emp.* **64**, 504.
- KLOPPER, A., MICHIE, E. A. & BROWN, J. B. (1955). *J. Endocrin.* **12**, 209.
- KLOPPER, A. & MICHIE, E. A. (1956). *J. Endocrin.* **13**, 360.
- KLOPPER, A., STRONG, J. A. & COOK, L. R. (1957). *J. Endocrin.* **15**, 180.
- LEVENTHAL, M. L. & COHEN, M. R. (1951). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **61**, 1034.
- LIBERT, O. (1950). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **5**, 1.
- LIEBERMAN, S. & TEICH, S. (1953). *Pharm. Rev., Lond.* **5**, 285.
- LLOYD, C. W., LOBOTSKY, J., JONES, J., FREDERICKS, J. & WYATT, T. C. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 857.
- McKELVEY, J. L. & SAMUELS, L. T. (1947). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **53**, 62.
- McPHAIL, M. K. (1934). *J. Physiol.* **83**, 145.
- MALLEY, K. & BRADSHAW, J. G. (1941). *Brit. med. J.* **1**, 454.
- MARRIAN, G. F. (1929). *Biochem. J.* **23**, 1090.
- MARRIAN, G. F. & ATHERDEN, S. M. (1953). *J. Endocrin.* **9**, proc. xxiii.
- MARRIAN, G. F. & GOUGH, N. (1946). *Biochem. J.* **40**, 376.
- MARRIAN, G. F., RUSSELL, M. E. & ATHERDEN, S. M. (1954). *J. Endocrin.* **10**, 351.
- MICHIE, E. A. (1953). *J. Obstet. Gynec., Brit. Emp.* **60**, 561.
- MICHIE, E. A. (1954). Quoted by J. A. Loraine and G. D. Matthew. *Le Diabète*, **2**, 43.
- MICHIE, E. A. (1955). *J. Endocrin.* **12**, 241.
- PANKOW, O. (1924). *M Schr. Geburtsh. Gynäk.* **67**, 171.
- PEARLMAN, W. H. & CERCEO, E. (1952). *J. biol. Chem.* **194**, 807.
- PEARLMAN, W. H. & THOMAS, M. (1953). *Endocrinology*, **52**, 590.
- PLOTZ, J. & DARUP, E. (1950). *Arch. Gynäk.* **177**, 486.
- RIEGEL, B., HARTOP, W. L., JR. & KITTINGER, G. W. (1950). *Endocrinology*, **47**, 311.
- ROGERS, J. (1956). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **16**, 114.
- ROGERS, J. & McLELLAN, F. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 246.
- ROTHCHILD, I. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 1213.
- ROY, L. M. H., WIGZELL, F. W., DEMERS, R., SINCLAIR, R. J. G., DUTHIE, J. J. R., ATHERDEN, S. M. & MARRIAN, G. F. (1955). *Ann. rheum. Dis.* **14**, 183.
- SALHANICK, H. A., OLSEN, A. G. & HISAW, F. L. (1951). *Fed. Proc.* **10**, 117.
- SALHANICK, H. A., NOALL, M. W., ZARROW, M. X. & SAMUELS, L. T. (1952). *Science*, **115**, 708.
- SAMUELS, L. T. & WEST, C. D. (1952). *Vitam. & Horm.* **10**, 251.
- SEITCHIK, J. (1950). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **60**, 877.
- SHIPPEL, S. (1955). *J. Obstet. Gynec., Brit. Emp.* **62**, 321.
- SLOTTA, K. H., RUSCHIG, H. & FELS, E. (1934). *Ber. dtsh. chem. Ges.* **67(b)**, 1270.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1938). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **36**, 769.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1940). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **39**, 405.
- SMITH, G. V. & SMITH, O. W. (1948). *Physiol. Rev.* **28**, 1.
- SMITH, O. W., SMITH, G. V. & HURWITZ, D. (1946). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **51**, 411.
- SOMMERVILLE, I. F. (1950). M.D. Thesis, University of Edinburgh.
- SOMMERVILLE, I. F. (1952). *Proc. R. Soc. Med.* **45**, 807.
- SOMMERVILLE, I. F., GOUGH, N. & MARRIAN, G. F. (1948 a). *J. Endocrin.* **5**, 247.
- SOMMERVILLE, I. F. & MARRIAN, G. F. (1950). *Biochem. J.* **46**, 290.
- SOMMERVILLE, I. F., MARRIAN, G. F. & CLAYTON, B. E. (1949). *Lancet*, **1**, 680.

- SOMMERVILLE, I. F., MARRIAN, G. F., DUTHIE, J. J. R. & SINCLAIR, R. J. G. (1950). *Lancet*, **1**, 116.
- SOMMERVILLE, I. F., MARRIAN, G. F. & KELLAR, R. J. (1948 b). *Lancet*, **2**, 89.
- STRONG, J. A., BROWN, J. B., BRUCE, J., DOUGLAS, M., KLOPPER, A. & LORAIN, J. A. (1956). *Lancet*, **2**, 955.
- SUTHERLAND, E. S. & MARRIAN, G. F. (1947). *Biochem. J.* **41**, 193.
- SWYER, G. I. M. (1949). *Brit. med. J.* **2**, 830.
- TALBOT, N. B., BERMAN, R. A., MACLACHLAN, E. A. & WOLFE, J. K. (1941). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **1**, 668.
- TALBOT, N. B., BUTLER, A. M. & BERMAN, R. A. (1942). *J. clin. Invest.* **21**, 559.
- UNGAR, F., DORFMAN, R. I., STECHER, R. M. & VIGNOS, P. J., Jr. (1951). *Endocrinology*, **49**, 440.
- VENNING, E. H. (1937). *J. biol. Chem.* **119**, 473.
- VENNING, E. H. (1938). *J. biol. Chem.* **126**, 595.
- VENNING, E. H. & BROWNE, J. S. L. (1936). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **34**, 792.
- VENNING, E. H. & BROWNE, J. S. L. (1940). *Endocrinology*, **27**, 707.
- WESTPHAL, U. (1944). *Hoppe-Seyl. Z.* **281**, 14.
- DE WATTEVILLE, H. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 251.
- DE WATTEVILLE, H., BORTH, R. & GSELL, M. (1948). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **8**, 982.
- WHITE, P. (1947). *Penn. med. J.* **50**, 705.
- WHITE, P. (1952). In *Treatment of Diabetes Mellitus*, 8th ed., p. 769. Ed., E. P. Joslin. London: Kimpton.
- WHITE, P. & HUNT, H. (1943). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **3**, 500.
- ZANDER, J. (1954). *Nature, Lond.* **174**, 406.
- ZANDER, J. & SIMMER, H. (1954). *Klin. Wschr.* **32**, 529.
- ZARROW, M. X. & NEHER, G. M. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 203.

CHAPTER XI

Corticosteroids

INTRODUCTION

AS emphasised by Borth (1956) it is a difficult problem to arrive at a satisfactory definition of the term 'corticosteroid.' The word could be used to include all the thirty compounds listed by Reichstein (1950, 1954) which contain the steroid nucleus and which have been identified in ox adrenal extracts. Such a definition would probably be too wide in its scope as it would include substances like progesterone, œstrone and certain C-19 steroids which possess androgenic activity and which are closely related in structure to the male sex hormone testosterone. Another possibility would be to restrict the definition to the physiologically active compounds—the so-called 'cortin' steroids (Fig. 55)—which are capable of maintaining life in and correcting the metabolic abnormalities of adrenalectomised animals. This definition would, in its turn, be too narrow as it would exclude the biologically inactive metabolites which, at least in urinary extracts, account for the main part of the steroids present. A suitable compromise might be to define the corticosteroids as 'C-21 steroids which contain three or more oxygen atoms and which are found in the adrenals, in the urine or in both urine and adrenals.'

1. The 'Cortin' Group of Adrenocortical Steroids.

In Fig. 55 are shown the formulæ of the seven most important biologically active corticosteroids which have so far been isolated from adrenocortical tissue. Throughout the remainder of this chapter these seven compounds will be referred to by the following names—*cortisol*, *cortisone*, *corticosterone*, *11-dehydrocorticosterone*, *deoxycorticosterone*, *11-deoxycortisol* and *aldosterone*.

It will be noted that all these steroids possess a Δ^4 -3-ketone group which is believed to be essential for 'cortin' activity. In addition, all the substances have a characteristic grouping in

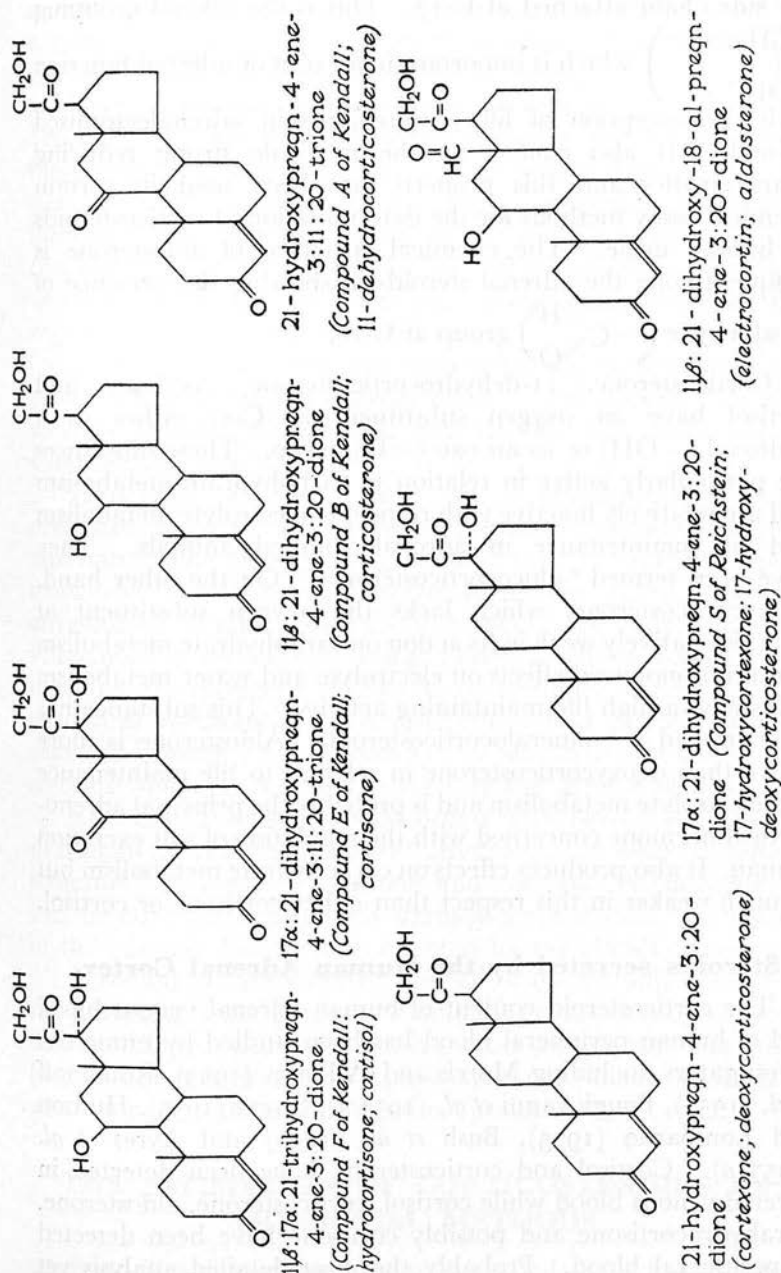
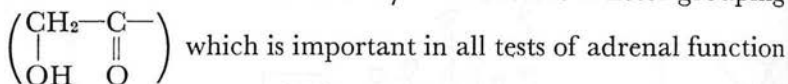


Fig. 55

Structural formulae of various corticosteroids.

the side chain attached at C-17. This is the α -ketol grouping



with the exception of life maintenance in adrenalectomised animals. It also confers on the molecule strong reducing characteristics and this property has been used in certain chemical assay methods for the determination of corticosteroids in human urine. The chemical structure of aldosterone is unique among the adrenal steroids in showing the presence of

an aldehyde $\left(-\text{C} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \text{H} \\ \searrow \text{O} \end{array} \right)$ group at C-18.

Corticosterone, 11-dehydrocorticosterone, cortisone and cortisol have an oxygen substituent at C-11 either as a hydroxyl ($-\text{OH}$) or as an oxo ($=\text{O}$) group. These substances are particularly active in relation to carbohydrate metabolism and are relatively inactive with respect to electrolyte metabolism and life maintenance in adrenalectomised animals. They have been termed 'glucocorticosteroids.' On the other hand, deoxycorticosterone, which lacks the oxygen substituent at C-11, is relatively weak in its action on carbohydrate metabolism but has pronounced effects on electrolyte and water metabolism and shows a high life-maintaining activity. This substance has been termed a 'mineralocorticosteroid.' Aldosterone is more active than deoxycorticosterone in relation to life maintenance and electrolyte metabolism and is probably the principal adrenocortical hormone concerned with the regulation of salt excretion in man. It also produces effects on carbohydrate metabolism but is much weaker in this respect than either cortisone or cortisol.

2. Steroids secreted by the Human Adrenal Cortex.

The corticosteroid content of human adrenal venous blood and of human peripheral blood has been studied by numerous investigators, including Morris and Williams (1953), Romanoff *et al.* (1953), Bongiovanni *et al.* (1954 a), Sweat (1955), Hudson and Lombardo (1955), Bush *et al.* (1956) and Ayres *et al.* (1957 a). Cortisol and corticosterone have been detected in adrenal venous blood while cortisol, corticosterone, aldosterone, tetrahydrocortisone and possibly cortisone have been detected in peripheral blood. Probably the most detailed analysis yet conducted is that of Hudson and Lombardo (1955), who

studied the corticosteroid content of adrenal venous blood in a patient suffering from mammary carcinoma before and after the administration of ACTH.

There is general agreement that cortisol and corticosterone are the two main adrenocortical hormones present in human blood and that cortisol is secreted in much larger quantities than is corticosterone. The evidence available at present indicates that, in man, cortisol is the principal corticosteroid concerned with the regulation of carbohydrate metabolism, while aldosterone is the principal steroid concerned with the regulation of salt excretion.

It is widely believed that oestrogens and progesterone are secreted by the human adrenal cortex. The evidence for this view is mainly indirect and has already been discussed in Chapters IX and X.

It is well established that the 17-ketosteroids in urine originate to some extent from precursors secreted by the adrenals. The compounds probably arise for the most part from the metabolic breakdown in tissues other than the adrenals of certain of the C-21 steroids. Recently, however, Romanoff *et al.* (1953), using adrenal venous blood, have detected the presence of two C-19 steroids bearing a close structural relationship to testosterone. This finding suggests that the urinary 17-ketosteroids may also originate from C-19 steroids which are secreted as such by the adrenal glands.

Romanoff *et al.* (1953) and others have been able to detect in human adrenal venous blood physiologically inactive steroids structurally related to cortisone and cortisol. Accordingly, it can be concluded that such steroids are not only synthesised in the adrenals but are also secreted by the glands themselves.

It should not be assumed that all of the steroids present in the adrenal glands of man and animals are necessarily secreted into the blood. Furthermore, it should not be concluded that human adrenal glands necessarily synthesise the same steroids as are found in the glands of other species.

THE ESTIMATION OF CORTICOSTEROIDS BY BIOLOGICAL METHODS

In studies on patients bio-assay methods have been applied mainly to urine extracts, and few investigations have been

conducted on blood. Biological tests determine 'cortin' activity in urine. They are generally carried out on adrenalectomised rodents and are based on the ability of the physiologically active corticosteroids to produce certain effects in these animals such as prolongation of life, protection against cold, glycogen deposition in the liver, regulation of electrolyte balance and eosinopenia. For further information regarding the very large number of methods available for the biological assay of the corticosteroids, the reader is referred to review articles by Vogt (1948), Sayers (1950), Loraine (1952), Dorfman (1953) and Diczfalussy *et al.* (1956).

Bio-assay procedures provide information regarding the urinary excretion of the physiologically active corticosteroids such as cortisone, cortisol and aldosterone. However, they do not measure any of the physiologically inactive metabolites of these hormones which, in relation to the hormones themselves, form much the larger part of the steroids excreted. Accordingly, although biological methods of assay may yield valuable information of a qualitative nature regarding the response of the adrenals to stimulation, they are obviously unsatisfactory for the quantitative assessment of adrenocortical secretory activity. In addition, such methods are usually expensive, laborious and tedious and are quite unsuitable for routine use in clinical studies.

Of the many methods of bio-assay which have been proposed, the following only will be considered:

1. The test depending on *glycogen deposition in the liver* of adrenalectomised mice (Venning *et al.*, 1946; Eggleston *et al.*, 1946; Dorfman *et al.*, 1946).
2. The *cold protection* test in adrenalectomised rats (Selye and Schenker, 1938).
3. The test depending on the production of *eosinopenia* in adrenalectomised mice (Speirs and Meyer, 1951).
4. Tests depending on *electrolyte excretion* in adrenalectomised rats (Dorfman, 1950; Simpson and Tait, 1952).

1. Glycogen Deposition Test.

This method depends on the ability of urine extracts with 'cortin-like' activity to promote deposition of glycogen in the liver of adrenalectomised rodents. Tests involving mice are

some ten to twenty times more sensitive than those employing rats and are therefore to be preferred for use in the clinical field. The method is specific for corticosteroids with an oxygen atom at C-11; results of assays are generally expressed in terms of cortisone as 'cortisone equivalents.' In the hands of Venning *et al.* (1946) the test was reasonably precise, the index of precision (λ) being generally below 0.2.

Several workers, including Venning *et al.* (1946) and Forbes *et al.* (1950) have studied the excretion of glycogenic corticosteroids in normal and pathological conditions in man. Their results, which are now mainly of historical interest, will be discussed briefly later in this chapter.

2. Cold Protection Test.

This technique is based on the ability of urinary extracts to prolong the survival time of adrenalectomised rats on exposure to low environmental temperature. The reliability criteria of this method have been reviewed by Vogt (1948). The test is more sensitive but less specific than that involving glycogen deposition in the liver; it has, however, a relatively low degree of precision and shows dose-response curves which are very variable in slope. For these reasons the method has not been widely used in clinical studies.

3. Mouse Eosinophil Test.

This method was originally described by Speirs and Meyer (1951) and depends on the ability of adrenal steroids with an oxygen atom at C-11 to cause a fall in the circulating eosinophils in adrenalectomised mice which have been pre-treated with adrenaline. The test is very sensitive and will detect as little as 1 μ g. of cortisone and cortisol. It is also reasonably specific for steroids with an oxygen atom at C-11.

The reliability criteria of the mouse eosinophil test have been intensively studied by Bibile (1953). This worker also found it to be both sensitive and specific and showed that the slopes of the dose-response curves remained relatively constant throughout the year. It was, however, demonstrated that the method had a very low degree of precision; the index of precision (λ) was generally greater than 0.5 and a fourfold increase in dosage was required in order to obtain a significant

difference between the mean responses of two groups each of ten mice.

In view of the large error of this test it is unlikely that it will provide results of any quantitative significance when applied to clinical problems.

4. Electrolyte Excretion Tests.

Although methods have existed for some time for the measurement of so-called 'glucocorticosteroid' activity in body fluids, it is only within recent years that bio-assays have been developed for the quantitative determination of 'mineralocorticosteroid' activity in blood and urine extracts. The index of mineral activity may be based on the estimation of either inert or of radio-active elements. Deming and Luetscher (1950), Spencer (1950) and others described assay methods in adrenalectomised rats in which the quantitative determination of mineral activity was based on the retention of inert sodium, while Dorfman and his co-workers (Dorfman *et al.*, 1947; Dorfman, 1950), also using adrenalectomised rats, described two separate bio-assay methods, one depending on the retention of radio-active sodium and the other on the excretion of radio-active potassium.

In 1952 Simpson and Tait developed a bio-assay method for mineralocorticosteroid activity which is probably superior to any that have hitherto been proposed. This procedure (the 'mineral ratio' test) is based on the ability of corticosteroids to depress the urinary $^{24}\text{Na}/^{42}\text{K}$ ratio in adrenalectomised rats in a two-hour period after the injection of the radio-active isotopes. In Simpson and Tait's original experiments results were expressed in terms of deoxycorticosterone acetate (DCA). Over the dosage range employed the depression of the ratio was found to bear a linear relationship to the dose of DCA administered. The mineral ratio test was shown to be reasonably specific; the 11-oxygenated steroids, viz., cortisone, cortisol and corticosterone, were relatively inactive by this technique while other steroids such as α estradiol-17 β , progesterone and testosterone were completely inactive. The error of the test was not unduly large; the index of precision (λ) generally lay between 0.2 and 0.3.

This bio-assay method proved very helpful in the series of experiments which culminated in the isolation of aldosterone

from adrenal extracts (Simpson *et al.*, 1953; 1954 *a, b, c*). Using this technique, Speirs *et al.* (1954) demonstrated that aldosterone was approximately 120 times more active than deoxycorticosterone.

THE ESTIMATION OF CORTICOSTEROIDS IN URINE BY CHEMICAL METHODS

Many types of steroid of adrenocortical origin can be determined in urine by chemical means. Perhaps the most important of these from the clinical point of view are the *neutral urinary 17-ketosteroids*, although it must be borne in mind that, in the male, approximately one-third of this fraction is accounted for by metabolites of testosterone, the hormone secreted by the testes. The methods of estimation of these substances, together with the clinical applications of urinary 17-ketosteroid assays, are discussed in detail in Chapter XII.

Many of the chemical procedures which have been used to determine the urinary excretion of corticosteroids in man are far from satisfactory from the quantitative point of view. Some of the deficiencies in existing methods have been reviewed by Marrian (1951, 1955). It is, for example, well known that present techniques of hydrolysis and extraction of the urinary corticosteroids are by no means optimal and that for this reason many of the procedures in current use estimate only a small proportion of the total corticosteroids in a given urine sample. Furthermore, some of the chemical reactions employed are far from specific for the urinary adrenocortical steroids in that many unrelated substances, both steroidal and non-steroidal, may be estimated. This latter criticism is particularly true in the case of techniques depending on the reducing properties of urinary adrenocortical hormones and on their ability to generate formaldehyde on oxidation with periodic acid.

It can be confidently predicted that, with the passage of time, chemical methods will entirely replace bio-assay techniques for the quantitative determination of urinary adrenocortical steroids. In recent years great advances have been made in the sphere of corticosteroid methodology, and it is reasonable to expect that in the not too distant future chemical assay methods satisfactory in terms of accuracy, precision, sensitivity and specificity will be developed. One of the great achievements

in the last decade has been the introduction of paper chromatographic methods for the separation and identification of the individual steroids of adrenocortical origin in urine extracts. Another important development has been a better understanding of hydrolysis conditions for urinary corticosteroids and the introduction of hydrolysis by enzymes such as β -glucuronidase in place of hydrolysis by acid. This modification has been shown to cause a great increase in the yield of corticosteroids from urine extracts. As more reliable chemical methods are developed for the assay of urinary adrenocortical steroids, it is probable that estimations of these hormones will become of increasing diagnostic and prognostic value in relation to clinical problems in man.

The great majority of chemical methods for the estimation of corticosteroids are based on different colour reactions which are produced by functional groups in the corticosteroid molecule. Table XVII, which is taken from a recent article by Diczfalusy *et al.* (1956), shows some of the colour reactions which have been employed by various investigators.

Prior to estimation by colorimetry the corticosteroids must first be extracted from urine and fractionated. The difficulties involved in these latter two procedures will be discussed under the individual methods.

The following chemical assay methods will be considered:

1. Methods for reducing steroids.
2. Methods for formaldehydogenic steroids.
3. Methods for acetaldehydogenic steroids.
4. Methods developed by Norymberski *et al.*
5. Methods for 17 : 21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids (Porter-Silber chromogens).
6. Paper chromatographic methods.
7. Methods for aldosterone.

Mention will also be made in a separate section of problems associated with the hydrolysis of conjugated C-21 urinary adrenocortical steroids.

1. Methods for reducing Steroids.

These depend on the fact that C-21 urinary adrenocortical steroids possess an α -ketol side chain which has marked reducing properties (see Table XVII). In 1945 Talbot *et al.* described a method for determining reducing steroids in purified chloroform

extracts of urine by means of an alkaline copper reagent, while in the following year Heard and Sobel (1946) described a somewhat similar method in which phosphomolybdic acid was used for the determination of reducing power.

Methods for estimating reducing steroids in urine were of some value in the past as an index of adrenocortical function in health and disease. However, it is now clearly recognised that such techniques are far from specific in that many substances in urine other than the α -ketolic steroids affect the results obtained. In view of the development in more recent years of more reliable methods for the quantitative determination of corticosteroids in human urine, techniques depending on the reducing properties of C-21 steroids should no longer be employed in clinical practice.

2. Methods for Formaldehydogenic Steroids.

This technique was first described by Lowenstein *et al.* (1946) and was subsequently modified by other workers, including Daughaday *et al.* (1948 *a*), Corcoran and Page (1948) and Hollander *et al.* (1951). It has been widely used in clinical studies. The chemical principle involved in this method depends on the fact that any structure in which there is a primary alcoholic ($-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$) group adjacent to either a ketonic ($\text{C}=\text{O}$) group or another alcoholic group will yield formaldehyde on oxidation with periodic acid. Since the C-21 adrenocortical hormones and many of their metabolic reduction

products have an α -ketol $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ | \\ \text{C}=\text{O} \end{array} \right)$ or α -glycol $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ | \\ \text{CHOH} \end{array} \right)$

side chain, these substances, on oxidation with periodic acid, will yield formaldehyde which can be determined colorimetrically by means of chromotropic acid.

While this method is probably somewhat more specific than that depending on the reducing properties of α -ketolic steroids, it has been definitely shown that urine extracts contain substances other than steroids which yield formaldehyde on oxidation with periodic acid. Another source of error arises from the fact that solvents such as chloroform and ether, used for the extraction of the urine, may contain small amounts of formaldehydogenic impurities which are very difficult to remove completely by repeated distillation.

Marrian (1951) has emphasised the limitations, from the quantitative point of view, of methods based on formaldehydogenic steroids. It is probable that such techniques measure only a small proportion of the total corticosteroids present in urine. In view of the development of more reliable methods for the assessment of adrenocortical function, *e.g.*, techniques depending on the estimation in urine of 17-ketogenic steroids, it is unlikely that, in the future, formaldehydogenic procedures will continue to be used in clinical investigations.

3. Methods for Acetaldehydogenic Steroids.

Cox (1952) developed a quantitative method for urinary adrenocortical steroids possessing a 17 : 20-dihydroxy-20-methyl

side chain $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 - \text{CH} - \text{C} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{OH} \end{array} \right)$. He showed that steroids

with such a side chain yielded acetaldehyde on oxidation with periodic acid by cleavage of the side chain between carbon atoms 17 and 20. It was also found that the acetaldehyde liberated could be quantitatively determined by means of a colour reaction with 4-hydroxy-diphenyl and that the procedure could be applied to the estimation of acetaldehydogenic steroids in urine extracts.

It must be remembered that this technique measures only one particular group of urinary corticosteroids and therefore, by itself, it does not provide an adequate means of assessing adrenocortical activity. However, the method may be of limited value for this purpose if combined with methods specific for other types of steroids.

One of the most important steroids determined by Cox's method is the compound 5 β -pregnane-3 α : 17 α : 20 α -triol (pregnanetriol). According to Bongiovanni and his co-workers (Bongiovanni, 1953; Bongiovanni *et al.*, 1954 *b*) this substance is excreted in relatively large quantities by patients suffering from the adrenogenital syndrome.

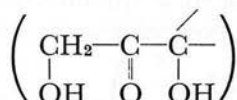
4. Methods developed by Norymberski *et al.*

These fall into three main groups:

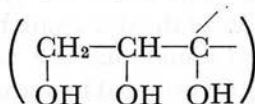
- (a) Method for 17-ketogenic steroids.
- (b) Method for total 17-hydroxysteroids.
- (c) Method for '21-deoxyketols.'

(a) METHOD FOR 17-KETOGENIC STEROIDS.—Norymberski and his co-workers (Norymberski, 1952; Norymberski *et al.*, 1953) have described a method for determining a structurally well-defined group of urinary adrenocortical steroids which they termed the 17-ketogenic steroids. The chemical principle involved in this method depends on the fact that C-21 adrenocortical hormones with certain characteristic side chains can be smoothly oxidised by means of sodium bismuthate to 17-ketosteroids. As shown in Table XVII, the three groups of compounds giving this reaction are as follows:

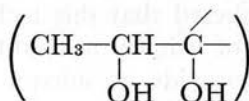
(i) 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto or 'dihydroxyacetone' steroids.



(ii) 17:20:21-trihydroxysteroids.



(iii) 17:20-dihydroxy-21-deoxysteroids.



It should be noted that steroids with the 17-hydroxy-20-keto-21-deoxy side chain $\left(\begin{array}{ccc} \text{CH}_3 & -\text{C}- & \text{C}- \\ | & || & | \\ \text{O} & \text{O} & \text{OH} \end{array} \right)$ are not so oxidised.

The oxidation with sodium bismuthate can readily be performed on human urine. If it is followed by acid hydrolysis the 17-ketosteroids originally present in urine along with those formed by the bismuthate oxidation can be extracted and estimated by the usual Callow-Zimmermann procedure. If an estimation of the 17-ketosteroids originally present is undertaken on a separate aliquot of the same urine specimen, the difference between the two results will give a value for the 17-ketosteroids formed by bismuthate oxidation from the above-mentioned three groups of C-21 17-hydroxysteroids. Norymberski *et al.*

(1953) have termed this last group of compounds the urinary '17-ketogenic steroids.' The great advantage of this technique from the quantitative point of view lies in the fact that the method circumvents the difficulties which arise from the instability of C-21 17-hydroxysteroids to hot acid.

Diczfalusy *et al.* (1955) have recently studied some of the variable factors affecting the determination of 17-ketogenic steroids in urine. They investigated in detail the steps in Norymberski's original method and introduced some minor modifications. It was shown that the principal 17-ketosteroid formed following oxidation of urine specimens by sodium bismuthate is 11-oxo Δ^1 cholanolone (see p. 289). This compound was identified by methods depending on chromatography and on infra-red spectroscopy.

(b) METHOD FOR TOTAL 17-HYDROXYSTEROIDS.—Appleby *et al.* (1955) have subsequently developed a method for the determination of the three groups of steroids mentioned under (a) together with those containing the 17-hydroxy-20-keto-21-deoxy group, *i.e.*, for *total 17-hydroxysteroids*. The procedure consists of two main steps. Firstly, the urine is treated with sodium borohydride which reduces all the ketone groups to secondary alcoholic groups. In particular the 17-hydroxy-20-keto-21-deoxy steroids are reduced to 17:20-dihydroxy-21-deoxy steroids and the 17-ketosteroids are reduced to C-19 17-hydroxysteroids. The second step consists of the oxidation of the mixture by sodium bismuthate by means of which 17-ketosteroids are formed from all four groups of C-21 17-hydroxysteroids which were originally present. Since the 17-ketosteroids present in the original urine sample have been converted into C-19 17-hydroxysteroids by the borohydride reduction and have thus been eliminated, a determination of 17-ketosteroids following the sodium bismuthate oxidation step will provide a direct measure of the total C-21 17-hydroxy adrenocortical steroids originally present.

The three groups of C-21 17-hydroxysteroids estimated by the first of Norymberski's methods and the four groups of those steroids determined by the second procedure probably include cortisone, cortisol and the most important of their metabolic products. Accordingly, either method would appear capable of providing a reasonable assessment of the cortisone and cortisol production of the adrenal cortex.

(c) METHOD FOR '21-DEOXYKETOLS.'—This technique, which measures selectively a group of compounds with the

17-hydroxy-20-keto-21-deoxy side chain $\left(\text{CH}_3 - \underset{\text{O}}{\underset{\parallel}{\text{C}}} - \underset{\text{OH}}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}} - \right)$ was

described by Appleby and Norymberski in 1954. The urinary 21-deoxyketols are converted into 17-ketosteroids by consecutive treatment with sodium bismuthate, sodium borohydride and sodium bismuthate. The final colorimetric determination depends on the Zimmermann reaction. During the procedure all the other ketonic and ketogenic compounds present in the analysed mixture are converted into alcohols and do not interfere with the final result. One of the more important steroids possessing this side chain is 17 α -hydroxypregnanolone, a compound originally isolated from urine by Dobriner *et al.* (1951) and believed by these workers to be characteristic of patients with rheumatoid arthritis.

Appleby and Norymberski (1955) have studied the excretion of 21-deoxyketols in normal and pathological conditions in man. Their results will be discussed later in this chapter.

GENERAL CONCLUSIONS REGARDING THE NORBYMERSKI METHODS.—At the time of writing, the evidence indicates that the Norymberski methods, although not yet completely satisfactory from the quantitative point of view, are probably the most reliable techniques available for the determination of corticosteroids in urine. Accordingly, if an assessment of adrenocortical function is to be made by urinary assays, the Norymberski techniques should be used in preference to such methods as those depending on the reducing or formaldehydogenic properties of adrenocortical steroids.

In the opinion of Diczfalusy *et al.* (1955) the method for urinary 17-ketogenic steroids developed by Norymberski *et al.* (1953) has the following advantages: (i) The technique circumvents the difficulties associated with the hydrolysis of C-21 17-hydroxycorticosteroids. (ii) Normal excretion values are higher than those reported in the case of previously published methods. This is important in view of the fact that the reliability criteria of the technique are probably more satisfactory than those of previous methods. (iii) The procedure measures predominantly steroidal material and the components

identified following chromatography are the expected derivatives of known urinary 17-ketogenic steroids. (iv) The method is simple and rapid and is well suited for routine use in a clinical laboratory.

5. Methods for 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids.¹

This group consists of adrenocortical steroids possessing the dihydroxyacetone side chain $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{C} - \text{C} \\ | \quad \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{OH} \end{array} \right)$ and includes

such compounds as cortisone, cortisol and tetrahydrocortisone. In 1950 Porter and Silber described a colour reaction with phenylhydrazine and sulphuric acid which is specific for compounds of this type and in 1952 Nelson and Samuels made successful use of this reaction in a method for the determination of these hormones in blood (see p. 264). Since then various attempts have been made to adapt the Porter-Silber reaction to the estimation of steroids in urine extracts. In the method described by Reddy and his co-workers (Reddy *et al.*, 1952; Reddy, 1954) the urine is acidified to pH 1 and is saturated with sodium sulphate; the corticosteroids are then extracted with butanol and the butanol extract is treated with sodium carbonate before being subjected to colorimetry by the Porter-Silber reaction. In the technique of Glenn and Nelson (1953) the corticosteroid conjugates are hydrolysed by β -glucuronidase and are extracted with chloroform; the free steroids are then chromatographed on magnesium trisilicate columns prior to colorimetric estimation.

It must be emphasised that neither of these methods is completely satisfactory from the quantitative point of view. In the technique of Glenn and Nelson (1953) the conditions of hydrolysis are probably not optimal (see p. 261) and for

¹ For estimations in which the final colorimetric determination depends on the Porter-Silber reaction, this term should be used in preference to '17-hydroxycorticosteroids.' The latter has a relatively wide connotation and includes compounds with the 17:20-ketol, 17:20-glycol and 17:20:21-triol as well as dihydroxyacetone side chain. As will be seen in Table XVII, only the last-mentioned group reacts with phenylhydrazine and sulphuric acid. In the opinion of many investigators the material giving the Porter-Silber reaction is best referred to as 'Porter-Silber chromogens.' The use of this term would appear to be justified in view of the fact that, in the relatively impure extracts obtained from blood and urine, substances other than steroids are capable of affecting the reaction.

this reason significant losses of corticosteroids occur in the course of the method. The main difficulty in the technique of Reddy *et al.* (1952) arises from the high background absorption found in the final colorimetric determination. Such high 'blank' values occur because the urine extracts are insufficiently purified prior to colorimetry. Although the Porter-Silber reaction will yield quantitatively reliable results with urine extracts which have been carefully purified by chromatographic means, the test cannot be expected to be so satisfactory when it is applied to the relatively crude material obtained in this procedure. Hertoghe *et al.* (1955) have claimed that the reliability of Reddy's method can be somewhat increased by using the correction formula described by Allen (1950) in the final colorimetric determination. In this formula the optical density is obtained by making readings at three wave-lengths. The correction is valid provided that the three optical densities of the non-specific chromogenic material lie on a straight line (see p. 164).

6. Paper Chromatographic Methods.

These were originally developed by Zaffaroni and his co-workers in the United States (Zaffaroni *et al.*, 1950; Zaffaroni and Burton, 1951; Zaffaroni, 1953) and by Bush in the United Kingdom (Bush, 1952, 1953). Such methods have made it possible for the first time to determine the individual adrenocortical steroids in urine extracts. Many solvent systems are now available which allow a satisfactory resolution of steroid mixtures on paper strips and a variety of different tests have been described which allow of the location and identification of spots due to the individual steroids. For example, steroids with a Δ^4 -3-ketone grouping such as progesterone can be identified on paper by their characteristic u.v. absorption, 17-ketosteroids by the use of the Zimmermann reaction and substances with a reducing α -ketolic side chain by means of certain 'tetrazolium' compounds which become reduced to give pink or blue colours.

As stated above the chief value of paper chromatographic methods when applied to urine extracts lies in the identification of individual steroids. Such techniques at present are not strictly quantitative although it may, in the future, be possible to adapt them for quantitative work.

7. Methods for Aldosterone.

Within recent months chemical assay methods for urinary aldosterone have been described by a number of investigators, including Neher and Wettstein (1955, 1956), Ayres *et al.* (1956, 1957 *b*) and Moolenaar (1956). At the time of writing, little information is available regarding the reliability of these procedures, and none of them have been used to any extent in clinical studies.

In the technique of Ayres *et al.* (1956, 1957 *b*) the urinary excretion of cortisol and of corticosterone as well as of aldosterone can be determined. The main steps in this method are as follows: (*a*) Acidification of the urine to *pH* 1, (*b*) continuous chloroform extraction, (*c*) chromatography on silica, (*d*) chromatography on celite, (*e*) acetylation, (*f*) chromatography on paper, (*g*) final estimation of the individual compounds by fluorimetry.

When aldosterone, cortisol and corticosterone were added to urine and extracted as described above the mean recovery figures for all three compounds ranged from 70 to 80 per cent. The method has a relatively high degree of sensitivity and will measure with reasonable precision as little as 2 to 3 $\mu\text{g.}$ of aldosterone. The chief disadvantage of the procedure lies in the fact that it is very exacting and very laborious; the method in its present form is certainly not suitable for routine use in the clinical field, although it may give useful information in selected cases.

Hydrolysis of Conjugated C-21 Urinary Corticosteroids.

This subject has been recently reviewed by Marrian (1955) and the present account is based on his conclusions.

Corticosteroids are excreted in urine partly in the free unconjugated state but mainly conjugated with glucuronic acid as glucuronides. It is also probable that small proportions of the urinary corticosteroids are conjugated with sulphuric acid and excreted as sulphates. As in the case of oestrogens and pregnanediol, it is first necessary to hydrolyse the conjugates in order to obtain the free steroid which can then be extracted by a suitable solvent, *e.g.*, chloroform. The traditional method of hydrolysis consists of heating the urine with strong mineral acid. This technique has been used with some success

to hydrolyse the conjugated forms of 17-ketosteroids, oestrogens and pregnanediol, but cannot be employed in the case of C-21 adrenocortical steroids, since the compounds in this group which are most important from the quantitative point of view are highly unstable in hot acid due to the presence of a tertiary hydroxyl group at C-17. Some investigators, in estimating reducing and formaldehydogenic steroids, attempted to overcome this difficulty by using acid hydrolysis at room temperature. This procedure is also highly unsatisfactory for, although it may hydrolyse some of the steroid sulphates, it is unlikely that it will cause any significant hydrolysis of urinary glucuronides. Indeed, it is probable (Marrian, 1951) that workers using this technique were only able to determine approximately 5 to 10 per cent. of the reducing or formaldehydogenic material present in urine extracts.

Another and definitely superior method for the hydrolysis of urinary glucuronides depends on the incubation of the urine with the enzyme β -glucuronidase, active preparations of which can be obtained from liver and spleen and from certain bacteria and molluscs. This form of enzymic hydrolysis gives a much higher yield of free C-21 urinary adrenocortical steroids than is obtained by acid hydrolysis, and the procedure is now widely used as an early step in the determination of formaldehydogenic and 17:21-dihydroxy-20-ketosteroids in urine and in the estimation of the individual corticosteroids by paper chromatographic techniques. Although the routine use of β -glucuronidase hydrolysis is probably justifiable on the grounds that it is the best method of hydrolysis at present available, it should nevertheless be borne in mind that the procedure may not be entirely trustworthy in quantitative work. Its chief disadvantages arise firstly from the presence of various glucuronidase inhibitors in urine and secondly from the fact that hydrolysis of urinary sulphates does not occur.

Little information is available on the use of the enzyme *sulphatase* for the hydrolysis of urinary steroid conjugates. However, it is already clear from the work of Savard *et al.* (1954) and of Roy (1956) that sulphatases from different sources are highly selective in their action. Accordingly, it is unlikely that one particular sulphatase preparation would be suitable for the hydrolysis of all steroid sulphates in urine,

THE ESTIMATION OF CORTICOSTEROIDS IN BLOOD BY CHEMICAL METHODS

At the present time chemical techniques for the determination of corticosteroids in blood have certain limitations from the quantitative point of view, and further methodological work is necessary before such procedures can be used with confidence in routine clinical studies. One of the chief difficulties arises from the fact that little is known regarding the relative proportion of 'free' and 'conjugated' corticosteroids in human blood. In earlier assay methods such as that of Nelson and Samuels (1952) it was assumed that corticosteroids in plasma occur mainly in the 'free' state and that, for this reason, it is unnecessary to incorporate a hydrolysis step in the procedure. However, more recent work by Bongiovanni and his co-workers (Bongiovanni, 1954; Bongiovanni *et al.*, 1954 *a*) in which hydrolysis with the enzyme β -glucuronidase was employed, has demonstrated that approximately half of the corticosteroids in plasma are present in the conjugated rather than the free form. In 1955 Weichselbaum and Margraf developed a method for the separate determination of the free and conjugated adrenocortical steroids in plasma. This technique, although somewhat laborious, is probably more reliable from the quantitative point of view than any previously proposed. Its application to clinical problems will be awaited with interest.

In most of the techniques in current use extracts containing the corticosteroids are purified by chromatography either on columns or on paper. Procedures employing column chromatography have been described by various investigators, including Nelson and Samuels (1952), Morris and Williams (1953) and Weichselbaum and Margraf (1955), while separation techniques depending on paper chromatography have been devised by Simpson *et al.* (1952), Bush and Sandberg (1953) and others. The method which has been most widely employed in the clinical field is that of Nelson and Samuels (1952), and this will be discussed in more detail below.

It can be confidently predicted that, with the passage of time, paper chromatographic methods will come into general use for the estimation of corticosteroids in blood as well as in urine. By use of such techniques it has already been possible

to show that the main adrenocortical steroids in human adrenal venous blood are cortisol and corticosterone and that the same two steroids are also present in readily detectable amounts in human peripheral blood (see p. 246). Further work along these lines should greatly increase our knowledge of adrenocortical function in health and disease and should provide valuable information in relation to the therapy of adrenocortical disorders in man.

The Method of Nelson and Samuels (1952).

The main steps in this procedure are (1) extraction of blood or plasma by an ether-chloroform mixture, (2) partition of the ether-chloroform soluble material between ethanol and hexane, (3) chromatography of the ethanol-soluble fraction on Florosil columns, (4) colorimetric determination of the 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids by a micro modification of the Porter-Silber reaction (see p. 259).

This method has been used in several laboratories, particularly in the United States, and in the hands of some investigators it has yielded information of clinical importance regarding the secretory activity of the adrenal cortex in health and disease. However, equal success in reproducing the method was not attained in all laboratories, and various modifications of the original technique were proposed (Weichselbaum *et al.*, 1953; Bayliss and Steinbeck, 1953). In 1953 Eik-Nes, Nelson and Samuels acknowledged that difficulties had been encountered by others in reproducing the method; they published additional technical details and emphasised the importance of careful preparation of materials, particularly the chromatographic adsorbent, Florosil.

Recently Harwood and Mason (1956) have made a careful and detailed study of the reliability criteria of the Nelson-Samuels method. They concluded that the technique, although difficult to perform, was reasonably satisfactory for the determination of 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids in human plasma.

It must be borne in mind that the Porter-Silber reaction, when applied to the relatively impure extracts of blood and plasma, almost certainly measures non-specific chromogenic material in addition to 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids (see p. 259). For this reason it is probably more

correct to speak of the final material estimated as 'Porter-Silber chromogens' rather than to refer to it as a specific group of steroid hormones.

THE CHOICE OF A CORTICOSTEROID ASSAY METHOD FOR CLINICAL PURPOSES

In the case of the oestrogens, pregnanediol and the 17-ketosteroids it was possible to make definite recommendations as to what method or group of methods should be used in clinical practice (see Chaps. IX, X and XII). It is much more difficult to make similar recommendations in the corticosteroid field because, at the present time, methods of assay of adrenocortical hormones and of their metabolites are less satisfactory from the quantitative point of view than are the best methods for the other steroids mentioned above. Nevertheless, an attempt will be made to draw a few tentative conclusions in the hope that these will be helpful to workers desirous of using a corticosteroid assay method in clinical investigations.

1. Bio-assay methods such as those depending on eosinopenia in mice or on glycogen deposition in the liver of rodents should no longer be employed. These techniques are expensive and laborious and do not yield results of much quantitative significance.

2. Chemical assay methods depending on the reducing and formaldehydogenic properties of adrenocortical steroids show a low degree of specificity and should now be replaced by more reliable procedures.

3. Relatively crude chemical assay methods such as that developed by Reddy *et al.* (1952) may be of value in assessing whether or not the corticosteroid excretion in urine rises following the administration of adrenocortical hormones or of ACTH but are of little value in quantitative studies.

4. One or other of the methods described by Norymberski and his co-workers is probably the most reliable procedure at present available for the estimation of corticosteroids in urine.

5. Chemical assay methods for aldosterone will probably soon replace bio-assay techniques. The method recently developed by Ayres *et al.* (1956, 1957 *b*) appears promising for use in selected cases but is too laborious for routine use.

6. In the future, assay methods for corticosteroids in blood and urine will probably depend on paper chromatographic techniques or on procedures involving radio-active steroids.

SOME GENERAL PRINCIPLES IN THE CLINICAL APPLICATION OF CORTICOSTEROID ASSAYS

This subject has recently been reviewed by Diczfalusy *et al.* (1956) and the present account is based mainly on the conclusions of these workers.

In the corticosteroid field it is convenient to divide disease states into two groups:

1. Conditions with an increased corticosteroid excretion.
2. Conditions with a decreased corticosteroid excretion.

1. Conditions with an increased Corticosteroid Excretion.

In Cushing's syndrome resulting from carcinoma of the adrenals a marked increase in corticosteroid excretion occurs. Abnormally high values are also found in patients with adrenal hyperplasia and with benign tumours of the adrenal cortex. The excretion of corticosteroids is generally raised in cases of congenital adrenal hyperplasia (see p. 301) and in conditions of 'stress.' In patients with normal adrenal function the parenteral administration of ACTH causes a marked increase in corticosteroid levels over pre-treatment values.

It is of interest that in certain disease states the urinary excretion of C-21 corticosteroids does not parallel that of the urinary 17-ketosteroids. For example, in cases of benign tumour of the adrenal cortex the corticosteroid excretion is generally abnormally high while the 17-ketosteroid output may be within, or only slightly above, the normal range. On the other hand, in patients with testicular and ovarian tumours producing symptoms of virilism, the high excretion of 17-ketosteroids is usually associated with normal corticosteroid levels in urine.

2. Conditions with a decreased Corticosteroid Excretion.

In Addison's disease very low corticosteroid values in urine are generally found, and in a fully developed case not receiving therapy zero values have been reported. In Addison's disease

in men urinary corticosteroid determinations may be more informative than 17-ketosteroid assays as the testes contribute significantly to the latter group of steroid hormones.

In Simmonds' disease very low urinary levels of corticosteroids are found, while in patients with anorexia nervosa the excretion of these substances may be within the normal range. In the opinion of Diczfalusy *et al.* (1956) corticosteroid estimations in blood and urine following the parenteral administration of ACTH may be helpful in differentiating primary adrenal failure from adrenal failure secondary to lesions of the pituitary. In Simmonds' disease stimulation of the adrenals by ACTH generally causes a rise in the corticosteroid levels in blood and urine; in Addison's disease, on the other hand, such an increase can usually not be demonstrated. Liddle *et al.* (1954) believe that the urinary estimation of 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids after ACTH administration forms the best test of adrenocortical function at present available.

THE ESTIMATION OF VARIOUS GROUPS OF CORTICOSTEROIDS IN CLINICAL CONDITIONS

In the majority of studies in the clinical field estimations of the various groups of corticosteroids have been conducted on urine rather than on blood. Recently, however, attempts have been made to develop quantitative methods which could be applied to blood, and it is reasonable to expect that in the future parallel assays involving blood and urine will become possible. Studies of this type will undoubtedly yield information of clinical importance in the investigation of adrenal disorders in man.

The following groups of adrenocortical steroids will be considered:

1. Glycogenic corticosteroids.
2. Reducing steroids.
3. Formaldehydogenic steroids.
4. Steroids determined by the methods of Norymberski *et al.*
5. 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids (Porter-Silber chromogens).
6. Aldosterone.

It has already been emphasised that assay methods which determine the first three groups of steroids are very

unsatisfactory from the quantitative point of view. The results reported under these sections are now mainly of historic interest.

1. Glycogenic Corticosteroids.

Venning and her collaborators (Venning, 1946; Venning and Kazmin, 1946) have made extensive studies on the excretion of glycogenic corticosteroids in normal and pathological conditions. Results were expressed in 'glycogenic units' per twenty-four hours, one 'unit' being equivalent to the biological activity contained in 1 μ g. of cortisone.

(a) NORMAL SUBJECTS.—Venning and Kazmin (1946) found that the excretion of glycogenic corticosteroids tended to be higher in healthy men than in healthy women of a comparable age group. Venning *et al.* (1949) showed that small quantities of glycogenic corticosteroids were excreted in the urine of newborn babies. The output gradually increased with the age of the infant.

It has been claimed (Venning, 1946) that the corticosteroid excretion shows a characteristic pattern during normal pregnancy. In the first trimester the levels are generally above those encountered in normal non-pregnant individuals, and by about the 120th day of gestation the values are again within the normal range. Subsequently another rise occurs in the third trimester, at which time the excretion of glycogenic corticosteroids is much higher than at any other time during pregnancy. A slight fall is noted prior to parturition and early in the puerperium the levels are again within the normal range.

(b) DISEASE STATES.—Most investigators have found abnormally low values in patients with Addison's disease and with panhypopituitarism. In anorexia nervosa, on the other hand, the levels are usually normal. Cases of Cushing's syndrome and of the adrenogenital syndrome, resulting either from adrenal tumours or hyperplasia, excrete very large quantities of glycogenic corticosteroids in their urine, while in patients with simple hirsutism the readings are not abnormally high.

2. Reducing Steroids.

Talbot *et al.* (1951) have reviewed their wide experience with the copper reduction method in normal and abnormal

subjects. An abnormally low output of reducing steroids was noted in most cases of Addison's disease, in panhypopituitarism and in myxoedema, while in Cushing's syndrome, whether due to adrenal tumour or adrenal hyperplasia, the excretion was generally above the normal range. There was considerable overlap between the levels found in patients with cortical tumours and those obtained in cases of hyperplasia; accordingly, it was concluded that the estimation of reducing steroids was not a satisfactory method of differentiating between the two conditions. Assays conducted in patients with a number of miscellaneous diseases, *e.g.*, essential hypertension, rheumatic fever, simple hirsutism, eunuchoidism and Turner's syndrome all gave results which lay within the normal range. On the basis of some 1,400 urinary corticosteroid determinations Talbot *et al.* (1951) concluded that the copper reduction method could be considered 'a reasonably reliable index of adrenocortical hormone production.'

Sprechler (1951) has made an extensive investigation of the excretion of reducing corticosteroids in normal individuals. The method employed was slightly modified from that described by Heard and Sobel (1946) in which phosphormolybdic acid is used for the determination of reducing power. It was found that healthy men excreted relatively more reducing steroids than healthy women of a comparable age group and that the output was lowest of all in children. There was a wide variation in excretion from one subject to another. Parviainen *et al.* (1950), also using Heard and Sobel's method, studied the excretion of reducing steroids in normal and abnormal pregnancy. They found that in normally pregnant women the readings were on the average approximately twice as high as those in non-pregnant subjects. In cases of pre-eclamptic toxæmia the urinary excretion figures were very variable and appeared to bear no relationship to the clinical features of the disease.

3. Formaldehydogenic Steroids.

Estimations of this group of steroids in clinical conditions have been reported by numerous workers, including Daughaday *et al.* (1948 *b*), Corcoran and Page (1948), Read *et al.* (1950), King and Mason (1950) and Devis (1954).

(a) NORMAL NON-PREGNANT SUBJECTS.—Daughaday *et al.*

(1948 *b*) found that in normal adults of both sexes the amount of formaldehydogenic corticosteroids excreted lay between 1 and 1.6 mg. per twenty-four hours. Read *et al.* (1950) were able to demonstrate the presence of this material in the urine of newly born infants and showed that in the second week of life the excretion rose to a level not much lower than that obtained in adults. The administration of ACTH to young infants resulted in an increased output of formaldehydogenic steroids. King and Mason (1950), in a careful study, determined the excretion of this group of steroids in healthy children aged from one to fifteen years. Values increased by 0.01 mg. per twenty-four hours for each increase in age of one year; in the older children the levels were very similar to those found in adults.

(*b*) DISEASE STATES.—The results obtained in various diseases show the same general trends as those found by Talbot *et al.* (1951), using the copper reduction method. In patients with Addison's disease Daughaday *et al.* (1948 *b*) found abnormally low titres, the levels usually being less than 0.65 mg. per twenty-four hours. Readings below the normal range were also found in cases of panhypopituitarism, thyrotoxicosis and myxoedema. On the other hand, patients with Cushing's syndrome excreted abnormally large quantities, and in one case reported by Daughaday *et al.* (1948 *b*) the output of formaldehydogenic steroids was 23 mg. per twenty-four hours.

(*c*) NORMAL AND ABNORMAL PREGNANCY.—Tobian (1949) estimated the excretion of formaldehydogenic steroids under these conditions. The figures obtained in normally pregnant women were in the same range as in normal non-pregnant individuals. Elevated values were, however, found in a proportion of patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia and were especially frequent in subjects showing oedema. There was no apparent correlation between the excretion of formaldehydogenic steroids on the one hand and the degree of hypertension or albuminuria on the other.

Venning *et al.* (1949) have compared the results obtained by a biological method of assay of urinary corticosteroids with those found by two chemical assay methods. The biological test depended on the deposition of glycogen in the liver of adrenalectomised mice while the two chemical procedures

were those involving copper reduction and formaldehyde formation. In most of the normal individuals studied the copper reduction method yielded higher values than the formaldehydogenic method. Many examples were found both in normal and abnormal conditions in which there was considerable disagreement from the quantitative point of view between the estimates obtained by bio-assay on the one hand and by the two chemical assays on the other. These divergent results, which can be explained on a methodological basis, emphasise the necessity for the abandonment of these three assay methods for urinary corticosteroids and for their replacement in clinical investigations by more reliable procedures.

4. Steroids determined by the Methods of Norymberski *et al.*

(a) 17-ketogenic Steroids.

(i) NORMAL NON-PREGNANT SUBJECTS.—The urinary excretion of 17-ketogenic steroids in normal individuals has recently been studied by a small number of workers in Europe and the United Kingdom, including Norymberski *et al.* (1953), Diczfalusy *et al.* (1955), Prunty (1956) and Moxham and Nabarro (1956). In their original paper Norymberski *et al.* (1953) reported that in normal men the figures ranged from 9.6 to 19.2 mg. per twenty-four hours with a mean value of 13.2. In normal women the output was generally lower, the readings lying between 4.6 and 13.4 mg. per twenty-four hours with a mean figure of 8.9. In healthy children of both sexes varying in age from three to six years the values ranged from 2.3 to 3.8 mg. per twenty-four hours. Figures quantitatively similar to those of Norymberski *et al.* (1953) were obtained by subsequent workers. However, the total number of determinations so far reported in the literature is as yet too small to establish with certainty the upper and lower limits of urinary 17-ketogenic steroid excretion in healthy subjects at different ages.

(ii) DISEASE STATES.—At the time of writing little information is available in the literature on the excretion of 17-ketogenic steroids in pathological conditions. Estimations in a small number of patients with endocrine diseases have been reported by Diczfalusy *et al.* (1955), Prunty (1956) and Moxham and

Nabarro (1956). Very low readings have been obtained in cases of untreated Addison's disease, in panhypopituitarism and in patients subjected to hypophysectomy. In the few cases of Cushing's syndrome so far studied the values have usually been considerably higher than those encountered in healthy subjects.

Norymberski *et al.* (1953) found that in patients with rheumatoid arthritis and with ankylosing spondylitis the output of urinary 17-ketogenic steroids was appreciably lower than in normal individuals. In the male cases with ankylosing spondylitis the figures lay between 6.2 and 12.8 mg. per twenty-four hours. In male patients with rheumatoid arthritis the range was from 7.3 to 8.4 mg. per twenty-four hours and in female patients with the same disease the levels varied from 3.1 to 10.8 mg. per twenty-four hours. Treatment of rheumatic subjects with salicylates or with phenylbutazone did not affect the excretion of urinary 17-ketogenic steroids. A great increase in the output of these steroids was noted in urine specimens obtained immediately after surgical operations.

(iii) NORMAL AND ABNORMAL PREGNANCY.—Scandrett (1957) showed that in normally pregnant women approaching term the excretion of 17-ketogenic steroids was approximately twice that in non-pregnant subjects; following delivery a rapid fall in output occurred. In a small number of patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia Scandrett (1957) found excretion values appreciably higher than those in normally pregnant women. These observations suggest that the secretion of adrenocortical hormones increases as pregnancy advances and that it is especially high in pre-eclamptic toxæmia.

(iv) URINARY 17-KETOGENIC STEROID ASSAYS AS AN INDEX OF ADRENOCORTICAL FUNCTION.—Prunty (1956) has investigated the functional activity of the adrenal cortex in man by measuring the urinary excretion of 17-ketogenic steroids and of 17-ketosteroids before and after the administration of a standard dose of ACTH. The total duration of the test was six days. On the first two days base-line levels were determined; subsequently ACTH was injected intramuscularly in a dosage of 20 'clinical units' twice per day for four days.

In patients with Addison's disease it was found that the excretion of 17-ketogenic steroids was abnormally low during

the control period and that no rise in output occurred after the administration of ACTH. In cases of Cushing's syndrome basal levels of 17-ketogenic steroids were often above the normal range and a sharp rise in excretion occurred after the injection of the hormone. Studies were also made in a group of patients with a condition which has been termed *basal hypo-adrenal corticalism*. In cases of this type who are usually suspected on clinical grounds to be suffering from either Addison's disease or panhypopituitarism, adrenocortical function is subnormal and the nutritional status is often poor. Such individuals show abnormally low levels of urinary 17-ketogenic steroids during the control period but give a rapid and large increase in urinary steroid output after the administration of ACTH. Prunty (1956) has suggested that in patients with basal hypo-adrenal corticalism the level of circulating ACTH is too low to maintain normal steroid excretion but is not low enough to cause adrenocortical atrophy sufficient to produce a failure of response to ACTH.

(b) Total 17-hydroxycorticosteroids.

Moxham and Nabarro (1956) and Borth *et al.* (1957 *a*) have recently studied the excretion of this group of steroids in normal individuals. The results obtained by Borth *et al.* (1957 *a*) in approximately 170 subjects are shown in Figs. 56 and 57.

It will be noted that the mean excretion in males at different ages tends to be higher than that in females. In both sexes the excretion rises sharply at the time of puberty and reaches a maximum at about the age of thirty. With advancing years the excretion of total 17-hydroxycorticosteroids falls progressively.

Borth *et al.* (1957 *b*) have also estimated the urinary excretion of total 17-hydroxycorticosteroids during the normal menstrual cycle. Cyclic variations in output were not observed, and the authors concluded that the adrenocortical hormones played little or no part in regulating the mechanisms which govern the rhythmic events occurring during the normal menstrual cycle.

Appleby and Norymberski (1957) have found that the output of this group of steroids increases gradually during normal pregnancy and attains a maximum at the ninth month of gestation. Following parturition the excretion decreases and

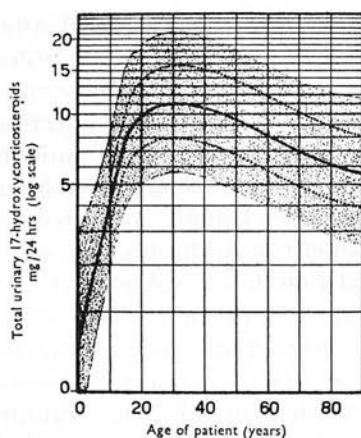


FIG. 56

Fig. 56.—Urinary excretion of total 17-hydroxycorticosteroids in healthy male subjects of average body weight and height. The continuous line represents the mean excretion value; the shaded area represents the fiducial range ($P=0.95$). (From Borth *et al.*, 1957 *a*.)

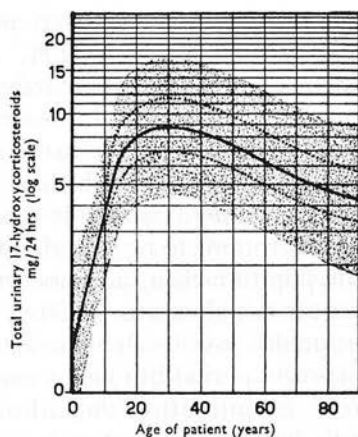


FIG. 57

Fig. 57.—Urinary excretion of total 17-hydroxycorticosteroids in healthy female subjects of average body weight and height. The continuous line represents the mean excretion value; the shaded area represents the fiducial range ($P=0.95$). (From Borth *et al.*, 1957 *a*.)

at the end of the first week of the puerperium the levels have returned to those normally encountered in non-pregnant subjects.

(c) **17-hydroxy-20-keto-21-deoxy Steroids** (21-deoxyketols).

One of the most important members of this group of steroids from the quantitative point of view is 17α -hydroxypregnanolone. Dobriner *et al.* (1951) stated that this substance was excreted by patients suffering from rheumatoid arthritis but was not present in the urine of normal individuals. This finding was not confirmed in subsequent investigations. Recently Appleby and Norymberski (1955) have studied the urinary excretion of 21-deoxyketols in normal subjects and in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. They found that the mean excretion of this group of steroids did not differ significantly in the two groups of patients and concluded that an abnormally high excretion of 21-deoxyketols was not characteristic of cases of rheumatoid arthritis.

Appleby and Norymberski (1957) have shown that in

normal pregnancy the excretion of 21-deoxyketols rises progressively. At the fourth month the mean figure was 0.58 mg. per twenty-four hours and by the ninth month the output had increased to 1.34 mg. per twenty-four hours. After parturition a rapid decrease in excretion occurred and within approximately one week of delivery the levels were similar to those normally found in non-pregnant subjects. Detailed studies of the excretion of 21-deoxyketols in the various types of abnormal pregnancy have not yet been conducted. The results of such an investigation will be awaited with interest.

5. 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids (Porter-Silber chromogens).

(a) Estimations in Blood.

Most investigators have employed the technique described by Nelson and Samuels (1952) or some modification thereof (see p. 264).

(i) NORMAL NON-PREGNANT SUBJECTS.—Nelson *et al.* (1951) found that in normal individuals of both sexes the concentration of 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids ranged from 4 to 10 $\mu\text{g.}$ per 100 ml. of whole blood. The administration of ACTH to normal subjects caused a sharp increase in the blood concentration of this group of steroids. With a single intravenous injection of ACTH the steroid level attained its maximum in approximately one hour and returned to the pre-injection value within three hours. When the hormone was administered intramuscularly the maximal level was reached in three hours and the concentration had returned to normal in four to six hours. In the opinion of Nelson *et al.* (1951) the continuous intravenous infusion of ACTH was the most efficient mode of exhibition of the hormone. This resulted in a steady rise in blood corticosteroid concentration to levels which at the end of twenty-four hours were higher than those achieved by any other method of administration.

Gemzell (1953, 1954) has conducted extensive studies with the Nelson-Samuels technique in a variety of clinical conditions. In a series of healthy young adults of both sexes the mean plasma concentration of 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids was $6.6 \pm 0.9 \mu\text{g.}^1$ per 100 ml. Under normal conditions the level of these steroids showed some diurnal variation, the titre

¹ Standard deviation of a single observation.

being relatively higher during the first part of the day and decreasing to a minimum by the late evening.

(ii) DISEASE STATES.—In patients with Addison's disease who were not receiving therapy, Nelson *et al.* (1951) showed that the concentration of 17 : 21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids fell to zero. In cases of rheumatoid arthritis or of acute rheumatic fever the concentrations were within normal limits, while in patients suffering from severe or fulminant diseases an increased blood concentration of these hormones was demonstrable only in the terminal phases of the illness. In cases of Cushing's syndrome, irrespective of aetiology, the titre is generally above the normal range.

Franksson *et al.* (1954) have studied the plasma levels of 17 : 21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids in patients after major surgery. All cases showed elevated titres in the immediate post-operative period; in uncomplicated cases the levels fell to normal within approximately thirty-six hours. In patients showing post-operative shock very high readings were found and these persisted as long as the shock was present. In individuals with prostatic carcinoma who had been treated by bilateral adrenalectomy, Gemzell and Franksson (1953) showed that the daily administration of 50 mg. of cortisone acetate by the oral route was sufficient to maintain the levels of plasma corticosteroids within the normal range. However, if the cortisone therapy was withdrawn the blood hormone content fell precipitously and within forty to sixty hours zero levels were encountered.

(iii) NORMAL PREGNANCY.—Various workers, including Gemzell (1953), Bayliss *et al.* (1955) and Robinson *et al.* (1955) have determined the plasma concentration of 17 : 21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids throughout normal pregnancy. The results obtained by Gemzell (1953) are shown in Fig. 58.

It will be noted that the plasma corticosteroid concentration increased significantly with the duration of pregnancy and that in the third trimester the values were approximately four times those found in normal non-pregnant subjects. Immediately following parturition a further rise occurred and at this time levels greater than 30 μ g. per 100 ml. were frequently encountered. The mean post-partum concentration of corticosteroids in primiparæ was significantly higher than that in multiparæ but no correlation could be demonstrated between

the corticosteroid levels on the one hand and the age of the mother, duration of labour and weight and sex of the infant on the other. Soon after parturition a fall in plasma corticosteroid levels occurred and approximately one week after delivery the titres were again within the range found normally in non-pregnant subjects.

Bayliss *et al.* (1955), in a careful investigation, undertook

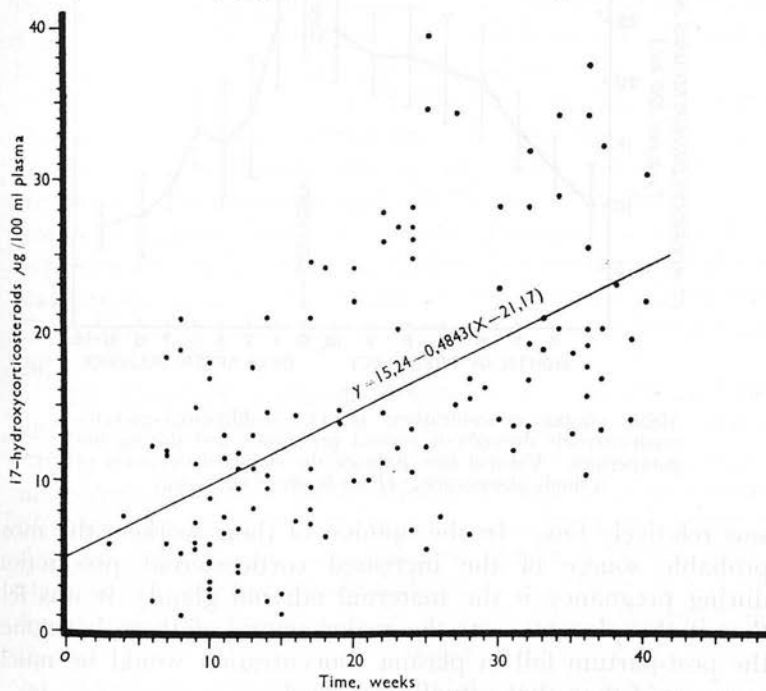


FIG. 58

Correlation between the concentration of 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids in the blood of pregnant women and the duration of pregnancy in weeks. Conception is assumed to have occurred at zero time. (From Gemzell, 1953.)

serial estimations of plasma 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids in thirty normally pregnant women. Their results, which from the quantitative point of view agree reasonably well with those of Gemzell (1953), are shown in Fig. 59.

It will again be seen that the mean plasma corticosteroid level rose progressively during pregnancy and that after delivery the titre fell, returning to normal after approximately one week. Bayliss *et al.* (1955) noted that the readings varied greatly

from one patient to another at comparable times of pregnancy but were unable to demonstrate any clinical differences between patients who showed high levels and those in whom the titre

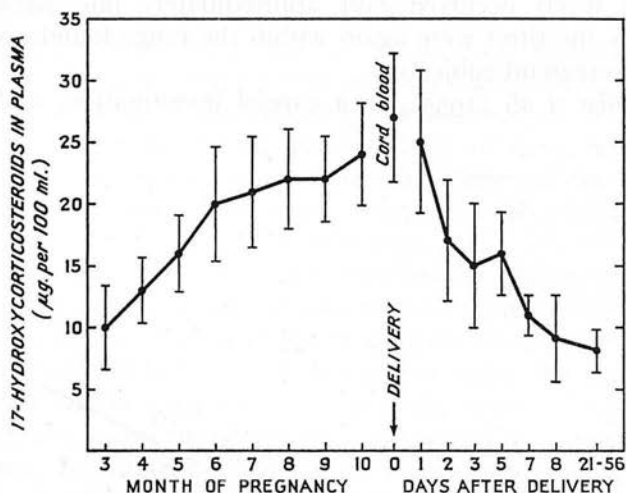


FIG. 59

Mean plasma concentrations of 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids throughout normal pregnancy and during the puerperium. Vertical bars indicate the standard deviation of a single observation. (From Bayliss *et al.*, 1955.)

was relatively low. In the opinion of these workers the most probable source of the increased corticosteroid production during pregnancy is the maternal adrenal gland; it was felt that if the placenta was the major source of these hormones the post-partum fall in plasma concentration would be much more rapid than that actually observed.

(b) Estimations in Urine.

In such estimations most workers have employed the technique described by Reddy *et al.* (1952) or some modification thereof (see p. 259).

(i) NORMAL SUBJECTS.—The normal range of excretion has varied widely in the hands of different investigators. Liddle *et al.* (1954) reported values ranging from 5 to 16 mg. per twenty-four hours with a mean figure of 10 mg., while Jenkins *et al.* (1955) found levels varying between 1 and 10 mg. per twenty-four hours with a mean excretion figure of 5.2 mg. These divergent results can probably be explained on a

methodological basis. Recently Moxham and Nabarro (1956) have reported that a good correlation exists between the excretion of 17 : 21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids on the one hand and the output of urinary 17-ketogenic steroids on the other.

(ii) DISEASE STATES.—In untreated Addison's disease and in patients after bilateral adrenalectomy Liddle *et al.* (1954) found values ranging from zero to 5 mg. per twenty-four hours. In cases of Cushing's syndrome, on the other hand, the readings lay between 15 and 70 mg. per twenty-four hours.

Ely *et al.* (1955) have studied the output of 17 : 21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids in children with acute rheumatic fever before, during and after various types of treatment. In untreated patients the levels of excretion were similar to those found in normal children. Treatment by cortisone caused a rise in corticosteroid excretion and the rise was proportional to the dosage of the hormone administered. On cessation of hormonal therapy a rapid fall in corticosteroid output occurred.

(iii) URINARY DETERMINATIONS OF 17 : 21-DIHYDROXY-20-KETO-CORTICOSTEROIDS AS A TEST OF ADRENAL FUNCTION.—Liddle *et al.* (1954) have studied adrenocortical activity in normal and pathological conditions by estimating the excretion of these steroids after the intravenous infusion of a standard dose of ACTH over an eight-hour period. These workers claimed that this test would differentiate patients with cortical hyper- or hypo-function from normal individuals and that, in this respect, it was more reliable than methods depending on 17-ketosteroid excretion, electrolyte excretion and eosinophil counts. In subjects with normal adrenal function the urinary output of corticosteroids increased approximately threefold over control levels in the twenty-four hours following the ACTH administration. In cases of adrenal hyperfunction, from whatever cause, the maximal excretion was on all occasions greater than that of normal individuals, while in patients with Addison's disease little or no rise in urinary corticosteroid excretion occurred.

6. Aldosterone.

In 1950 Deming and Luetscher reported that chloroform extracts prepared from the urine of patients with œdema

caused sodium retention in adrenalectomised rats while similar extracts from normal subjects failed to elicit this effect. Luetscher and his collaborators (Luetscher *et al.*, 1952, 1954) conducted a thorough investigation into the nature of this salt-retaining hormone and demonstrated that it was identical with aldosterone, the hormone recently isolated by Simpson *et al.* (1953) from ox adrenal extracts.

During the past few years various workers have attempted to measure the urinary excretion of aldosterone in normal and pathological conditions in man. Although the assay methods now available are far from satisfactory from the quantitative point of view, clinical information of some interest has already been obtained. The field of aldosterone assay is at present a very fluctuant one in which rapid advances can be expected as more reliable methods of estimation are developed. For a critical appraisal of the status of aldosterone assays in clinical practice up to 1955 the reader is referred to a review article by Gaunt *et al.* (1955).

As emphasised by Bartter *et al.* (1956), Neher and Wettstein (1956) and others, the aldosterone content of urine in health and disease is markedly affected by such factors as the state of hydration of the patient and the dietary intake of sodium and potassium. These observations make it essential to obtain accurate information on a patient's water and electrolyte balance before conducting urinary assays of aldosterone.

(a) NORMAL NON-PREGNANT SUBJECTS.—Variable results have been reported on the excretion of urinary aldosterone in normal individuals. This is scarcely surprising in view of the unsatisfactory nature of the assay methods at present in use. One of the more detailed studies is that of Venning *et al.* (1956). These workers used a bio-assay method depending on the excretion of sodium in adrenalectomised rats; the urine was hydrolysed by β -glucuronidase and extracted with chloroform. Using this technique, it was possible to demonstrate aldosterone activity in both normal males and females. Serial determinations showed that there was considerable day-to-day variation in the excretion of aldosterone in the same individual.

Probably the most reliable estimates yet published of the urinary aldosterone content in healthy male subjects are those of Ayres *et al.* (1956), who used a chemical assay method which is described on page 261. These workers reported that the

mean urinary excretion of aldosterone in nineteen subjects was 10.5 μ g. per twenty-four hours and that the figures ranged from 4.6 to 18.9 μ g. per twenty-four hours.

(b) DISEASE STATES.—(i) NEPHROTIC SYNDROME.—All investigators report abnormally high excretion values in patients with this disease. According to Luetscher *et al.* (1954) the quantities of aldosterone present in the urine of such patients are sufficiently large to make this type of human urine the best natural source of the hormone. Present evidence indicates that the rate of excretion of aldosterone is not related to the urine volume and is independent of the degree of proteinuria (Luetscher and Johnson, 1954). Following clinical improvement with diminution in the degree of œdema, the urinary output of aldosterone decreases.

(ii) CARDIAC FAILURE WITH ŒDEMA.—Abnormally high titres of aldosterone have been reported in the majority of cases studied (Singer and Wener, 1953; Cope and Garcia-Llaurado, 1954). The ætiology of the cardiac failure appears to be of little importance in relation to the quantities of aldosterone excreted.

(iii) ESSENTIAL HYPERTENSION.—Genest *et al.* (1956), in a careful investigation, reported that patients with essential hypertension excreted significantly larger quantities of urinary aldosterone than did healthy subjects. These workers put forward the view that one of the ætiological factors in this disease might be a mild but long-continued hypersecretion of aldosterone. This interesting suggestion requires further study.

(iv) CIRRHOSIS OF THE LIVER.—In portal cirrhosis complicated by ascites, very high titres are generally found (Chart and Shipley, 1953; Pechet *et al.*, 1954). According to Chart and Shipley (1953) the readings may lie within the normal range when ascites is absent.

(v) ADDISON'S DISEASE.—In a case reported by Luetscher and Axelrad (1954) no activity was detected in urine extracts. Zero levels were also encountered in two patients after bilateral adrenalectomy. These findings were taken as evidence that the adrenal cortex was the site of production of the salt-retaining hormone.

(vi) PANHYPOPITUITARISM.—In two cases investigated by Luetscher and Axelrad (1954) the readings were within the

normal range, although the excretion of pituitary gonadotrophins was abnormally low. This observation supports the currently held view that the sodium-regulating function of the adrenal cortex is largely independent of the pituitary.

(vii) 'PRIMARY ALDOSTERONISM.'—This term was first used by Conn (1955) to denote a syndrome characterised by high levels of aldosterone in urine, hypokalaemia, hypernatraemia, alkalosis, polyuria, intermittent tetany, muscular weakness and hypertension. Patients with a similar clinical picture have been subsequently described by Mader and Iseri (1955), Chalmers *et al.* (1956) and van Buchem *et al.* (1956). In the few cases so far reported, the adrenal glands have shown evidence either of tumour or of hyperplasia, and it has been suggested that the condition results from an increased production of aldosterone by the adrenal cortex. Further work is necessary to establish whether this syndrome definitely exists as a separate entity.

(c) NORMAL AND ABNORMAL PREGNANCY.—The urinary excretion of aldosterone during normal pregnancy has been investigated by Gordon *et al.* (1954), Martin and Mills (1956) and Venning and Dyrenfurth (1956). In a recent paper Venning and Dyrenfurth (1956) have shown that the hormone is excreted in increasing amounts during the gestation period and that in the second and third trimesters the readings are much higher than those in non-pregnant individuals. After delivery a rapid fall to non-pregnant levels occurs. According to Venning and Dyrenfurth (1956) aldosterone occurs in urine throughout pregnancy, mainly in the conjugated form as aldosterone glucuronide.

Reports are at present conflicting with respect to the excretion of aldosterone in patients with pre-eclamptic toxæmia. Further information on this important subject must await the development of more reliable assay methods for the hormone.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Corticosteroids in urine should be estimated by chemical rather than by biological methods. At the time of writing there is no assay method which is completely satisfactory for the quantitative determination of these hormones and their metabolites in urine.

Of the chemical techniques at present available, probably the best for clinical purposes are those developed by Norymberski *et al.* Methods depending on the reducing or formaldehydogenic properties of adrenocortical steroids should no longer be used. It is probable that in the future assay methods for corticosteroids in body fluids will depend either on paper chromatographic techniques or on procedures employing radio-active steroids.

Methods for the quantitative determination of aldosterone in urine are at present at a very early stage of development. Much further work is necessary before such techniques can be used routinely in the clinical field.

The estimation of corticosteroids in blood presents a difficult problem from the methodological point of view. The technique recently described by Weichselbaum *et al.* (1953) for the separate determination of the free and conjugated adrenocortical steroids in plasma merits further application in clinical studies.

Corticosteroid assays in body fluids may be of diagnostic value in conditions of 'stress,' and in such diseases as Cushing's syndrome, the adrenogenital syndrome, Addison's disease and panhypopituitarism. The estimation of corticosteroids in blood and urine after the administration of ACTH forms a useful test of adrenocortical function in man.

In normal pregnancy the urinary excretion and plasma concentration of corticosteroids rise progressively. Soon after delivery a rapid fall in the titre occurs, and within a few days the levels are in the range normally encountered in non-pregnant subjects.

The aldosterone content of urine is influenced markedly by the state of hydration and the electrolyte balance of the patient. Abnormally high levels of excretion of aldosterone have been reported in such conditions as the nephrotic syndrome, cardiac failure with oedema and portal cirrhosis with ascites.

REFERENCES

- ALLEN, W. M. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 71.
APPLEBY, J. I., GIBSON, G., NORBYMERSKI, J. K. & STUBBS, R. D. (1955). *Biochem. J.* **60**, 453.
APPLEBY, J. I. & NORBYMERSKI, J. K. (1954). *Biochem. J.* **58**, 29.
APPLEBY, J. I. & NORBYMERSKI, J. K. (1955). *Ann. Rheum. Dis.* **14**, 172.
APPLEBY, J. I. & NORBYMERSKI, J. K. (1957). *J. Endocrin.* **15**, 310.
AYRES, P. J., GARROD, O., PEARLMAN, W. H., SIMPSON, S. A., TAIT, J. F. & WALKER, G. (1957 *a*). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 10, p. 309 London: Churchill.

- AYRES, P. J., GARROD, O., SIMPSON, S. A. & TAIT, J. F. (1957 b). *Biochem. J.* **65**, 639.
- AYRES, P. J., SIMPSON, S. A. & TAIT, J. F. (1956). *J. Endocrinol.* **13**, proc. xxii.
- BARTTER, F. C., LIDDLE, G. W., DUNCAN, L. E. & DELEA, C. (1956). *J. clin. Invest.* **35**, 688.
- BAYLISS, R. I. S., BROWNE, J. C. M., ROUND, B. P. & STEINBECK, A. W. (1955). *Lancet*, **1**, 62.
- BAYLISS, R. I. S. & STEINBECK, A. W. (1953). *Biochem. J.* **54**, 523.
- BIBILE, S. W. (1953). *J. Endocrinol.* **9**, 357.
- BONGIOVANNI, A. M. (1953). *Bull. Johns Hopk. Hosp.* **92**, 244.
- BONGIOVANNI, A. M. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 341.
- BONGIOVANNI, A. M., EBERLEIN, W. R., GRUMBACH, M. M., VAN WYK, J. J. & CLAYTON, G. (1954 a). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **87**, 282.
- BONGIOVANNI, A. M., EBERLEIN, W. R. & CARA, J. (1954 b). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 409.
- BORTH, R. (1956). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **22**, 125.
- BORTH, R., LINDER, A. & RIONDEL, A. (1957 a). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **25**, 33.
- BORTH, R., LUNENFELD, B. & DE WATTEVILLE, H. (1957 b). *Fertil. Steril.* **8**, 233.
- VAN BUCHEM, F. S. P., DOORENBOS, H. & ELINGS, H. S. (1956). *Lancet*, **2**, 335.
- BUSH, I. E. (1952). *Biochem. J.* **50**, 37.
- BUSH, I. E. (1953). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 5, p. 203. London: Churchill.
- BUSH, I. E. & SANDBERG, A. A. (1953). *J. biol. Chem.* **205**, 783.
- BUSH, I. E., SWALE, J. & PATTERSON, J. (1956). *Biochem. J.* **62**, 16P.
- CHALMERS, T. M., FITZGERALD, M. G., JAMES, A. H. & SCARBOROUGH, H. (1956). *Lancet*, **1**, 127.
- CHART, J. J. & SHIPLEY, E. G. (1953). *J. clin. Invest.* **32**, 560.
- CHEN, C. & TEWELL, H. E., JR. (1951). *Fed. Proc.* **10**, 377.
- CONN, J. W. (1955). *J. Lab. clin. med.* **45**, 3.
- COPE, C. L. & GARCIA-LLAURADO, J. G. (1954). *Brit. med. J.* **1**, 1290.
- CORCORAN, A. C. & PAGE, I. H. (1948). *J. Lab. clin. med.* **33**, 1326.
- COX, R. I. (1952). *Biochem. J.* **52**, 339.
- DAUGHADAY, W. H., JAFFE, H. & WILLIAMS, R. H. (1948 a). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **8**, 186.
- DAUGHADAY, W. H., JAFFE, H. & WILLIAMS, R. H. (1948 b). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **8**, 244.
- DEMING, Q. B. & LUETSCHER, J. A., JR. (1950). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **73**, 171.
- DEVIS, R. (1954). *Gynec. et Obstét.* **53**, 57.
- DICZFALUSY, E., BIRKE, G. & PLANTIN, L.-O. (1956). *Klin. Wschr.* **34**, 225.
- DICZFALUSY, E., PLANTIN, L.-O., BIRKE, G. & WESTMAN, A. (1955). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **18**, 356.
- DOBRINER, K., LIEBERMAN, S., WILSON, H., DUNHAM, M., SOMMERVILLE, I. F. & RHOADS, C. P. (1951). In *Proceedings of Second Clinical ACTH Conference*, vol. 1, p. 65. Ed., J. R. Mote. New York: Blakiston.
- DORFMAN, R. I. (1950). In *Hormone Assay*, p. 325. Ed., C. W. Emmers. New York: Academic Press.
- DORFMAN, R. I. (1953). *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* **8**, 87.
- DORFMAN, R. I., ROSS, E. & SHIPLEY, R. A. (1946). *Endocrinology*, **38**, 178.
- DORFMAN, R. I., POTTS, A. M. & FEIL, M. L. (1947). *Endocrinology*, **41**, 464.
- EGGLESTON, N. M., JOHNSTON, B. J. & DOBRINER, K. (1946). *Endocrinology*, **38**, 197.
- EIK-NES, K., NELSON, D. H. & SAMUELS, L. T. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 1280.
- ELY, R. S., AINGER, L. E., SEELY, J. R., DONE, A. K. & KELLEY, V. C. (1955). *J. clin. Endocr. Metab.* **15**, 523.
- FORBES, A. P., GRISWOLD, G. C. & ALBRIGHT, F. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 230.
- FRANKSSON, C., GEMZELL, C. A. & EULER, U. S. v. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 608.
- GAUNT, R., RENZI, A. A. & CHART, J. J. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 621.
- GEMZELL, C. A. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 898.
- GEMZELL, C. A. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **17**, 100.
- GEMZELL, C. A. & FRANKSSON, C. (1953). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **12**, 218.

- GENEST, J., LEMIEUX, G., DARIGNON, A., KOIW, E., NOWOCZYNSKI, W. & STEYERMARK, P. (1956). *Science*, **123**, 503.
- GLENN, E. M., & NELSON, D. H. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 911.
- GORDON, E. S., CHART, J. J., HAGEDORN, D. & SHIPLEY, E. G. (1954). *Obst. Gyn. N.Y.* **4**, 39.
- GORNALL, A. G. & MAGDONALD, M. P. (1953). *J. biol. Chem.* **201**, 279.
- HARWOOD, C. T. & MASON, J. W. (1956). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **16**, 790.
- HEARD, R. D. H. & SOBEL, H. (1946). *J. biol. Chem.* **165**, 687.
- HERTOEGHE, J., CRABBÉ, J., DUCKERT-MAULBETSCH, A. & MULLER, A. F. (1955). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **20**, 139.
- HOLLANDER, V. P., DIMAURO, S. & PEARSON, O. H. (1951). *Endocrinology*, **49**, 617.
- HUDSON, P. B. & LOMBARDO, M. E. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 324.
- JENKINS, D., FORSHAM, P. H., LAIDLAW, J. C., REDDY, W. J. & THORN, G. W. (1955). *Amer. J. Med.* **18**, 3.
- KING, N. B. & MASON, H. L. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 479.
- LIDDLE, G. W., ISLAND, D., RINFRETT, A. P. & FORSHAM, P. H. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 839.
- LORAIN, J. A. (1952). *J. Obstet. Gynaec. Brit. Emp.* **59**, 536.
- LOWENSTEIN, B. E., CORCORAN, A. C. & PAGE, I. H. (1946). *Endocrinology*, **39**, 82.
- LUETSCHER, J. A., JR. & AXELRAD, B. J. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 1086.
- LUETSCHER, J. A., JR., JOHNSON, B. B. & DEMING, Q. B. (1952). In Ciba Foundation *Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 4, p. 530. London: Churchill.
- LUETSCHER, J. A., JR. & JOHNSON, B. B. (1954). *J. clin. Invest.* **33**, 276.
- LUETSCHER, J. A., JR., NEHER, R. & WETTSTEIN, A. (1954). *Experientia*, **10**, 456.
- MADER, I. J. & ISERI, L. T. (1955). *Amer. J. Med.* **19**, 976.
- MARRIAN, G. F. (1951). *J. Endocrinol.* **7**, proc. xix.
- MARRIAN, G. F. (1955). In *Proceedings of Third International Congress in Biochemistry*, p. 205. Brussels.
- MARTIN, J. D. & MILLS, I. H. (1956). *Brit. med. J.* **2**, 571.
- MOOLENAAR, A. J. (1956). *Lancet*, **2**, 556.
- MORRIS, C. J. O. R. & WILLIAMS, D. C. (1953). *Biochem. J.* **54**, 470.
- MOXHAM, A. & NABARRO, J. D. N. (1956). *J. clin. Path.* **9**, 351.
- NEHER, R. & WETTSTEIN, A. (1955). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **18**, 386.
- NEHER, R. & WETTSTEIN, A. (1956). *J. clin. Invest.* **35**, 800.
- NELSON, D. H. & SAMUELS, L. T. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **12**, 519.
- NELSON, D. H., SAMUELS, L. T., WILLARDSON, D. G. & TYLER, F. H. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 1021.
- NORYMBERSKI, J. K. (1952). *Nature, Lond.* **170**, 1074.
- NORYMBERSKI, J. K., STUBBS, R. D. & WEST, H. F. (1953). *Lancet*, **1**, 1276.
- PARVIAINEN, S., SOIVA, K. & VARTIAINEN, S. (1950). *Acta obstet. gynec. scand.* **29**, Suppl. 5.
- PECHET, M. M., DUNCAN, L. E., JR., LIDDLE, G. W. & BARTTER, F. C. (1954). *J. clin. Invest.* **33**, 957.
- PORTER, C. C. & SILBER, R. H. (1950). *J. biol. Chem.* **185**, 201.
- PRUNTY, F. T. G. (1956). *Brit. med. J.* **2**, 615.
- READ, C. H., VENNING, E. H. & RIPSTEIN, M. P. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 845.
- REDDY, W. J. (1954). *Metabolism*, **3**, 489.
- REDDY, W. J., JENKINS, D. & THORN, G. W. (1952). *Metabolism*, **1**, 511.
- REICHSTEIN, T. (1950). *Chimia*, **4**, 21.
- REICHSTEIN, T. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **17**, 375.
- ROBINSON, H. J., BERNHARD, W. G., GRUBIN, H., WANNER, H., SENEKOW, W. & SILBER, R. H. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 317.
- ROMANOFF, E. B., HUDSON, P. & PINCUS, G. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 1546.
- ROY, A. B. (1956). *Biochem. J.* **62**, 41.
- SAVARD, K., BAGNOLI, E. & DORFMAN, R. I. (1954). *Fed. Proc.* **13**, 289.
- SAYERS, G. (1950). *Physiol. Rev.* **30**, 241.
- SCANDRETT, F. J. (1957). Personal communication.
- SELYE, H. & SCHENKER, V. (1938). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.* **39**, 518.
- SIMPSON, S. A. & TAIT, J. F. (1952). *Endocrinology*, **50**, 150.
- SIMPSON, S. A., TAIT, J. F. & BUSH, I. E. (1952). *Lancet*, **2**, 226.

- SIMPSON, S. A., TAIT, J. F., WETTSTEIN, A., NEHER, R., VON EUW, J. & REICHSTEIN, T. (1953). *Experientia*, **9**, 333.
- SIMPSON, S. A., TAIT, J. F., WETTSTEIN, A., NEHER, R., VON EUW, J., SCHINDLER, O. & REICHSTEIN, T. (1954 a). *Experientia*, **10**, 132.
- SIMPSON, S. A., TAIT, J. F., WETTSTEIN, A., NEHER, R., VON EUW, J., SCHINDLER, O. & REICHSTEIN, T. (1954 b). *Helv. chim. acta*, **37**, 1163.
- SIMPSON, S. A., TAIT, J. F., WETTSTEIN, A., NEHER, R., VON EUW, J., SCHINDLER, O. & REICHSTEIN, T. (1954 c). *Helv. chim. acta*, **37**, 1200.
- SINGER, B. & WENER, J. (1953). *Amer. Heart J.* **45**, 795.
- SPEIRS, R. S. & MEYER, R. K. (1951). *Endocrinology*, **48**, 316.
- SPEIRS, R. S., SIMPSON, S. A., & TAIT, J. F. (1954). *Endocrinology*, **55**, 233.
- SPENCER, A. G. (1950). *Nature*, **166**, 32.
- SPRECHLER, M. (1951). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **6**, 133.
- SWEAT, M. L. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 1043.
- TALBOT, N. B. & EITINGON, I. V. (1944). *J. biol. Chem.* **154**, 605.
- TALBOT, N. B., SALTZMAN, A. H., WIXOM, R. L. & WOLFE, J. K. (1945). *J. biol. Chem.* **160**, 535.
- TALBOT, N. B., WOOD, M. S., WORCESTER, S., CHRISTO, E., CAMPBELL, A. M. & ZYGMUNTOWICZ, A. S. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 1224.
- TOBIAN, L., JR. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 319.
- VENNING, E. H. (1946). *Endocrinology*, **39**, 203.
- VENNING, E. H. & DYRENFURTH, I. (1956). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **16**, 426.
- VENNING, E. H., DYRENFURTH, I. & GIROUD, C. J. P. (1956). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **16**, 1326.
- VENNING, E. H. & KAZMIN, V. E. (1946). *Endocrinology*, **39**, 131.
- VENNING, E. H., KAZMIN, V. E. & BELL, J. C. (1946). *Endocrinology*, **38**, 79.
- VENNING, E. H., RIPSTEIN, M. P. & KAZMIN, V. E. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 659.
- VOGT, M. (1948). *J. Endocrin.* **5**, proc. lvii.
- WEICHELBAUM, T. E. & MARGRAF, H. W. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 970.
- WEICHELBAUM, T. E., MARGRAF, H. W. & ELMAN, R. (1953). *Fed. Proc.* **12**, 287.
- WILSON, H. & FAIRBANKS, R. (1955). *Arch. Biochem.* **54**, 440.
- ZAFFARONI, A. (1953). *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* **8**, 51.
- ZAFFARONI, A. & BURTON, R. B. (1951). *J. biol. Chem.* **193**, 749.
- ZAFFARONI, A., BURTON, R. B. & KEUTMANN, E. H. (1950). *Science*, **111**, 6.

CHAPTER XII

17-Ketosteroids and Androgens

IN this chapter three main topics will be discussed. These are:

- I. The urinary neutral 17-ketosteroids.
- II. Neutral 17-ketosteroids in blood.
- III. Androgens in blood and urine.

I. THE URINARY NEUTRAL 17-KETOSTEROIDS

INTRODUCTION

In 1931 Butenandt isolated from male urine a crystalline steroid which he termed androsterone. This substance was the first of the group of compounds now known as the neutral urinary 17-ketosteroids, and since Butenandt's discovery many structurally similar compounds have been isolated from human urine under normal and pathological conditions. For a detailed account of the chemical properties of the various 17-ketosteroids the reader is referred to publications by Fieser and Fieser (1949), Engel (1954) and Dorfman and Shipley (1956).

All 17-ketosteroids have in common an oxygen atom attached at C-17; all are derivatives of two parent hydrocarbons, 5 α -androsterane and 5 β -androsterane (α -cholesterane), the formulæ of which are shown in Fig. 60.

It will be noted that these two substances differ only in the spatial configuration of the hydrogen atom at C-5.

In Fig. 61 are shown the formulæ for eight of the more important urinary 17-ketosteroids.

The first four compounds are unsubstituted at C-11 while the last four have an oxygen substituent in this position in the form of either an oxo ($=O$) or a hydroxyl ($-OH$) group. Isomerism at C-3 is encountered relatively frequently in this group of steroids. This is well illustrated by comparing the structure of the two compounds androsterone and *epi*androsterone. In androsterone the hydroxyl group at C-3 is on the

opposite side of the molecule to the methyl group at C-10. This is termed the *trans* or α configuration and is designated by a broken line. In *epiandrosterone* on the other hand the hydroxyl group at C-3 is on the same side of the molecule as is the methyl group at C-10. This is the *cis* or β configuration and is represented by a solid line. *Epiandrosterone* and dehydro*epiandrosterone* are the principal 17-ketosteroids with the 3β -OH group and the latter compound forms the main part of the so-called ' 3β -hydroxy fraction.' However, the major portion of the total 17-ketosteroids excreted in urine show the α configuration of the OH group at C-3 and from the quantitative point of view the two most important

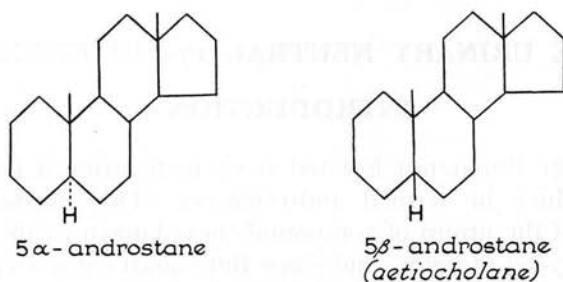


FIG. 60

Structural formulae of 5α -androstane and 5β -androstane (aetiocholane).

compounds in the 3α -hydroxy fraction are androsterone and 5β -androstanolone.

It should be noted that the oestrogenic steroid oestrone is also a 17-ketosteroid. However, this compound, due to the phenolic structure of ring A, is acidic in nature and is removed from urinary extracts when these are washed with alkali. Accordingly oestrone is not included in the term 'neutral' 17-ketosteroids and will not be considered in the present chapter. Its structural formula is shown on page 155.

The various urinary 17-ketosteroids differ to a considerable extent in their biological activities. This subject has recently been reviewed by Dorfman and Shipley (1956). The most widely used assay method has been that depending on the capon's comb (see p. 313). Using this test androsterone has been shown to possess approximately one-sixth of the biological activity of the male sex hormone testosterone, while *epi*-androsterone and dehydro*epi*androsterone are respectively about

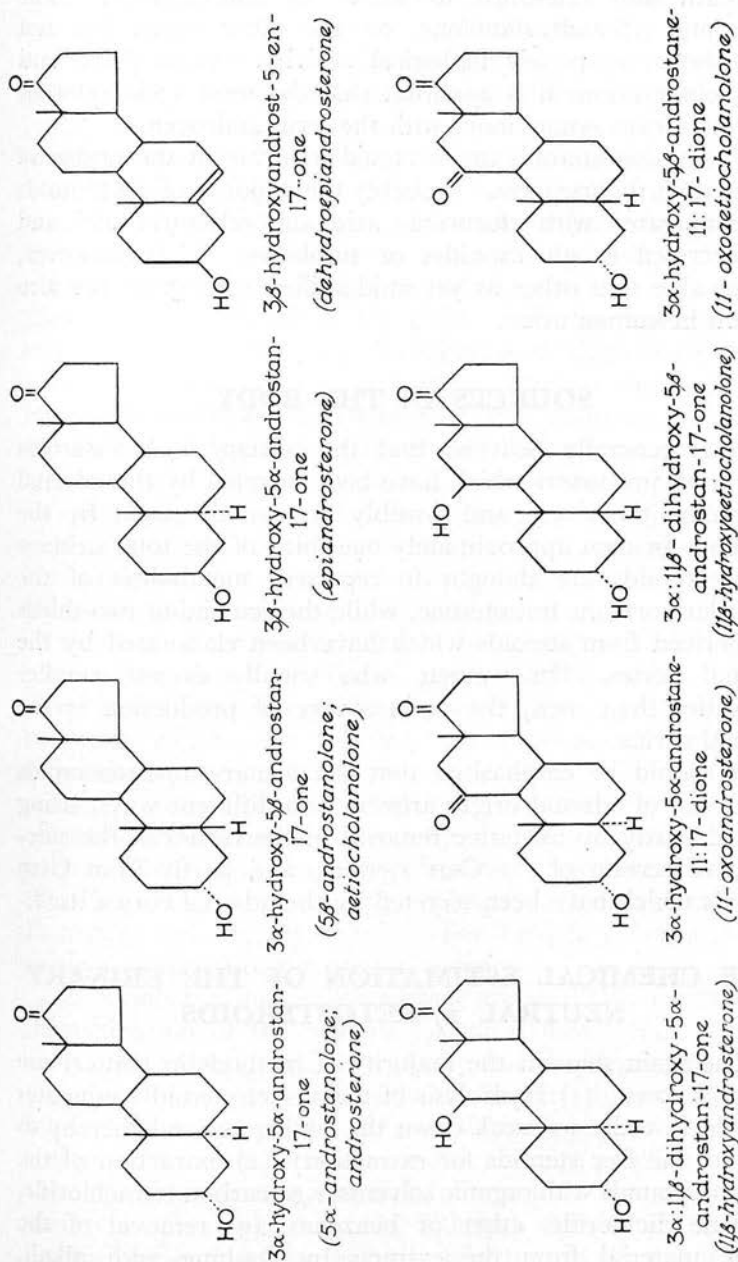


FIG. 61

Structural formulae of eight of the more important urinary 17-ketosteroids.

one-tenth and one-third as active as androsterone. The compound 5β -androstanolone, on the other hand, has not been shown to possess biological activity. From these and other observations it is apparent that the term 17-ketosteroid is by no means synonymous with the term androgen.

The 17-ketosteroids are excreted in urine in the *conjugated* rather than the *free* form. Probably the majority of compounds are conjugated with glucuronic acid and sulphuric acid and are excreted as glucuronides or sulphates. It is, however, conceivable that other as yet unidentified conjugates are also present in human urine.

SOURCES IN THE BODY

It is generally believed that the urinary 17-ketosteroids arise from precursors which have been secreted by the adrenal cortex, by the testes, and possibly to a small extent by the ovaries. In men approximately one-third of the total urinary 17-ketosteroids are thought to represent metabolites of the testicular hormone testosterone, while the remaining two-thirds are derived from steroids which have been elaborated by the adrenal cortex. In women, who usually excrete smaller quantities than men, the main source of production is the adrenal cortex.

It should be emphasised that the urinary 17-ketosteroids which are of adrenal origin arise in two different ways, being formed partly by oxidative removal in the tissues of the side-chain of certain of the C-21 steroids, and partly from C-19 steroids which have been secreted by the adrenal cortex itself.

THE CHEMICAL ESTIMATION OF THE URINARY NEUTRAL 17-KETOSTEROIDS

The main steps in the majority of methods in clinical use are as follows: (1) Hydrolysis of the 17-ketosteroid conjugates by acid in order to break down the conjugates and thereby to liberate the free steroids for extraction; (2) extraction of the free compounds with organic solvents, *e.g.*, carbon tetrachloride, ethylene dichloride, ether or benzene; (3) removal of the acidic material from the extracts by washing with alkali, leaving behind the neutral fraction as residue; (4) development

of the colour reaction after dissolving the dry residue of the neutral fraction in alcohol; (5) correction for interfering chromogenic material in the final extract by the use of an appropriate formula such as that described by Talbot *et al.* (1942).

It should be borne in mind that at present conditions for the hydrolysis of urinary 17-ketosteroid conjugates are not entirely optimal. Most workers carry out the hydrolysis by boiling the urine for ten to thirty minutes after the addition of hydrochloric acid or sulphuric acid. It is unlikely that with this procedure the yield of all the 17-ketosteroids is strictly quantitative; *e.g.*, Gallagher and Moulton (1944) and Lieberman and Teich (1953) have reported that with acid hydrolysis some loss of steroids of the 3β -hydroxy fraction, particularly dehydroepiandrosterone, may occur. Recently attempts have been made to use the enzyme β -glucuronidase for the hydrolysis of urinary 17-ketosteroid conjugates. In view of the relatively slow action of preparations of this enzyme, it is probable that this form of hydrolysis will not be suitable for routine assays in the clinical field.

Another factor which must be considered during the quantitative determination of 17-ketosteroids in urine is the formation of artifacts. These substances arise as a result of reactions which occur during the processes of hydrolysis, extraction and isolation; they may cause either an under-estimate or an over-estimate of the true 17-ketosteroid concentration in urine. The subject of artifact formation has been studied intensively by Dorfman and his co-workers (Dorfman and Ungar, 1953; Ungar and Dorfman, 1953; Dorfman and Shipley, 1956). For further information the reader is referred to the original articles.

A number of *colorimetric methods* are available for the final determination of the urinary 17-ketosteroids. Most of these are based on the procedure originally described by Zimmermann (1935). This reaction depends on the fact that steroids containing the group $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-$ will give a purple colour when treated with *m*-dinitrobenzene in the presence of alkali. Under the conditions usually employed the colour measured is due mainly to the 17-ketosteroids, although steroids with ketonic groups at C-3 and C-20 will also take part in the reaction and will produce colours of a lower intensity. In the urine of

non-pregnant individuals the quantities of C-3 and C-20 ketones present are very small and it is unlikely that any interference with the colour reaction will occur. However, during pregnancy relatively large amounts of C-20 ketones, especially 5 α -pregnan-3 α -ol-20-one, are excreted (Venning, 1946) and it is probable that under these conditions the Zimmermann reaction may yield an over-estimate of the true concentration of 17-ketosteroids present (see p. 298).

Many modifications of the Zimmermann reaction have been proposed, but the two most popular techniques in clinical investigations have been the methods developed by Callow *et al.* (1938) and by Holtorff and Koch (1940). One or other of these two procedures in their original or slightly modified form are now employed in most centres. In 1951 the Clinical Endocrinology Committee of the Medical Research Council concluded that the Callow-Zimmermann method was the best of the techniques available and recommended that this procedure should be adopted in all laboratories undertaking assays of urinary 17-ketosteroids for clinical purposes. For details of the actual method suggested the original article should be consulted.

Pincus (1943) has stated that the urinary 17-ketosteroids can be determined by a colour reaction with antimony trichloride. However, this technique does not measure dehydroepiandrosterone, an important compound in relation to clinical diagnosis, and for this reason is probably inferior to procedures based on the Zimmermann reaction.

Wolfe *et al.* (1940) and Morris and his collaborators (Barnett *et al.*, 1946 *a, b*; Butt, 1950) have used *polarographic* rather than colorimetric methods for urinary 17-ketosteroid determinations. When the same urinary extracts are analysed both polarographically and by the Callow-Zimmermann method a good correlation is generally obtained (Butt *et al.*, 1951). Polarographic techniques are probably reliable and reproducible but have not yet had such a wide application in clinical studies as methods depending on colorimetry.

A number of *micro methods* have been proposed for 17-ketosteroid assays (Drekter *et al.*, 1947, 1952; Hamburger and Rasch, 1948; Vestergaard, 1951). In these procedures a few millilitres of urine are hydrolysed and extracted and the final extract is subjected to colorimetric analysis. Such

techniques are reasonably precise in addition to being simple and rapid, and appear to be ideally suited for routine application in the clinical field.

In the procedures described above the urinary 17-ketosteroids are determined in the unconjugated form. Very recently, Kellie and Wade (1956) have developed a technique in which the steroids can be estimated in conjugated form as glucuronides and sulphates. The application of this technique to clinical problems will be awaited with interest.

FRACTIONATION OF URINARY 17-KETOSTEROIDS

1. Separation by Girard's Reagent.

17-Ketosteroids can be fractionated by treatment of the total neutral fraction of urine with the Girard reagent T (trimethylammoniumacetohydrazide chloride). This reagent will separate the ketonic neutral fraction containing the 17-ketosteroids from non-ketonic neutral compounds. The fractionation depends on the fact that Girard's reagent T forms water-soluble derivatives with the 17-ketosteroids so that the ketones can be separated from the non-ketonic material by distribution between water and ether at low temperatures. Girard separation has proved of little practical value in clinical studies and is now seldom employed in laboratories conducting urinary 17-ketosteroid assays.

2. Separation by Digitonin.

Separation of the 3α -hydroxy and 3β -hydroxy fractions in urine has been attempted by the use of digitonin (Talbot *et al.*, 1940; Dobriner *et al.*, 1948). This substance is capable of forming insoluble complexes with steroids showing a hydroxyl group with the β configuration at C-3, but does not react with 3α -hydroxysteroids or with steroids with other substituents at C-3. Digitonin separation has been used in the clinical field, particularly in the investigation of patients with adrenal hyperfunction, some of whom excrete large quantities of 3β -hydroxy-17-ketosteroids, particularly dehydroepiandrosterone.

Separation by digitonin is not a very satisfactory technique from the quantitative point of view and therefore caution is necessary in the interpretation of results obtained by its use.

For example, it has been reported (Engel, 1954) that, when the excretion of 3β -hydroxysteroids is high as in patients with adrenocortical tumours, incomplete precipitation may occur. In view of the development of more efficient chromatographic techniques for the estimation of the individual 17-ketosteroids in urine, it is unlikely that digitonin precipitation will continue to be used in clinical studies.

3. Separation by Chromatography.

Much fundamental work on the fractionation of the individual urinary 17-ketosteroids by chromatographic methods was performed by Dingemanse *et al.* (1946) and by Dobriner *et al.* (1948). In the technique described by Dingemanse *et al.* (1946) adsorption chromatography on alumina columns was employed and the 17-ketosteroids were separated into eight main fractions as judged by peaks on the chromatogram.

Methods similar in principle to that of Dingemanse *et al.* (1946), but employing a more convenient micro scale, were later developed by Zygmuntowicz *et al.* (1951), Pond (1951), Johnsen (1956 *a*) and others. One of the more elegant modifications of the original technique is that recently described by Plantin and Birke (1954). These workers also employed alumina columns but subsequently identified the individual urinary ketosteroids by means of infra-red spectroscopy.

Kochakian and Stidworthy (1952), Savard (1953) and Rubin *et al.* (1954) have reported effective separation of 17-ketosteroids by paper chromatographic means. The zones containing the 17-ketosteroids were detected by spraying the paper with alkaline *m*-dinitrobenzene in order to produce the characteristic Zimmermann colour.

Using such fractionation techniques attempts have been made in recent years to study the pattern of urinary 17-ketosteroid excretion in patients with various forms of endocrine disorders and to compare the values obtained with those in normal individuals.

THE URINARY EXCRETION OF NEUTRAL 17-KETOSTEROIDS IN NORMAL SUBJECTS

The excretion of total neutral 17-ketosteroids in the urine of normal individuals has been estimated by numerous workers

in the last two decades. Among the more comprehensive studies are those of Callow *et al.* (1940), Fraser *et al.* (1941), Forbes *et al.* (1947), Hamburger (1948) and Plantin and Birke (1954). In most investigations the final colorimetric determination has depended on the Zimmermann reaction, although in a few publications such as those of Barnett *et al.* (1946 *a, b*) a polarographic method has been used. In general, the modification of the Zimmermann reaction described by Callow *et al.* (1938) has been more popular than that of Holtorff and Koch (1940).

A few studies have been reported in which estimations of the 3β -hydroxy ketosteroids have been undertaken using digitonin separation (Talbot *et al.*, 1940; Dobriner *et al.*, 1948; Dingemanse *et al.*, 1952). Usually in normal subjects this fraction has been found to be less than 20 per cent. of the total 17-ketosteroids present. Various workers including Pond (1954), Rubin *et al.* (1954), Plantin and Birke (1954) and Johnsen (1956 *a*) have fractionated the urinary 17-ketosteroids by chromatographic means and have thus been able to study the excretion of the individual compounds in health and disease. These results will be considered on page 308. The present section of the chapter (pp. 295-308) deals with the excretion of total rather than of individual urinary 17-ketosteroids.

I. Normal Men.

In men between the ages of twenty and forty the majority of values lie between 12 and 17 mg. per twenty-four hours. According to Mason and Engstrom (1950) the lower limit of normal is approximately 6 mg. and the upper limit 25 mg. Fig. 62, which is taken from a paper by Hamburger (1948), shows the excretion of 17-ketosteroids in 137 healthy male subjects varying in age from 3 to 102.

It will be noted that the mean output of 17-ketosteroids rises rapidly at the time of puberty and reaches a maximum at about the age of twenty-five. With advancing years the values fall progressively and by the seventh decade the mean excretion is only approximately half of that in the third and fourth decades. It is reasonable to assume that the output of urinary 17-ketosteroids in older male subjects results mainly from a reduction in the secretion of steroid hormone precursors by the adrenal cortex and the testes.

Recently Hamburger (1954) has reported a study of the

daily excretion of urinary 17-ketosteroids in a healthy male subject over a six-year period from the age of forty-four to fifty. It was found that the average daily excretion decreased by 1 mg. per twenty-four hours in the course of the six years. The total mean value during the period of study was

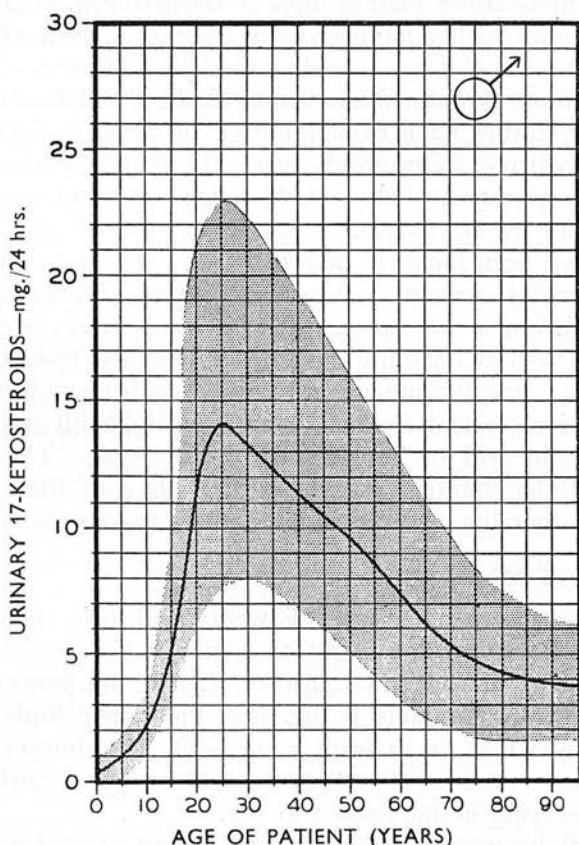


FIG. 62

Urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids in normal men. The continuous line represents the mean excretion value. The shaded area represents the range within which 97 to 98 per cent. of the values fall. (From Hamburger, 1948.)

approximately 12 mg. per twenty-four hours and the levels ranged from 9 to 16.4 mg. Marked variations in excretion occurred from one day to another but no relationship was demonstrated between the quantities excreted on the one hand and the urine volume on the other.

2. Normal Non-pregnant Women.

It is generally agreed that normal women tend to excrete smaller quantities of urinary 17-ketosteroids than do normal men of a comparable age group. There is, however, a considerable overlap in the values for the two sexes. In women

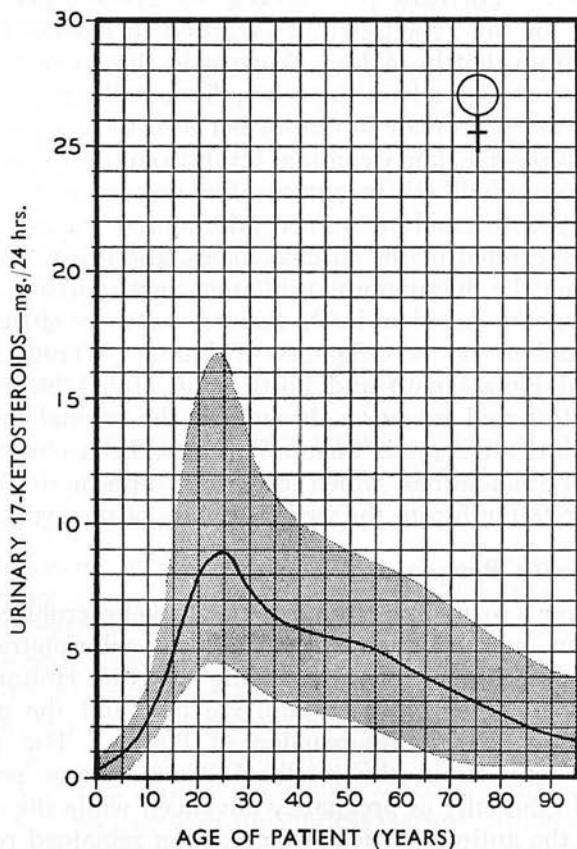


FIG. 63

Urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids in normal women. The continuous line represents the mean excretion value. The shaded area represents the range within which 97 to 98 per cent. of the values fall. (From Hamburger, 1948.)

between the ages of twenty and forty the majority of readings lie between 7 and 12 mg. per twenty-four hours. In this age group the lower limit of normal is probably about 3 mg. and the upper limit 20 mg. Fig. 63, which is also taken from a publication by Hamburger (1948), shows the excretion of

urinary 17-ketosteroids in 127 healthy female subjects between the ages of two and ninety-two.

It will be observed that, as in the case of normal males, the mean output rises sharply with the onset of puberty and adolescence and reaches a maximum at about the age of twenty-five. Thereafter, according to Hamburger (1948), the curve for the 17-ketosteroid excretion in females is rather different from that in males. Whereas in the latter a progressive fall occurs with advancing years, the female subjects show a relatively sharp decrease in output between the ages of twenty-five and thirty-five, fairly constant levels from thirty-five to fifty-five and a gradual fall in output after the age of sixty. The urinary 17-ketosteroids in women arise almost exclusively from precursors secreted by the adrenal cortex, and it is reasonable to assume that the fluctuations at different ages represent, at least to some extent, variations in the secretory activity of this gland.

A number of investigators including Werner (1941), Davis and Plotz (1956) and Borth *et al.* (1957) have studied the 17-ketosteroid excretion throughout the normal menstrual cycle. No definite cyclic fluctuations have been observed and the small fluctuations which do occur appear to bear no constant relationship to the various phases of the cycle.

3. Normally Pregnant Women.

Venning (1946) has estimated the 17-ketosteroid excretion throughout normal pregnancy. Two colorimetric assay methods were used, one depending on the Holtorff-Koch modification of the Zimmermann reaction and the other on the antimony trichloride reaction of Pincus. The material giving a reaction in the modified Zimmermann procedure increased gradually as pregnancy advanced while the material active in the antimony trichloride reaction remained relatively constant throughout the gestation period. These divergent results can probably be explained on a methodological basis. The modified Zimmermann procedure is not entirely specific for urinary 17-ketosteroids (see p. 292) and is affected to some extent by the presence of 20-ketosteroids in urine extracts. It is therefore probable that the increased excretion of 5 β -pregnan-3 α -ol-20-one and of other urinary 20-ketosteroids as pregnancy advances is sufficient to account for the apparent rise in 17-ketosteroid output as measured by the Holtorff-Koch

technique. On the other hand the antimony trichloride reaction of Pincus is more specific for the 17-ketosteroids and presumably would not be affected to the same extent by the presence of 20-ketosteroids in urine.

4. Children.

In both male and female children below the age of six the urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids is very low and is frequently less than 1 mg. per twenty-four hours (Figs. 62 and 63). From the age of seven until puberty a gradual increase in output occurs and at the time of puberty the average figure in both sexes is about 9 mg. per twenty-four hours. Normal adult levels are generally reached in the period between the ages of seventeen and twenty. Since the urinary 17-ketosteroids arise from precursors secreted by the adrenal cortex and the testis, the similarity in the levels excreted by boys and girls prior to puberty suggests that in this age period the adrenal cortex is the main site of production of these precursors.

THE URINARY EXCRETION OF NEUTRAL 17-KETOSTEROIDS IN PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

1. Diseases of the Adrenal Cortex.

Estimations of the total urinary 17-ketosteroids, of the 3β -hydroxy fraction or of the individual compounds have been extensively used in the clinical field in an attempt to differentiate cases of adrenocortical tumour from those of adrenocortical hyperplasia. Although in many instances such assays have proved of diagnostic value, on other occasions the results obtained have been inconclusive.

(a) ADRENOCORTICAL TUMOUR.—Patients with these neoplasms may present with the clinical features either of *Cushing's syndrome* or of the *adrenogenital syndrome*.¹ 17-Ketosteroid assays

¹ The term *Cushing's syndrome* will be used to denote a particular symptom-complex, the main features of which are a distinctive bodily habitus characterised by facial and abdominal obesity with relatively thin arms and legs, purple striae and ecchymoses, hirsutism, hypertension, osteoporosis, amenorrhoea, diminished carbohydrate tolerance, muscular weakness and occasionally polycythaemia and hypochloræmic alkalosis. The syndrome occurs characteristically in young women but is also found in men and in children of both sexes. Apart from the presence of hirsutism there is little evidence of masculinisation.

The term *adrenogenital syndrome* will be used to describe a symptom-complex which is most frequently found in young women but which may occur in either sex at any time of life. The main features are those of masculinisation, e.g., excessive muscularity, enlargement of the larynx, clitoral hypertrophy and hirsutism of the male type.

in such patients have been conducted by numerous investigators including Fraser *et al.* (1941), Kepler and Mason (1947), Huis in't Veld and Dingemanse (1948), Walters and Sprague (1949) and Sobel *et al.* (1953). In the majority of cases of proved adrenocortical tumour increased quantities of 17-ketosteroids are present in urine and in only a small proportion of subjects are the levels within the normal range. Values of more than 1,000 mg. per twenty-four hours have been reported. Forbes and Albright (1951) have stated that in cases of Cushing's syndrome there is a tendency for the 17-ketosteroid excretion to be relatively low when a benign tumour is responsible for the disease. On the other hand there is generally but not always a massive excretion of urinary 17-ketosteroids when the tumour is malignant. According to Mason and Engstrom (1950) a reading of over 150 mg. per twenty-four hours is diagnostic of an adrenocortical tumour in an adult female. Such tumours are much less frequently encountered in adult males and in the few cases reported in the literature the output has been very variable. In children the levels are also very variable, but in general are many times higher than those found in normal children at a corresponding age period.

When separate estimation of the 3β -hydroxy fraction has been made in cases of adrenocortical neoplasm it has generally been found that this fraction is abnormally high, its proportion ranging from 30 to 90 per cent. of the total 17-ketosteroid output as compared with less than 15 per cent. in normal individuals. Usually the main component of the 3β -hydroxy fraction has been shown to be dehydroepiandrosterone. It should, however, be emphasised that this elevation of the 3β -hydroxy fraction is not invariable and that occasionally a normal value may be found in the presence of a tumour.

(b) ADRENOCORTICAL HYPERPLASIA.—This is a very loose term which is used to denote the presence of bilaterally enlarged adrenal glands in the absence of neoplastic change. As with adrenocortical tumour, patients with hyperplasia generally present with the symptoms of Cushing's syndrome or of the adrenogenital syndrome. Mixed types are also common. Many workers including Escamilla (1949) and Seckel *et al.* (1949) have studied the 17-ketosteroid output in patients with this disease.

The quantity of 17-ketosteroids excreted appears to depend to a large extent on the age at which the hyperplasia develops. In female subjects in whom adrenal hypertrophy occurs prior to puberty the output of urinary 17-ketosteroids is generally abnormally high for the corresponding age period in healthy individuals; values lie between 30 and 100 mg. per twenty-four hours in most cases. Such patients usually show features of the adrenogenital syndrome rather than of Cushing's syndrome. On the other hand, in females in whom the adrenal hypertrophy develops after puberty, the urinary 17-ketosteroid excretion tends to lie within or slightly above the normal range. The mean value in 131 such cases collected from the literature by Mason and Engstrom (1950) was approximately 20 mg. per twenty-four hours. These authors have, however, wisely emphasised that many of these 131 patients had been classified by different workers under such headings as 'adrenal virilism,' 'simple hirsutism' and 'post-puberal virilism,' and that it is by no means certain that all the cases were true examples of adrenocortical hyperplasia.

In recent years considerable attention has been given particularly by workers in the United States to the condition known as *congenital adrenal hyperplasia*. This disease can occur in both sexes but is much more common in girls than in boys; in girls the condition has been termed 'female pseudo-hermaphroditism.' In both sexes the hormonal abnormality occurs during embryonic life before intra-uterine differentiation of the sex organs is complete. The clinical features in females are generally those of the adrenogenital syndrome and have been fully described by numerous investigators including Wilkins (1950) and Bishop (1954). The excretion of 17-ketosteroids is almost always increased in relation to the patient's age. During the first year of life, however, the output may not exceed 2 to 3 mg. per twenty-four hours, although levels as high as 15 mg. per twenty-four hours have been reported. When congenital adrenal hyperplasia occurs in boys the clinical picture is generally one of precocious sexual development, and this condition has been termed *macro-genitosomia præcox*. In such individuals also the excretion of urinary 17-ketosteroids is abnormally high in relation to the patient's age. Values of 2 to 4 mg. per twenty-four hours have been reported in early childhood and levels of 20 to 50 mg.

per twenty-four hours in late childhood. Wilkins *et al.* (1951) and others have shown that the oral or parenteral administration of cortisone to patients with congenital adrenal hyperplasia diminishes the excretion of urinary 17-ketosteroids and usually produces symptomatic improvement.

THE ESTIMATION OF THE 3β -HYDROXY FRACTION IN THE DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF PATIENTS WITH HYPERFUNCTIONAL ADRENAL DISEASE.—As mentioned previously (p. 293) separation of the 3α -hydroxy and 3β -hydroxy fractions can be effected by treatment of urine extracts with digitonin. The principal constituent of the 3β -hydroxy fraction is the substance dehydroepiandrosterone. In normal subjects the 3β -hydroxy fraction is generally less than 15 per cent. of the total 17-ketosteroid output and usually averages between 5 and 10 per cent. (Dorfman and Shipley, 1956).

In patients with adrenocortical tumour very high values for the 3β -hydroxy fraction are almost always obtained (Callow *et al.*, 1940; Hirschmann and Hirschmann, 1947; Kinsell and Lissner, 1952). In a series of twenty-five cases collected from the literature by Dorfman and Shipley (1956) this fraction varied from zero to 79 per cent. of the total 17-ketosteroid output with a mean value of 45 per cent.; in only four out of the twenty-five cases were the values within the normal range. At present it cannot be stated with certainty whether there is any correlation between the excretory level of the 3β -hydroxy fraction on the one hand and the degree of malignancy of the tumour on the other.

The output of the 3β -hydroxy fraction in patients with adrenocortical hyperplasia differs markedly from that found in cases of tumour, although the excretion of total 17-ketosteroids may be abnormally high in both conditions. Patients with hyperplastic adrenals excrete amounts of the fraction which are usually within the normal range or are only slightly elevated (Kepler and Mason, 1947; Dobriner *et al.*, 1948). In a series of twenty-nine cases collected from the literature by Dorfman and Shipley (1956) the 3β -hydroxy fraction ranged from zero to 24 per cent. of the total 17-ketosteroid output and the mean figure was 9 per cent. It is therefore reasonable to conclude that the assay of this fraction may frequently be of value in differentiating adrenocortical tumour from adrenocortical hyperplasia.

(c) ADDISON'S DISEASE.—The excretion of 17-ketosteroids in patients with this condition is usually abnormally low (Fraser *et al.*, 1941; Escamilla, 1949). Frequently readings of 1 mg. per twenty-four hours have been reported and, particularly in women, the output may fall to zero. According to Mason and Engstrom (1950) values of 1 mg. or less in women or 3 mg. or less in men are suggestive of the disease. It should, however, be emphasised that such readings are by no means pathognomonic of Addison's disease and can be found in many other disease states. On the other hand it can probably be stated with some assurance that the finding of urinary 17-ketosteroid levels which are within the normal range would militate against the diagnosis of Addison's disease, especially in female patients.

2. Diseases of the Pituitary.

In *acromegaly* the excretion of urinary 17-ketosteroids is very variable (Fraser *et al.*, 1941; Venning and Browne, 1947; Escamilla, 1949). The levels may be within, above or below the normal range. In most cases reported in the literature the values have not exceeded 25 mg. per twenty-four hours and have not fallen below 5 mg. per twenty-four hours. An increase in output has been observed more frequently in men than in women. In cases of *pituitary gigantism* stigmata of hypogonadism are not uncommon and in such patients the 17-ketosteroid excretion is normal or slightly reduced.

In *panhypopituitarism* the output of 17-ketosteroids is markedly decreased and levels below 1 mg. per twenty-four hours are usually encountered (Fraser *et al.*, 1941). Similar low levels are found in cases of *pituitary dwarfism*.

3. Diseases of the Thyroid.

The output of 17-ketosteroids is usually below the normal range in patients with untreated *myxædema* (Fraser *et al.*, 1941; Engstrom and Mason, 1944; Statland and Lerman, 1950). Values may vary from zero to the lower limits of normal and are often less than 2 mg. per twenty-four hours. Engstrom and Mason (1944) have shown that treatment of such patients with thyroid extract in a dose sufficient to relieve symptoms does not always cause a rise in the urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids. A similar conclusion was reached by Friedgood

(1944). According to Talbot and Butler (1942) hypothyroid children excrete smaller amounts of 17-ketosteroids than do normal children at a corresponding age period.

In *thyrotoxicosis* 17-ketosteroid determinations in urine are of little diagnostic value. As shown by Engstrom and Mason (1944), Kinnunen and Kauppinen (1951) and others the levels are usually within or slightly below the normal range.

4. Diseases of the Testis.

In the investigation of cases of male hypogonadism urinary 17-ketosteroid determinations have not so far proved of great diagnostic value to the clinician. It should be borne in mind that the testes contribute only approximately one-third of the total output of urinary 17-ketosteroids and that the remaining two-thirds arise from precursors secreted by the adrenal cortex.

In patients with *eunuchoidism* the urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids is very variable. In a relatively large series of cases collected from the literature by Dorfman and Shipley (1956) the output ranged from 1.4 to 15.7 mg. per twenty-four hours and the mean value was 6.6 mg.

Numerous investigators including Scott and Vermeulen (1942), Dean *et al.* (1944) and Birke *et al.* (1954) have studied the 17-ketosteroid output after *castration*. It has been generally found that the excretion falls immediately after operation but soon rises again to levels similar to or slightly higher than those observed pre-operatively.

In the rare condition described by Klinefelter *et al.* (1942) and usually known as *sclerosing tubular degeneration* (Klinefelter's syndrome) low levels of urinary 17-ketosteroids have usually been reported.

Relatively few 17-ketosteroid assays have so far been conducted in patients with *testicular tumours*. In a case of *interstitial cell tumour* studied by Venning *et al.* (1942) the output was 1.015 mg. per twenty-four hours, but in other patients with this condition reported by Cook *et al.* (1952) and by Newns (1952) the excretion has been within the normal range. In four patients with *seminoma* investigated by Warren (1945) the figures ranged from 15.4 to 32.2 mg. per twenty-four hours with a mean value of 21.4 mg. In cases of *teratoma* the readings may be within or slightly above the normal range (Warren, 1945; Dorfman and Shipley, 1956).

5. Diseases of the Ovary.

No consistent abnormality in 17-ketosteroid excretion has yet been demonstrated in cases of primary or secondary *amenorrhæa* or in patients with the various types of *dysfunctional uterine hæmorrhage*.

Few assays have so far been reported in patients with virilising ovarian tumours such as *arrhenoblastoma*; such readings as were obtained were very variable, lying within, below or above the normal range (Pederson, 1947; Riley and Murphy, 1951). Most cases showed post-operative values which were lower than those obtained pre-operatively. In *Turner's syndrome* (ovarian agenesis) a moderate depression of 17-ketosteroid output has been noted; in a series of eleven cases reported by Albright *et al.* (1942) the levels lay between 2 and 5 mg. per twenty-four hours.

In twenty-nine patients with the *Stein-Leventhal syndrome* collected from the literature by Dorfman and Shipley (1956) the 17-ketosteroid excretion was abnormally high in only five instances. Most investigators have found that the output of 17-ketosteroids is not materially affected by *oöphorectomy*.

6. Malignant Disease.

The excretion of 17-ketosteroids has been studied in patients with many forms of carcinoma. These investigations have been prompted by the suggestion that steroid hormones may have some relationship to human carcinogenesis. So far results obtained have been disappointing from the diagnostic point of view. Although the total 17-ketosteroid excretion in malignant disease is often abnormally low, it is difficult to assess whether this depression results from the cancer *per se* or from concomitant factors such as starvation and inanition. Fractionation of the individual ketosteroids by chromatographic methods has been performed by a number of workers in various types of carcinoma. The results obtained will be discussed later in this chapter.

7. Miscellaneous Conditions.

17-Ketosteroid assays have been conducted in a wide variety of other clinical conditions, a few of which are mentioned below.

(a) ANOREXIA NERVOSA.—Low values for urinary 17-ketosteroids are generally obtained, although occasionally the readings lie within the normal range (Fraser *et al.*, 1941; Venning and Browne, 1947). Usually the output returns to normal with adequate nutrition. 17-Ketosteroid assay *per se* is not a reliable method of differentiating cases of anorexia nervosa from those of panhypopituitarism.

(b) HYPERTENSION.—Bruger *et al.* (1944) claimed that the excretion of 17-ketosteroids in hypertensive women was abnormally low. However, other investigators have been unable to demonstrate any significant difference in 17-ketosteroid output between normotensive and hypertensive subjects.

(c) LIVER DISEASE.—There is general agreement that in cases of advanced liver disease the amounts of 17-ketosteroids found in urine are greatly decreased (Dohan *et al.*, 1952; Warter *et al.*, 1953). In a recent study involving twenty-three cases of portal cirrhosis and five cases of infective hepatitis Birke (1954 *a*) found that the total excretion of 17-ketosteroids was depressed in sixteen cases while in the remaining twelve the values obtained were within the normal range. The lowest levels of urinary 17-ketosteroids were found in those patients with the greatest degree of impairment of liver function. All the normally occurring 17-ketosteroids were markedly reduced in advanced liver disease and no abnormal steroids were demonstrated.

(d) RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS.—No consistent abnormality in 17-ketosteroid excretion has been demonstrated in patients with this disease (Desmarais, 1949; Sprechler, 1950). In a recent investigation involving forty cases Birke (1954 *b*) found that the majority of readings were within the normal range and only a few were abnormally low. Fractionation studies by chromatographic methods combined with infra-red spectroscopy failed to demonstrate the presence of any abnormal 17-ketosteroids in these subjects.

(e) GOUT.—Wolfson *et al.* (1949) have claimed that in patients with gouty arthritis a consistently low excretion of 17-ketosteroids is found. This interesting observation requires further confirmation.

(f) SIMPLE HIRSUTISM.—In this condition hirsutism occurs in the absence of demonstrable pathological lesions of the

adrenal cortex and the ovary. The cause of the disease is at present unknown and none of the endocrine theories put forward to explain its clinical features are entirely satisfactory. It should be emphasised that in many cases classified in the literature as 'simple hirsutism,' adrenal or ovarian disease has not been definitely excluded by laparotomy.

In most series of cases of simple hirsutism so far reported the mean 17-ketosteroid excretion has been significantly higher than that occurring in normal women of a comparable age group. This has been shown by various investigators including Warren (1945), Patterson *et al.* (1942) and Dorfman and Shipley (1956). There does not, however, appear to be any definite correlation between the severity of the hirsutism on the one hand and the output of 17-ketosteroids on the other.

(g) 'STRESS' CONDITIONS.—The 17-ketosteroid excretion is markedly affected by such factors as emotional stress and physical exertion. Pincus (1947) has made extensive studies on the diurnal variation in urinary 17-ketosteroid excretion in normal subjects. He found that the levels were lowest during sleep, were at a maximum in the hour immediately after rising and gradually declined during the day. This worker also demonstrated that conditions necessitating precise muscular co-ordination such as operation of a pursuit meter, resulted in a sharp rise in 17-ketosteroid excretion. Pincus and Hoagland (1943) studied the effect of piloting aircraft on the 17-ketosteroid excretion; they found that this stress produced a marked rise in output and that the increase was directly proportional to the time spent in the air.

Forbes *et al.* (1947) have investigated the effect of major surgery on the output of urinary 17-ketosteroids. They found that some twenty-four or forty-eight hours after the operation the excretion rose above normal limits. Subsequently a gradual fall in output occurred and some four to five days post-operatively the readings were frequently below the normal range. Within ten days of the operation the values had returned to normal. Eisenmann *et al.* (1953) have reported marked alterations in 17-ketosteroid excretion during the withdrawal of morphine from addicted patients. During the time of addiction the excretion of these steroids was abnormally low; following withdrawal of the drug the excretion rose sharply to levels above the normal range.

For a fuller description of the relationship of stress conditions to 17-ketosteroid output in normal and disease states the reader is referred to articles by Pincus (1947), Sayers (1950) and Mason and Engstrom (1950).

THE URINARY EXCRETION OF THE INDIVIDUAL 17-KETOSTEROIDS IN NORMAL AND PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

1. Normal Subjects.

The excretion of the individual urinary 17-ketosteroids by normal individuals has been investigated by Dingemanse *et al.* (1952), Pond (1954), Plantin and Birke (1954), Rubin *et al.*

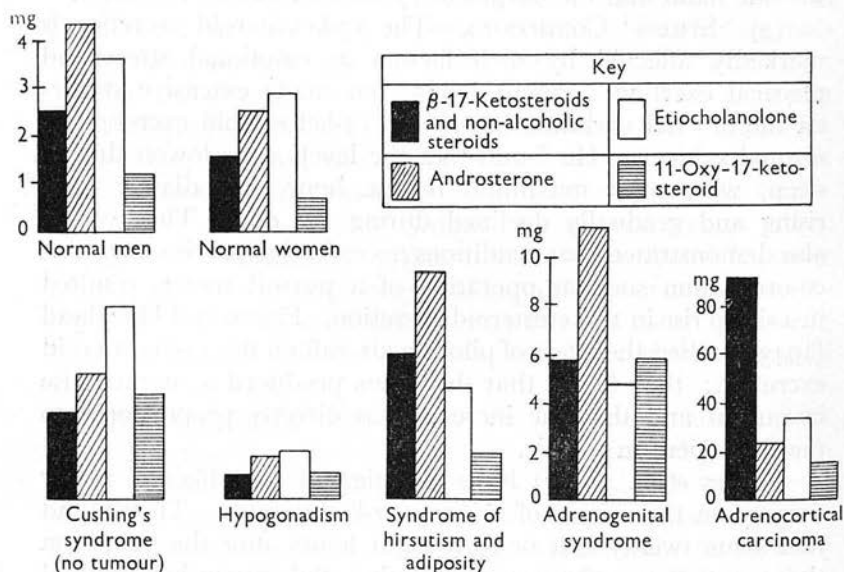


FIG. 64

A graphic summary of the average 17-ketosteroid fractionation results in various endocrine disorders. (From Pond, 1954.)

(1954) and Johnsen (1956 *b*). In a careful study involving twenty normal subjects Pond (1954) found that androsterone and 5β -androstanolone constituted approximately two-thirds of the total 17-ketosteroid excretion. The ratio of the two compounds was approximately unity in both sexes. The levels of 11-oxy-17-ketosteroids remained relatively constant from

day to day but were appreciably higher in men than in women. The 3β -hydroxy fraction usually constituted approximately 20 per cent. of the total 17-ketosteroid output. This figure is rather higher than that obtained by other workers. A summary of Pond's results in normal and pathological conditions is shown in Fig. 64.

2. Abnormal Conditions.

At the time of writing relatively few systematic investigations have been undertaken of the excretion of the individual 17-ketosteroids in pathological conditions in man. It is therefore too early to assess the possible value of such assays in clinical medicine. It is, however, probable that studies of this type will in the future yield information of considerable clinical importance. Some of the preliminary results obtained in various disease states are discussed below.

(a) CUSHING'S SYNDROME.—In nine cases of this disease studied by Pond (1954) the main change in the urinary 17-ketosteroid pattern consisted of an increased excretion of 11-oxy-17-ketosteroids. In the majority of patients the ratio 5α -androstanolone : 5β -androstanolone was less than unity and the 3β -hydroxy fraction exceeded 50 per cent. of the total 17-ketosteroid output.

(b) ADRENOGENITAL SYNDROME.—In patients with this condition Pond (1954) found that the excretion of the individual 17-ketosteroids was different from that in Cushing's syndrome. The ratio 5α -androstanolone : 5β -androstanolone was generally greater than unity and the excretion of the 11-oxy-17-ketosteroids was not abnormally high.

(c) MALE HYPOGONADISM.—In four cases Pond (1954) observed a lowered excretion of all 17-ketosteroid fractions; the relative rise in 3β -hydroxy-17-ketosteroids noted by Callow *et al.* (1940) was not demonstrated. In a study of twelve male castrates Johnsen (1956 *c*) reported an abnormally low total 17-ketosteroid excretion, a relative decrease in androsterone output and a relative increase in the excretion of the 3β -hydroxy-17-ketosteroids, particularly dehydroepiandrosterone. In Johnsen's opinion the estimation of the individual 17-ketosteroids in urine is of greater diagnostic value in the investigation of patients with male hypogonadism than is the determination of the total 17-ketosteroid excretion.

(d) DISEASES OF THE PITUITARY.—In four cases of panhypopituitarism Pond (1954) found a reduction in all 17-ketosteroid fractions. Johnsen (1956 c) has demonstrated that, after hypophysectomy performed for recurrent mammary carcinoma, there is a marked lowering of all fractions but there is in addition a relative decrease in androsterone excretion. This interesting finding requires further investigation.

(e) LIVER DISEASE.—Recently Birke (1954 a) has studied the excretion of the individual 17-ketosteroids in patients with portal cirrhosis and with infective hepatitis (see p. 306). He found that all the principal metabolites in urine, viz., androsterone, dehydro ϵ piandrosterone, 5 β -androstanolone and 11-keto ϵ tiocholanolone were markedly decreased in a proportion of cases. However, it was not possible to demonstrate the presence of any 'pathological' steroid in the urine of any of the patients investigated. Results similar to those reported by Birke (1954 a) have been obtained by Marti (1951).

(f) RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS.—In a study of forty cases Birke (1954 b) found no alteration in the pattern of 17-ketosteroid excretion as compared with healthy subjects. All the principal metabolites occurring in normal urine were identified by means of infra-red spectroscopy and no 'pathological' steroids were demonstrated.

(g) MALIGNANT DISEASE.—Various investigators have fractionated the individual urinary 17-ketosteroids in patients with different types of carcinoma. Although deviations from the normal pattern have been observed it would be premature at the present time to draw any definite conclusions regarding the diagnostic value of such estimations.

In 1947 Dobriner *et al.* stated that the urine of patients with various types of malignant disease contained the steroid 3 α -hydroxy-5 α -androst-9-en-17-one. This substance is probably produced from 11 β -hydroxy ϵ tiocholanolone by dehydration during the acid hydrolysis of urine. The presence of this steroid was not detected in the urine of normal individuals, and since this original work of Dobriner and his co-workers it has been generally assumed that 11-hydroxy ϵ tiocholanolone has some connection with malignant disease. The original claims have not been confirmed by subsequent investigators who used more reliable assay methods than those employed by Dobriner *et al.* (1947). For example, Plantin

and Birke (1955) showed that, although the urine of patients with prostatic carcinoma contained relatively large quantities of 11 β -hydroxy Δ^4 androstane-3-one, the steroid was also present in easily detectable amounts in the urine of normal subjects and in samples obtained from patients with rheumatoid arthritis and portal cirrhosis. In view of these observations it can be stated with assurance that the presence of this compound in urine is in no way pathognomonic of the existence of neoplastic disease.

Birke *et al.* (1954) have recently studied the pattern of 17-ketosteroid excretion in patients with carcinoma of the prostate. They found that such cases prior to therapy usually excreted relatively large quantities of the steroid 11-keto Δ^4 androstane-3-one but that the output of the 'androgenic' steroids androsterone and 5 β -androstane-3-one was not abnormally high. Orchidectomy produced a marked fall in the excretion of both androsterone and 5 β -androstane-3-one, but within a few weeks the output of those steroids rose again to levels similar to or slightly higher than those observed pre-operatively. In patients who had been subjected to both orchidectomy and adrenalectomy the excretion of androsterone and 5 β -androstane-3-one fell to zero.

(h) SURGICAL STRESS.—Birke *et al.* (1955) have recently reported the effect of various types of major surgery on the excretion of the individual urinary 17-ketosteroids. The most striking features observed in the immediate post-operative period was a sharp rise in the excretion of dehydro Δ^4 androsterone to levels approximately 200 per cent. higher than those encountered prior to surgery. The excretions of androsterone and 5 β -androstane-3-one also increased post-operatively but to a smaller extent; the output of 11-oxy-17-ketosteroids was not immediately affected by the operation. Within nine to eleven days after surgery the excretion of all 17-ketosteroid fractions had returned to normal. The level of dehydro Δ^4 androsterone in urine fell rapidly and was within the normal range after seven to nine days; androsterone and 5 β -androstane-3-one had returned to pre-operative levels within three days. The 11-oxy-17-ketosteroids showed a slight increase in excretion on the third or fourth post-operative day but were again within normal limits approximately ten days after operation.

II. NEUTRAL 17-KETOSTEROIDS IN BLOOD

1. Methods of Estimation.

Gardner (1953) has described a method for the estimation of 17-ketosteroids in plasma. The compounds are liberated from the plasma proteins by acid hydrolysis and the extracts are purified by column chromatography using Florosil. The final colorimetric determination depends on a micro modification of the Zimmermann reaction. Results are expressed in terms of dehydroepiandrosterone. A similar technique in which the extracts were purified by both column and paper chromatography was subsequently described by Migeon and Plager (1955). These latter workers claimed to have isolated two fractions from plasma, one containing dehydroepiandrosterone and the other a mixture of androsterone and 5 β -androstanolone.

It should be emphasised that the techniques so far developed for the estimation of 17-ketosteroids in blood, although promising, are not yet entirely satisfactory from the quantitative point of view. Further methodological work is required before these procedures can be used routinely in clinical studies.

2. Assays in Clinical Conditions.

Migeon (1954) has recently reported some preliminary results on the plasma 17-ketosteroid concentration in health and disease. In normal subjects of both sexes the two fractions mentioned above could be detected. The intravenous administration of ACTH to normal subjects caused a rise in both fractions but the increase in dehydroepiandrosterone concentration was more marked than that of androsterone and 5 β -androstanolone. In two patients with Cushing's syndrome resulting from adrenocortical carcinoma very high blood concentrations of dehydroepiandrosterone were found. Abnormally high titres of this steroid were also reported in cases of congenital adrenal hyperplasia in children.

III. ANDROGENS IN BLOOD AND URINE

The term 'androgen' will be used to denote the group of compounds present in extracts of blood and urine which possess biological activity. It has already been emphasised (p. 290)

that the various urinary 17-ketosteroids differ markedly in their androgenic potencies and that the terms 'androgen' and '17-ketosteroid' are by no means synonymous.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF THE ANDROGENS

Results of androgen bio-assays should always be expressed in terms of the international standard preparation and not in 'animal units.' By definition one international unit represents the androgenic activity of 0.1 mg. of pure androsterone. The subject of androgen assay has recently been thoroughly reviewed by Dorfman and his co-workers (Dorfman, 1950; Dorfman and Shipley, 1956) and the present account is based mainly on their conclusions.

Bio-assay methods can be conveniently divided into two main groups. These are:

1. Assays in birds.
2. Assays in mammals.

1. Assays in Birds.

(a) THE CAPON'S COMB TEST.—This has been the most widely used method for assessing androgenic potency. It depends on the fact that after castration marked involution of the cock's comb occurs and that the administration of androgens to these birds restores the comb to its normal size. The birds are ready for use some six months after castration. In designing the assay most investigators have employed either a three-day or a five-day experimental period. The material under test can be given by intramuscular injection or by direct application to the comb. The former route has been used by various workers including Gallagher and Koch (1935), Greenwood *et al.* (1935) and Emmens (1939), while the latter has been recommended by McCullagh and Cuyler (1936), Deanesly and Parkes (1937) and Emmens (1939). Assays in which androgens are administered by inunction are many times more sensitive than those in which the intramuscular route is used.

The capon's comb test has been the most popular bio-assay technique for estimating the concentration of androgens in human blood and urine. The results obtained by its use will be discussed later in this chapter.

(b) CHICK COMB METHODS.—Such methods have been described by Klempner *et al.* (1942), Frank *et al.* (1942), Vallé *et al.* (1947) and Dorfman (1950). Different breeds of chicks vary greatly in their sensitivity to androgens, and it has been shown that both male and female white Leghorns are many times more sensitive than Rhode Island Reds or Barred Rocks. In the assay method described by Frank *et al.* (1942) white Leghorn chicks of either sex at two or three days

TABLE XVIII

PRECISION OF ASSAY METHODS FOR ANDROGENS IN BIRDS

(After Dorfman and Shipley, 1956)

Method.	Mode of Administration of Androgens.	Index of Precision λ .	Reference.
Capon's comb .	Intramuscular	0.189	Greenwood <i>et al.</i> (1935)
Capon's comb .	Intramuscular	0.271	McCullagh and Cuyler (1936)
Capon's comb .	Inunction	0.184	Emmens (1939)
Capon's comb .	Inunction	0.076	McCullagh and Cuyler (1936)
Chick's comb .	Inunction	0.424	Vallé <i>et al.</i> (1947)
Chick's comb .	Inunction	0.334	Dorfman (1950)

of age are used. The solutions under test are administered by inunction and the experimental period is seven days. The birds are killed twenty-four hours after the last application of the androgen solutions and the end point of the assay depends on comb weight.

In general, assays involving chicks are more sensitive, more convenient but less precise than those employing capons. In Table XVIII, which is based on data calculated by Dorfman and Shipley (1956), the precision of the various assay methods in birds is compared in terms of Gaddum's λ .

2. Assays in Mammals.

The most popular assay methods in mammals have depended on the enlargement of the prostate, of the seminal

vesicles, or of the total accessory reproductive organs in castrated rats (Korenchevsky *et al.*, 1935; Callow and Deanesly, 1935; Bülbring and Burn, 1935). Such assays are less sensitive than those employing birds and are not suitable for use in clinical studies. For details of the actual techniques recommended the reader is referred to the original articles.

THE CLINICAL APPLICATION OF ANDROGEN ASSAYS

Bio-assay methods for androgens are time-consuming and unreliable, while chemical methods for the determination of 17-ketosteroids are much more precise, much less laborious and therefore much more suited for routine clinical use. Accordingly, considerably more data is available in the literature on the urinary 17-ketosteroid excretion in health and disease than on the androgen excretion under similar conditions.

It should not be assumed, however, that the information obtained by 17-ketosteroid assays on the one hand and by androgen assays on the other is identical. This point has been stressed by Hamburger (1948) and by Hamilton (1954). Hamburger (1948) showed that castration in men caused a much greater fall in the excretion of biologically active androgens than in the excretion of 17-ketosteroids and concluded that under these circumstances biological androgen determinations gave a better index of testicular function than did urinary 17-ketosteroid estimations. Hamilton (1954) has recently studied the relationship of androgen excretion to 17-ketosteroid excretion in normal and disease states. He expressed his results in the form of an index calculated as the androgenic activity per milligramme of colorimetrically determined 17-ketosteroid. He found that the index differed markedly with the age, sex and clinical condition of the individuals. The index was lower in women than in men and was particularly low in male castrates. The explanation of these findings lies in the fact that the various urinary 17-ketosteroids vary greatly in their androgenic activities. Accordingly, the androgenic potency of a given urine extract will not necessarily parallel the 17-ketosteroid concentration.

In the opinion of Hamburger (1948) the chemical determination of 17-ketosteroids in urine has not rendered the old

biological assays superfluous. It is, however, unlikely that such assays, in view of their many disadvantages from the practical standpoint, will ever again find favour in clinical investigations. For this reason only a brief account of the androgen excretion in health and disease will be given below. Most of the data presented has been summarised from a recent publication by Dorfman and Shipley (1956).

1. The Urinary Excretion of Androgens in Normal Subjects.

In normal *men* the excretion of androgens has been found to be very variable and the mean values in different laboratories have ranged from 20 to 100 i.u. per twenty-four hours. In normal non-pregnant *women* androgen excretion has not been shown to bear any constant relationship to the time of the cycle and the mean figures in different centres have varied from 15 to 50 i.u. per twenty-four hours. In *children* androgens can be detected in the urine in very small amounts at the age of two or three. From the age of seven or eight until puberty a gradual increase in output is noted in both boys and girls; no significant difference between the sexes is evident prior to puberty. Normal adult levels are not generally attained until about the age of seventeen to twenty. In *old men* and *old women* the output of urinary androgens diminishes with advancing years. In a careful study Hamburger *et al.* (1945) found that men between the ages of fifty and sixty excreted quantities of androgens which were only slightly smaller than those in young men. In the sixty-year to seventy-year age group, however, the mean output was approximately one-third of that in young men, while in subjects between seventy and eighty the figure had dropped to one-quarter of that found in early adult life.

For further information on the subject of androgen excretion in normal subjects the reader is referred to articles by Gallagher *et al.* (1937), Dingemans *et al.* (1937), Dorfman *et al.* (1937) and Hamburger *et al.* (1945).

2. The Urinary Excretion of Androgens in Pathological Conditions.

Information on this subject in the literature is scanty and is generally unsuitable for statistical evaluation.

In patients with diseases of the *adrenal cortex* the androgen

excretion follows the same general trends as those already described for the 17-ketosteroids. Abnormally high values are usually encountered in cases of adrenocortical tumour and the readings tend to be especially high if the tumour is malignant. Raised excretion values have been reported in some but not all cases of adrenocortical hyperplasia. In Addison's disease, on the other hand, most investigators have found a well-marked fall in androgen excretion.

There has been some interest in the androgen output in patients with *testicular disease*. In eunuchoidism the excretion is very variable but is usually lower than in healthy individuals of a comparable age group. After castration androgen continues to be excreted but the quantities found in urine are very small. Hamburger (1948) has pointed out that castration in man causes a much greater fall in the androgen excretion than in the output of urinary 17-ketosteroids.

3. Androgen Estimations in Blood under Normal and Pathological Conditions.

The most careful study of the androgen concentration of human blood so far reported is that of Törnblom (1946). This worker assayed the neutral fraction obtained from blood by the capon's comb test and expressed his results in terms of testosterone. In normal *men* between the ages of twenty and thirty the mean concentration was 4.96 ± 0.59^1 $\mu\text{g. per } 100 \text{ ml.}$ of blood. The androgen content of blood decreased with advancing years and between the ages of fifty and sixty was approximately one-third of that found in young men. In normal *women* from twenty to forty years of age the mean concentration was 7.5 ± 3.5^1 $\mu\text{g. per } 100 \text{ ml.}$ In castrated men and oöphorectomised women abnormally low blood androgen titres were found. In a small series of hirsute women the readings were within the normal range.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Total urinary 17-ketosteroids can be estimated either by colorimetric or by polarographic methods. Most workers employ the 'Callow-Zimmermann' technique or some modification thereof. Recently a number of micro methods

¹ Standard error of the mean.

depending on the Zimmermann reaction have been developed and some of these are suitable for routine use. Techniques for the estimation of neutral 17-ketosteroids in blood are not yet sufficiently reliable to allow of their widespread use in clinical studies.

Fractionation of the individual urinary 17-ketosteroids can be performed by chromatographic methods. Such procedures may in the future yield information of considerable diagnostic value.

In normal individuals of both sexes the 17-ketosteroid levels in urine rise rapidly prior to puberty, reach a maximum at about the age of twenty-five and fall progressively with advancing years. In normal subjects the 3β -hydroxy fraction is usually less than 15 per cent. of the total 17-ketosteroid output.

Abnormally high 17-ketosteroid excretion values are generally found in patients with adrenocortical tumours and the levels are particularly high if the tumour is malignant. In such cases the 3β -hydroxy fraction often constitutes over 40 per cent. of the total 17-ketosteroid output. In adrenocortical hyperplasia, on the other hand, high levels are frequently but by no means invariably encountered, and in such patients the 3β -hydroxy fraction is generally within normal limits. In Addison's disease the 17-ketosteroid excretion is below the normal range in most cases.

An abnormally low excretion of total urinary 17-ketosteroids is usually found in panhypopituitarism, in anorexia nervosa, in myxœdema and in advanced liver disease. Raised excretion values have been reported in 'stress' conditions, in simple hirsutism, in interstitial cell tumour of the testis and in arrhenoblastoma.

Androgen assays in blood and urine can be conducted by the capon's comb test or by one or other of the chick comb methods. Such assays are not very satisfactory from the quantitative point of view, and it is therefore unlikely that they will continue to be used in clinical investigations.

REFERENCES

- ALBRIGHT, F., SMITH, P. H. & FRASER, R. W. (1942). *Amer. J. med. Sci.* **204**, 625.
 BARNETT, J., HENLY, A. A. & MORRIS, C. J. O. R. (1946 a). *Biochem. J.* **40**, 445.
 BARNETT, J., HENLY, A. A., MORRIS, C. J. O. R. & WARREN, F. L. (1946 b). *Biochem. J.* **40**, 778.
 BIRKE, G. (1954 a). *Acta med. scand. suppl.* 291, p. 53.
 BIRKE, G. (1954 b). *Acta med. scand. suppl.* 291, p. 81.

- BIRKE, G., FRANKSSON, C. & PLANTIN, L.-O. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh. suppl.* 17, p. 3.
- BIRKE, G., FRANKSSON, C. & PLANTIN, L.-O. (1955). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **18**, 201.
- BISHOP, P. M. F. (1954). *Recent Advances in Endocrinology*, 7th ed., pp. 72 et seq. London: Churchill.
- BORTH, R., LUNENFELD, B. & DE WATTEVILLE, H. (1957). *Fertil. Steril.* **8**, 233.
- BRUGER, M., ROSENKRATZ, J. A. & LOWENSTEIN, B. E. (1944). *Amer. J. med. Sci.* **208**, 212.
- BÜLBRING, E. & BURN, J. H. (1935). *J. Physiol.* **85**, 320.
- BUTENANDT, A. (1931). *Z. angew. Chem.* **44**, 905.
- BUTT, W. R. (1950). *Lancet*, **1**, 208.
- BUTT, W. R., MORRIS, C. J. O. R., ROBINSON, A. M. & WARREN, F. L. (1951). *J. Endocrin.* **7**, proc. xii.
- CALLOW, N. H., CALLOW, R. K. & EMMENS, C. W. (1938). *Biochem. J.* **32**, 1312.
- CALLOW, N. H., CALLOW, R. K. & EMMENS, C. W. (1940). *J. Endocrin.* **2**, 88.
- CALLOW, R. K. & DEANESLY, R. (1935). *Biochem. J.* **29**, 1424.
- COOK, C. D., GROSS, E. R., LANDING, B. H. & ZYGMUNTOWICZ, A. S. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **12**, 725.
- DAVIS, M. E. & PLOTZ, E. J. (1956). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **21**, 245.
- DEAN, A. L., WOODARD, H. Q. & TWOMBLY, G. H. (1944). *Surgery*, **16**, 169.
- DEANESLY, R. & PARKES, A. S. (1937). *Proc. roy. Soc. B.* **124**, 279.
- DESMARIS, M. H. L. (1949). *Ann. Rheum. Dis.* **8-9**, 296.
- DINGEMANSE, E., BORCHARDT, H. & LAQUEUR, E. (1937). *Biochem. J.* **31**, 500.
- DINGEMANSE, E., HUIS IN'T VELD, L. G. & HARTOGH-KATZ, S. L. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **12**, 66.
- DINGEMANSE, E., HUIS IN'T VELD, L. G. & DE LAAT, B. M. (1946). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **6**, 535.
- DOBRINER, K., LIEBERMAN, S., HARITON, L., SARETT, L. H. & RHOADS, C. P. (1947). *J. biol. Chem.* **169**, 221.
- DOBRINER, K., LIEBERMAN, S. & RHOADS, C. P. (1948). *J. biol. Chem.* **172**, 241.
- DOHAN, F. C., RICHARDSON, E. M., BLUEMLE, L. W., Jr. & GYÖRGY, P. (1952). *J. clin. Invest.* **31**, 481.
- DORFMAN, R. I. (1950). In *Hormone Assay*, ch. 13. Ed., C. W. Emmens. New York: Academic Press.
- DORFMAN, R. I., GREULICH, W. W. & SOLOMON, C. I. (1937). *Endocrinology*, **21**, 741.
- DORFMAN, R. I. & SHIPLEY, R. A. (1956). *The Androgens*. New York: Wiley. London: Chapman & Hall.
- DORFMAN, R. I. & UNGAR, F. (1953). *Metabolism of Steroid Hormones*. Minneapolis: Burgess Publishing Co.
- DREKTER, I. J., HEISLER, A., SCISM, G. R., STERN, S., PEARSON, S. & MCGAVACK, T. H. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **12**, 55.
- DREKTER, I. J., PEARSON, S., BARTCZAK, E. & MCGAVACK, T. H. (1947). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **7**, 795.
- EISENMANN, A. J., ISBELL, H. N., FRASER, H. F. & SLOAN, J. (1953). *Fed. Proc.* **12**, 200.
- EMMENS, C. W. (1939). *Spec. Rep. Ser. med. Res. Coun., Lond.* No. 234.
- ENGEL, L. L. (1954). *Meth. biochem. Anal.* **1**, 479.
- ENGSTROM, W. W. & MASON, H. L. (1944). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **4**, 517.
- ESCAMILLA, R. F. (1949). *Ann. intern. Med.* **30**, 249.
- FIESER, L. F. & FIESER, M. (1949). *Natural Products related to Phenanthrene*. Amer. Chem. Soc. Monog. No. 70, 3rd ed. New York: Reinhold.
- FORBES, A. P. & ALBRIGHT, F. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 926.
- FORBES, A. P., DONALDSON, E. C., REIFENSTEIN, E. C., Jr. & ALBRIGHT, F. (1947). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **7**, 264.
- FRANK, R. T., KLEMPNER, E., HOLLANDER, F. & KRISS, B. (1942). *Endocrinology*, **31**, 63.
- FRASER, R. W., FORBES, A. P., ALBRIGHT, F., SULKOWITCH, H. & REIFENSTEIN, E. C., Jr. (1941). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **1**, 234.
- FRIEDGOOD, H. B. (1944). In *The Chemistry and Physiology of Hormones*, pp. 195-209. Ed., F. R. Moulton. Washington, D.C.: A.A.A.S.
- GALLAGHER, T. F. & KOCH, F. C. (1935). *J. Pharmacol.* **55**, 97.

- GALLAGHER, T. F. & MOULTON, F. R. (1944). In *The Chemistry and Physiology of Hormones*, p. 186. Ed., F. R. Moulton. Washington, D.C.: A.A.A.S.
- GALLAGHER, T. F., PETERSON, D. H., DORFMAN, R. I., KENYON, A. T. & KOCH, F. C. (1937). *J. clin. Invest.* **16**, 695.
- GARDNER, L. I. (1953). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **13**, 941.
- GREENWOOD, A. W., BLYTH, J. S. S. & CALLOW, R. K. (1935). *Biochem. J.* **29**, 1400.
- HAMBURGER, C. (1948). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **1**, 19.
- HAMBURGER, C. (1954). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **17**, 116.
- HAMBURGER, C., HALVORSEN, K. & PEDERSEN, J. (1945). *Acta pharm. tox., Kbh.* **1**, 129.
- HAMBURGER, C. & RASCH, G. (1948). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **1**, 375.
- HAMILTON, J. B. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 452.
- HIRSCHMANN, H. & HIRSCHMANN, F. B. (1947). *J. biol. Chem.* **167**, 7.
- HOLTORFF, A. F. & KOCH, F. C. (1940). *J. biol. Chem.* **135**, 377.
- HUIS IN'T VELD, L. G. & DINGEMANSE, E. (1948). *Acta brev. neerl. Physiol.* **16**, 9.
- JOHNSEN, S. G. (1956 a). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **21**, 127.
- JOHNSEN, S. G. (1956 b). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **21**, 146.
- JOHNSEN, S. G. (1956 c). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **21**, 157.
- KELLIE, A. E. & WADE, A. P. (1956). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **23**, 357.
- KEPLER, E. J. & MASON, H. L. (1947). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **7**, 543.
- KINNUNEN, O. & KAUPPINEN, M. (1951). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **8**, 380.
- KINSELL, L. W. & LISSER, H. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **12**, 50.
- KLEMPNER, E., HOLLANDER, F., FRANK, R. T. & KRISS, B. (1942). *Endocrinology*, **31**, 71.
- KLINEFELTER, H. F., JR., REIFENSTEIN, E. C., JR. & ALBRIGHT, F. (1942). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **2**, 615.
- KOCHAKIAN, C. D. & STIDWORTHY, G. (1952). *J. biol. Chem.* **199**, 607.
- KORNECHEVSKY, J., DENNISON, M. & SIMPSON, S. L. (1935). *Biochem. J.* **29**, 2522.
- LIEDERMAN, S. & TEICH, S. (1953). *Pharmacol. Rev.* **5**, 285.
- McCULLAGH, D. R. & CUYLER, W. K. (1936). *J. Pharmacol.* **66**, 379.
- MARTI, M. (1951). *Helv. med. acta.* **18**, 215.
- MASON, H. L. & ENGSTROM, W. W. (1950). *Physiol. Rev.* **30**, 321.
- MIGEON, C. J. (1954). In *Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Endocrinology*, vol. 8, p. 141. London: Churchill.
- MIGEON, C. J. & PLAGER, J. E. (1955). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **15**, 702.
- NEWNS, C. H. (1952). *Brit. J. Surg.* **39**, 379.
- PATTERSON, J., MCPHEE, I. M. & GREENWOOD, A. W. (1942). *Brit. med. J.* **1**, 35.
- PEDERSON, J. (1947). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **7**, 115.
- PINCUS, G. (1943). *Endocrinology*, **32**, 176.
- PINCUS, G. (1947). *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* **1**, 123.
- PINCUS, G. & HOAGLAND, H. (1943). *J. Aviat. Med.* **14**, 173.
- PLANTIN, L.-O. & BIRKE, G. (1954). *Acta med. scand. suppl.* 291, p. 5.
- PLANTIN, L.-O. & BIRKE, G. (1955). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **19**, 8.
- POND, M. H. (1951). *Lancet*, **2**, 906.
- POND, M. H. (1954). *J. Endocrin.* **10**, 202.
- Report of the Medical Research Council's Committee on Clinical Endocrinology (1951). *Lancet*, **2**, 585.
- RILEY, C. L. & MURPHY, C. H. (1951). *Amer. J. Obstet. Gynec.* **62**, 369.
- RUBIN, B. L., DORFMAN, R. I. & PINCUS, G. (1954). *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* **9**, 213.
- SAVARD, K. (1953). *J. biol. Chem.* **202**, 457.
- SAYERS, G. (1950). *Physiol. Rev.* **30**, 241.
- SCOTT, W. W. & VERMEULEN, C. (1942). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **2**, 450.
- SECKEL, H. P. G., SCOTT, W. W. & BENDITT, E. P. (1949). *Amer. J. Dis. Child.* **78**, 484.
- SOBEL, E. H., LEE, C. M., JR., ESSELBORN, V. M. & CLARK, L. C., JR. (1953). *Amer. J. Dis. Child.* **86**, 733.
- SPRECHLER, M. (1950). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **5**, 101.
- STATLAND, H. & LERMAN, R. (1950). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **10**, 1401.
- TALBOT, N. B., BERMAN, R. A. & MACLACHLAN, E. A. (1942). *J. biol. Chem.* **143**, 211.

- TALBOT, N. B. & BUTLER, A. M. (1942). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **2**, 724.
- TALBOT, N. B., BUTLER, A. M. & MACLACHLAN, E. A. (1940). *New Engl. J. Med.* **223**, 369.
- TÖRNBLÖM, N. (1946). *Acta med. scand. suppl.* 170.
- UNGAR, F. & DORFMAN, R. I. (1953). *J. biol. Chem.* **205**, 125.
- VALLÉ, J. R., HENRIQUES, S. B. & HENRIQUES, O. B. (1947). *Endocrinology*, **41**, 335.
- VENNING, E. H. (1946). *Endocrinology*, **39**, 203.
- VENNING, E. H. & BROWNE, J. S. L. (1947). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **7**, 79.
- VENNING, E. H., HOFFMAN, M. M. & BROWNE, J. S. L. (1942). *J. biol. Chem.* **146**, 369.
- VESTERGAARD, P. (1951). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **8**, 193.
- WALTERS, W. & SPRAGUE, R. G. (1949). *Ann. Surg.* **129**, 677.
- WARREN, F. L. (1945). *Cancer Res.* **5**, 49.
- WARTER, J., SCHWARTZ, J. & NEIL, J. P. (1953). *Pr. méd.* **61**, 1019.
- WERNER, S. C. (1941). *J. clin. Invest.* **20**, 21.
- WILKINS, L. (1950). *The Diagnosis and Treatment of Endocrine Disorders in Childhood and Adolescence*. Springfield, Ill.: Thomas.
- WILKINS, L., LEWIS, R. A., KLEIN, R., GARDNER, L. I., CRIGLER, J. R., ROSEMBERG, E. & MIGEON, C. J. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 1.
- WOLFE, J. K., HERSHBERG, E. B. & FIESER, L. F. (1940). *J. biol. Chem.* **136**, 653.
- WOLFSON, W. Q., GUTERMAN, H. S., LEVINE, R., COHN, C., HUNT, H. D. & ROSENBERG, E. F. (1949). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **9**, 497.
- ZIMMERMANN, W. (1935). *Hoppe-Seyl. Z.* **233**, 257.
- ZYGUMTOWICZ, A. S., WOOD, M. S., CHRISTO, E. & TALBOT, N. B. (1951). *J. clin. Endocrin.* **11**, 578.

CHAPTER XIII

Adrenaline and Noradrenaline

INTRODUCTION

BOTH adrenaline and noradrenaline are produced by the adrenal medulla while noradrenaline is now recognised as the main substance liberated by post-ganglionic sympathetic nerves. Another name for adrenaline is *epinephrine*, while noradrenaline is sometimes referred to as *norepinephrine* or *arterenol*.

1. Chemical Nature of Adrenaline and Noradrenaline.

The structural formulæ of adrenaline and noradrenaline are shown in Fig. 65.

It will be noted that the two compounds resemble one

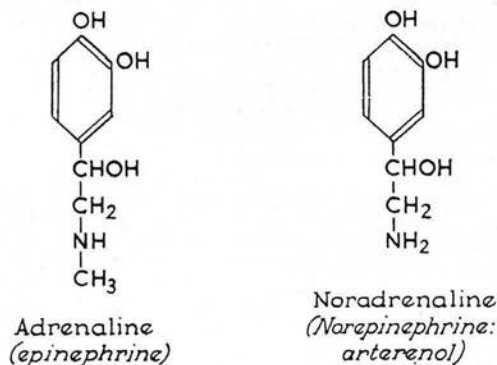


FIG. 65

Structural formulæ of adrenaline and noradrenaline.

another very closely in chemical structure. The only difference is that in noradrenaline the nitrogen in the terminal amino (NH_2) group is not methylated. Noradrenaline is a primary amine while adrenaline is a secondary amine. Both compounds are generally referred to as *catecholamines*. The laevo isomer of adrenaline (*l*-adrenaline) occurs naturally in the

adrenal gland and has much greater pharmacological activity than the dextro isomer. Tullar (1948) succeeded in resolving racemic noradrenaline into its lævo and dextro isomers, and Luduena *et al.* (1949) were able to show that, in the case of this compound also, the pharmacological activity resided mainly in the lævo fraction. Adrenaline is stable in weak acids but is rapidly oxidised in neutral and alkaline solutions. Noradrenaline is much more resistant to oxidation than adrenaline.

2. Occurrence of Adrenaline and Noradrenaline in Body Fluids.

The quantity of catecholamines present in *human peripheral blood* under physiological conditions is very small and frequently no activity can be detected even when very sensitive bio-assay methods are used. Little is at present known regarding the form in which adrenaline and noradrenaline circulate in blood. Gaddum *et al.* (1949) have emphasised that reliable estimations of catecholamines in blood are possible only if the blood is collected very carefully into a siliconed needle and a syringe containing heparin. These precautions are designed to prevent the liberation from platelets of substances such as histamine and 5-hydroxytryptamine which may interfere with the bio-assay.

Adrenaline and noradrenaline are excreted in *urine* partly in the *free* form and partly *conjugated* with glucuronic acid (Holtz *et al.*, 1947; Kroneberg and Schumann, 1950; Euler and Hellner, 1951; Burn, 1953). Euler and Luft (1951) found that when noradrenaline was administered to healthy subjects by intravenous infusion 2 to 3 per cent. of the injected dose appeared in the urine as free noradrenaline but the adrenaline content of urine did not rise.

The human adrenal medulla is believed to contain a mixture consisting of approximately 85 per cent. of adrenaline and 15 per cent. of noradrenaline (Euler, 1955). In normal urine, on the other hand, the quantity of noradrenaline generally exceeds that of adrenaline. This finding suggests that under normal conditions the large proportion of catecholamines in urine is derived from adrenergic nerves rather than from the adrenal medulla. The excretion of adrenaline and noradrenaline in human urine under normal and pathological conditions in man will be considered in detail later in this chapter.

METHODS OF ESTIMATION OF ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE

A large number of methods have been proposed for the quantitative determination of catecholamines in blood and urine. The subject has been recently reviewed by many investigators including Gaddum (1950), Euler (1950, 1955), Pekkarinen (1954), Robson and Keele (1956) and Gaddum and Holzbauer (1957). Table XIX which is taken from a paper

TABLE XIX
SENSITIVITY OF VARIOUS ASSAY METHODS FOR
ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE

(After Gaddum and Holzbauer, 1957)

Method of Assay.	Amount (Nanogram *) required for each Test.	
	Adrenaline.	Noradrenaline.
<i>Biological—</i>		
Cat's blood-pressure . . .	200	100
Rat's blood-pressure . . .	50	5
Rat's blood-pressure (pithed) . .	7	5
Rat's uterus (2 ml. bath) . . .	0.1	15
Rabbit's ear (perfused) . . .	0.5	1
Rabbit's ear (Armin and Grant, 1953)	0.002	...
Rabbit's gut (10 ml. bath) . .	40	40
Hen rectal cæcum (2 ml. bath) . .	2	50
<i>Chemical—</i>		
Formation of adrenochrome . .	10,000	10,000
Reduction of arsenomolybdate . .	50	800
Formation of adrenolutin . . .	20	20
Coupling with ethylenediamine . .	6	6

The amounts required for a reasonably precise bio-assay would be five to ten times the amounts given above.

* Nanogram (ng.) = one thousandth of a microgram.

by Gaddum and Holzbauer (1957) shows the approximate sensitivities of some of the procedures suggested.

One of the main difficulties encountered in such estimations arises from the fact that body fluids contain very small quantities of catecholamines in association with other pharmacologically active substances such as histamine, acetylcholine and 5-hydroxytryptamine which are liable to interfere with

the final determination. Accordingly it is necessary to employ preliminary purification methods which remove interfering substances from extracts and which concentrate the catecholamines in these extracts. Special procedures are also required to distinguish adrenaline from noradrenaline.

The ensuing discussion will be conducted under four main headings. These are:

1. Methods of purification of extracts.
2. Bio-assay methods for adrenaline and noradrenaline.
3. Chemical assay methods for adrenaline and noradrenaline.
4. Assays of mixtures of adrenaline and noradrenaline.

1. Methods of Purification of Extracts.

Such procedures have generally depended on chromatography either on columns or on paper. Aluminium hydroxide and aluminium oxide have been much used as adsorbents. These substances show a high degree of specificity for catechol derivatives which are adsorbed easily and completely. In the method described by Shaw (1938) freshly precipitated aluminium hydroxide is shaken with a solution containing adrenaline at pH 4 and is then separated by centrifugation. This removes some interfering substances. The supernatant fluid is then adjusted to pH 8.5 and is shaken again with aluminium hydroxide which adsorbs adrenaline completely at this pH but leaves other substances behind in solution; the adrenaline can then be recovered by dissolving the aluminium hydroxide in acid. Euler (1948) slightly modified Shaw's method by precipitating the aluminium hydroxide in the presence of adrenaline and then precipitating the salts from acid solution by a mixture of acetone and alcohol. In this way he obtained a solution which was suitable for bio-assay. In more recent methods such as those described by Lund (1950), Crawford and Outschoorn (1951) and Weil-Malherbe and Bone (1952) aluminium oxide is used as an adsorbent in place of aluminium hydroxide.

Lecomte and Fischer (1949) passed their extracts through a column of 'Decalco' which adsorbs both adrenaline and noradrenaline. A solution of iodine at pH 4 is then used to convert adrenaline to adrenochrome and to elute it from the column. Noradrenaline can be eluted at pH 7. Bergström

and Hansson (1951) have reported that the catecholamines can be successfully adsorbed on the ion-exchange resin IRC 50.

In recent years *paper chromatographic methods* have become increasingly popular for the purification of extracts containing adrenaline and noradrenaline (James, 1948; Crawford and Outschoorn, 1951; Vogt, 1954). After chromatographic separation the catecholamines can be eluted from the appropriate part of the paper and can then be estimated by bio-assay.

2. Bio-assay Methods for Adrenaline and Noradrenaline.

Many tests have been devised by means of which parallel assays can be performed on at least two preparations, one of which is more sensitive to adrenaline and the other to noradrenaline. In this way it is possible to estimate the total concentration of catecholamines present and to calculate in addition the relative amounts of adrenaline and noradrenaline. According to Euler (1955) a satisfactory differentiation is usually obtained when the difference in ratios is tenfold or more. The following techniques will be considered:—

(a) BLOOD-PRESSURE IN CATS AND RATS.—The pressor effect in the spinal cat has been much used for the assay of catecholamines in body fluids, tissues and commercial extracts (Cannon and Rosenbluth, 1933; Greer *et al.*, 1938; Burn *et al.*, 1950). This test is more sensitive to noradrenaline than to adrenaline (Table XIX).

Crawford and Outschoorn (1951) have shown that the pressor test in urethanised rats is especially sensitive to noradrenaline and is much less sensitive to adrenaline. Vogt (1952) found that the sensitivity of the preparation can be increased by the intravenous injection of hexamethonium (C_6). In this way as little as 15 ng. of noradrenaline can be detected.

(b) RAT'S UTERUS.—Although it had been known for many years that the isolated rat uterus is readily inhibited by adrenaline, the assay was not put on a quantitative basis until the work of de Jalón *et al.* (1945), who studied the many variable factors affecting the test. Gaddum *et al.* (1949) compared the rat uterus test with other assay methods and found that it was much more sensitive to adrenaline than to noradrenaline (Table XIX). These studies were extended by

Gaddum and Lembeck (1949) who concluded that noradrenaline is unlikely to interfere with the use of this preparation for the assay of adrenaline unless the former compound is present in a very high concentration. Under optimal conditions as little as 0.1 ng. of adrenaline can be determined by this method.

(c) RABBIT'S EAR.—Armin and Grant (1953) have described an assay method which will detect as little as 0.002 ng. of adrenaline. The drug is injected into the main artery of the rabbit's ear *in situ*, the preparation having been sensitised by degenerative section of the nerves. The end point of the test consists in measuring the diameter of the artery at intervals with a microscope. The technique is sufficiently sensitive to detect the presence of adrenaline in blood.

(d) INTESTINAL MUSCLE IN RABBITS, RATS AND HENS.—Catecholamines usually produce an inhibitory effect on intestinal muscle. Rabbit's intestine is equally sensitive to adrenaline and noradrenaline (Table XIX). Rat's colon is especially sensitive to noradrenaline (Gaddum *et al.*, 1949) but also responds to 5-hydroxytryptamine. Hen's rectal cæcum is much more sensitive to adrenaline than to noradrenaline (Euler, 1948).

3. Chemical Assay Methods for Adrenaline and Noradrenaline.

Chemical estimations of catecholamines can be performed either by *colorimetric* or by *fluorimetric* methods.

(a) COLORIMETRIC METHODS.—Techniques depending on colorimetry have been described by Euler and Hamberg (1949), Suzuki and Ozaki (1951) and others. Adrenaline is easily oxidised under suitable conditions to form a pink substance, adrenochrome, and other pink indole compounds. Various oxidising agents can be used including iodine (Euler and Hamberg, 1949) and potassium permanganate (Suzuki and Ozaki, 1951). Such tests are relatively insensitive but are reasonably specific.

Another group of colorimetric methods depends on the fact that adrenaline can act as a reducing agent. In general such procedures are more sensitive but less specific than those mentioned above. In the methods of Whitehorn (1935) and Shaw (1938) adrenaline reduces arsenomolybdic acid to a

blue compound. The blue colour produced by adrenaline can be increased three to five times by preliminary treatment with alkali. No such increase occurs in the case of noradrenaline, and therefore this technique may be of value in differentiating between the two catecholamines.

(b) FLUORIMETRIC METHODS.—In 1930 Paget showed that adrenaline became fluorescent in alkaline solution. Gaddum and Schild (1934) proposed an assay method based on this fact. These workers noted that the fluorescence produced by noradrenaline was only 2 per cent. of that of adrenaline and that other closely related substances were also comparatively inactive. Ehrlén (1948) and Fischer (1949) have subsequently shown that the fluorescent material formed from adrenaline is adrenolutin.

Lund (1949 *a, b, c*) has described a fluorimetric method for the quantitative determination of adrenaline and noradrenaline. In this technique the catecholamines are oxidised to adrenochrome and noradrenochrome by means of manganese dioxide and are then converted to adrenolutin and noradrenolutin in the presence of alkali and ascorbic acid. Adrenolutin and noradrenolutin give a strong yellowish-green fluorescence in ultra-violet light, and this can be estimated in a sensitive fluorimeter. Euler and Floding (1955) have described a similar method in which potassium ferricyanide acts as the oxidising agent instead of manganese dioxide. The originators claim that this technique can measure as little as 20 ng. of both adrenaline and noradrenaline.

Weil-Malherbe and Bone (1952) have described a different type of test in which the catechols are first oxidised to chromes and are then allowed to form fluorescent condensation products with ethylene diamine. This method is very sensitive and will detect as little as 6 ng. of adrenaline and noradrenaline (Table XIX). It is, however, relatively non-specific as shown by the fact that catechol itself and various catechol derivatives are also capable of forming fluorescent compounds.

In general it may be said that chemical methods are more convenient but less specific than bio-assays. It is probable, however, that in the future improved chemical methods depending on fluorimetry will largely replace biological assays for the quantitative determination of catecholamines in body fluids.

4. Assays of Mixtures of Adrenaline and Noradrenaline.

This subject has been reviewed by Gaddum (1950), Mann and West (1950), Euler (1955) and Gaddum and Holzbauer (1957). Both biological and chemical methods can be used to calculate the relative proportions of adrenaline and noradrenaline in a mixture. The technique generally employed is as follows:—

Standard solutions of adrenaline and noradrenaline are compared with the unknown mixture by two different methods, one of which is particularly sensitive to adrenaline and the other to noradrenaline. The concentrations of the two catecholamines in the mixture can then be determined by appropriate mathematical methods.

This method of calculation has been applied to various combinations of bio-assays. Euler (1948) used the cat's blood-pressure and the hen's rectal cæcum, Bülbring (1949) the rat's uterus and the cat's blood-pressure, Gaddum and Lembeck (1949) the rat's uterus and the rat's colon, and Burn *et al.* (1950) the cat's blood-pressure and nictitating membrane. Results calculated in this way are subject to large errors.

A similar procedure can be adopted in the case of colorimetric or fluorimetric methods of assay (Euler and Hamberg, 1949; Euler and Floding, 1955). Under acid conditions adrenaline is more rapidly oxidised than noradrenaline, and an estimate of the relative proportion of the two compounds can therefore be obtained by oxidising the mixture for appropriate times at two different pH 's. In the method described by Weil-Malherbe and Bone (1952) the fluorescent light is exposed to filters of different colours. Using a yellow filter, the intensity of the fluorescent light from adrenaline is approximately four times stronger than that from noradrenaline; when a blue-green filter is employed the intensities are equal.

If more accurate estimations are required the two substances should be separated by paper chromatographic methods prior to the final determination. Holzbauer and Vogt (1954) have found that under these circumstances a very satisfactory combination of tests is the rat's uterus and the rat's blood-pressure. Using these methods it is possible to estimate as little as 0.5 ng. of adrenaline and 15 ng. of noradrenaline in a mixture.

THE URINARY EXCRETION OF ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE IN NORMAL SUBJECTS

The clinical applications of the assay of catecholamines in urine have been intensively studied by Euler and his collaborators in Stockholm, and the present account is based mainly on their conclusions. These workers purified their extracts by adsorbing the catecholamines on aluminium hydroxide. The final determination was made by bio-assay using the cat's blood-pressure and the hen's rectal cæcum. The excretion figures quoted are for the *free* compounds. According to Euler (1955) the relationship between the free and total catecholamines in urine is rather variable, but

TABLE XX
URINARY EXCRETION OF FREE ADRENALINE AND
NORADRENALINE IN HEALTHY SUBJECTS
(After Euler, 1955)

Condition.	Adrenaline, μg. per Twenty-four Hours.	Noradrenaline, μg. per Twenty-four Hours.
Staying in bed	2 to 4	10 to 20
Resting (not in bed during day) .	3 to 6	20 to 40
Moderate activity during day .	5 to 10	30 to 60

usually the figures for total catechols are one and a half to three times higher than those for the free compounds. The difference can be explained by the presence in urine extracts of conjugated forms of adrenaline and noradrenaline (see p. 323). Most investigators now believe that the noradrenaline in urine is derived mainly from the adrenergic nerves while the adrenaline comes predominantly from the adrenal medulla.

In healthy subjects under physiological conditions the urinary excretion of adrenaline ranges from 1.5 to 8 μg. per twenty-four hours, while for noradrenaline the corresponding figures are 15 to 20 μg. per twenty-four hours (Euler *et al.*, 1955 *a*). Readings tend to be higher during the day than by night. Table XX, which is taken from a recent publication by Euler

(1955), shows the excretion of adrenaline and noradrenaline in healthy subjects at different times of the day and under varying conditions.

In a recent study Elmadjian *et al.* (1956 *b*) have reported that in healthy subjects the excretion of both noradrenaline and adrenaline is higher in the waking state than when asleep. These workers state that the percentage increase of adrenaline under these circumstances is higher than that for noradrenaline.

FACTORS INFLUENCING THE EXCRETION OF ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE IN HEALTH AND DISEASE

1. Vascular Reflexes.

Euler *et al.* (1955 *b*) showed that healthy young subjects excrete much larger quantities of both adrenaline and noradrenaline when tilted to $+75$ degrees than when recumbent. It is probable that the increased excretion of noradrenaline results from the activation of the homeostatic reflexes which normally control blood-pressure, while the increased output of adrenaline probably reflects the moderate degree of 'stress' involved in this procedure.

2. Postural Hypotension.

In this condition the reflex mechanisms normally operating to maintain the blood-pressure against the effect of gravity are in abeyance or show a greatly decreased sensitivity. As a result a profound fall in blood-pressure occurs in the standing position. In patients with this syndrome Luft and Euler (1953) found that the urinary excretion of noradrenaline was considerably below the normal range and that the output of adrenaline was also depressed but to a lesser degree. Luft and Euler (1953) have suggested that in patients with postural hypotension the vasomotor system is unable to produce sufficient quantities of noradrenaline to maintain the homeostatic reflex activity.

3. Muscular Work.

Euler and Hellner (1952) reported that during strenuous exercise the output of both adrenaline and noradrenaline in urine rose as much as tenfold over control levels. In slight or

moderate muscular work, on the other hand, the readings were generally within the normal range or were only slightly elevated. On the basis of these observations it was concluded that during heavy muscular exercise both the adrenal medulla and the adrenergic nerves were in a state of increased secretory activity.

4. Hypoglycæmia.

Recent work by Euler and Luft (1952) and by Elmadjian *et al.* (1956 *b*) demonstrated that the excretion of adrenaline in healthy subjects was increased approximately tenfold when hypoglycæmia was produced by the intravenous injection of insulin in a dosage of 0.1 i.u. per kg. body weight. Insulin administration did not appreciably affect the output of noradrenaline in normal subjects. In patients with acromegaly and in two cases of postural hypotension hypoglycæmia was not associated with an increase in the urinary excretion of either of the catecholamines (Euler and Luft, 1952).

5. Surgical Stress.

Franksson *et al.* (1954) found that uncomplicated surgical procedures, *e.g.*, cholecystectomy, did not cause any marked change in the urinary excretion of adrenaline and noradrenaline. On the other hand, the occurrence of any complication such as pain, fear, or delayed wound healing was usually accompanied by a rise in catecholamine excretion. Under such circumstances excretion values for both adrenaline and noradrenaline were abnormally high.

In the cases studied by Franksson *et al.* (1954) assays were also performed of the plasma concentration of 17:21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids (Porter-Silber chromogens) using the method described by Nelson and Samuels in 1952 (see p. 264). There was no obvious parallelism between the urinary excretion of catecholamines on the one hand and the plasma levels of corticosteroids on the other. Not infrequently abnormally high plasma corticosteroid values were associated with a normal urinary excretion of adrenaline and noradrenaline.

6. Emotional Stress.

It has been claimed (Funkenstein *et al.*, 1952) that in certain types of emotional stress the excretion of catecholamines in

urine is abnormally high. In a study on Air Force personnel Euler and Lundberg (1954) reported that the piloting of aircraft was generally associated with a rise in adrenaline excretion. Noradrenaline was found in increased quantities only in pilots undertaking advanced flying. Elmadjian *et al.* (1956 *a*) have recently reported that the psychomotor stress involved in operating a pursuit meter caused an increased urinary output of both adrenaline and noradrenaline in healthy subjects.

7. Adrenalectomy.

Euler *et al.* (1954 *a*) found that after unilateral adrenalectomy little change in catecholamine excretion occurred. After bilateral adrenalectomy the excretion of adrenaline fell markedly to approximately one-fifth of the normal level, while the output of noradrenaline was virtually unchanged. It is probable that the small quantities of adrenaline present in urine after bilateral adrenalectomy are derived from chromaffin cells present in various organs.

8. Administration of various Hormones and Drugs.

At the time of writing little reliable information is available on this subject. In a patient with rheumatoid arthritis Euler and Luft (1949) showed that ACTH caused a marked fall in the output of noradrenaline but had no effect on the adrenaline excretion. This finding was confirmed by Elmadjian *et al.* (1956 *b*) in a study involving four healthy subjects. Cortisone in a dosage of 200 mg. per day produced a decrease in the quantity of noradrenaline excreted and a slight rise in the output of adrenaline (Luft and Euler, 1952). The effect of insulin has been discussed above.

Quantitative determinations of the excretion of adrenaline and noradrenaline in urine have been made after the intravenous administration of these compounds to healthy subjects (Euler and Luft, 1951; Euler and Zetterström, 1955). It has generally been found that 1 to 4 per cent. of the administered adrenaline and noradrenaline is recovered in the urine.

Elmadjian *et al.* (1956 *a*) have recently reported that the parasympathomimetic drug acetyl β -methyl choline (mecholin) causes a slight increase in the excretion of noradrenaline but does not affect the adrenaline content of urine.

THE URINARY EXCRETION OF ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE IN PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

1. Essential Hypertension.

In a recent study of 500 patients with this disease Euler *et al.* (1954 *b*) found that the excretion of noradrenaline was within normal limits in 84 per cent. of cases and was somewhat elevated in only 16 per cent. These workers concluded that there was no definite evidence for an increased production of noradrenaline in the great majority of patients with essential hypertension. A similar conclusion was reached by Burn (1953) and by West (1954) in a smaller series of cases. Euler *et al.* (1954 *b*) were unable to demonstrate any alteration in the excretion of adrenaline in patients with essential hypertension.

2. Coronary Thrombosis.

Increased excretion values for noradrenaline in acute cases of coronary thrombosis have been reported by Forssman *et al.* (1952). These workers found abnormally high levels in nine out of fifteen patients studied. Forssman *et al.* (1952) and Nuzum and Bischoff (1953) showed that in a proportion of cases the excretion of adrenaline in urine was also raised.

3. Phaeochromocytoma.

This tumour which is also called a *chromaffinoma* is associated with hyperfunction of the adrenal medulla and with a greatly increased excretion of catecholamines in urine. Such tumours generally arise in the adrenal medulla itself but in approximately 10 per cent. of cases they are found in the collections of chromaffin tissue situated along the abdominal aorta as far down as its bifurcation. The clinical features, pathology and differential diagnosis of phaeochromocytoma have been recently reviewed by Goldenberg (1951), Cahill (1953), Rosenheim (1954) and others. Chromaffin tumours account for less than 1 per cent. of all cases of arterial hypertension in man. They are, however, of importance because they produce a form of hypertension which can be cured by surgery.

Numerous investigators have shown that in patients with phaeochromocytoma the urinary excretion of catecholamines is markedly increased (Engel and Euler, 1950; Pekkarinen and Pitkänen, 1955; West and Taylor, 1955; Euler, 1955). In

some cases the noradrenaline output has reached levels of 3,000 $\mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours while urinary adrenaline readings of over 750 $\mu\text{g.}$ per twenty-four hours have been reported. Euler (1955) has found that, in a proportion of patients, the noradrenaline content of urine is so high that the urine need not be extracted and can be tested directly on the cat's blood-pressure.

The relative proportions of adrenaline and noradrenaline in urine may sometimes be of value in determining the site of the lesion (Euler, 1955). When the output of noradrenaline is very high and the excretion of adrenaline relatively normal the tumour tends to arise from the chromaffin tissue along the abdominal aorta. On the other hand, a tumour arising in the adrenal medulla itself tends to cause a greatly increased urinary excretion of both catecholamines.

ESTIMATIONS IN BLOOD AND IN TUMOUR TISSUE.—Lund and Møller (1951) and Euler *et al.* (1953) demonstrated that the blood concentration of catecholamines in patients with phæochromocytoma is markedly elevated. Lund and Møller reported blood concentrations of noradrenaline of 2.1 to 2.4 $\mu\text{g.}$ per 100 ml. while Euler *et al.* (1953) found levels between 3.4 and 3.8 $\mu\text{g.}$ per 100 ml. In normal individuals the blood concentration of noradrenaline is generally less than 0.2 $\mu\text{g.}$ per 100 ml.

The concentration of catecholamines in phæochrome tumours has been studied by—among others—Holton (1949) and West (1955). According to Holton (1949) such tumours contain relatively large quantities of noradrenaline and comparatively small amounts of adrenaline. The total amounts of the two catecholamines have been estimated as 5 to 15 mg. per g. tumour tissue, whereas normal adrenal tissue contains approximately 1 mg. per g. of these substances. The percentage of noradrenaline in phæochrome tumours has varied from 15 to 97 per cent (West, 1955).

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Adrenaline and noradrenaline can be estimated in body fluids either by biological or by chemical methods. It is probable that in the future improved chemical methods depending on fluorimetry will largely replace bio-assay techniques.

Extracts containing catecholamines should be purified by chromatographic methods. Techniques involving either column or paper chromatography are suitable for this purpose.

It is generally believed that the main source of the noradrenaline found in urine is the adrenergic nerves. Adrenaline is produced mainly by the adrenal medulla.

In normal subjects the concentration of catecholamines in blood is very low and their presence cannot be detected by existing methods. The urinary excretion of both adrenaline and noradrenaline is usually increased by heavy muscular work, by emotional stress and by surgical procedures in which complications supervene. The production of hypoglycaemia increases the output of adrenaline but does not affect the excretion of noradrenaline.

In patients with essential hypertension the urinary excretion of catecholamines in urine is generally within the normal range. In cases of phæochromocytoma markedly raised excretion values are encountered and this finding is of clinical importance in the diagnosis of patients with this type of tumour.

REFERENCES

- ARMIN, J. & GRANT, R. T. (1953). *J. Physiol.* **121**, 593.
 BERGSTRÖM, S. & HANSSON, G. (1951). *Acta physiol. scand.* **22**, 87.
 BÜLBRING, E. (1949). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **4**, 234.
 BURN, G. P. (1953). *Brit. med. J.* **1**, 697.
 BURN, J. H., HUTCHEON, D. E. & PARKER, R. H. O. (1950). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **5**, 142.
 CAHILL, C. F. (1953). *Bull. N.Y. Acad. Med.* **29**, 749.
 CANNON, W. B. & ROSENBLUTH, A. (1933). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **104**, 557.
 CRAWFORD, T. B. B. & OUTSCHOORN, A. S. (1951). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **6**, 8.
 EHRLÉN, I. (1948). *Farm. Revy.*, **47**, 242.
 ELMADJIAN, F., LAMSON, E. T., FREEMAN, H., NERI, R. & VARJABEDIAN, L. (1956 a). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **16**, 876.
 ELMADJIAN, F., LAMSON, E. T. & NERI, R. (1956 b). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **16**, 222.
 ENGEL, A. & EULER, U. S. v. (1950). *Lancet*, **2**, 387.
 EULER, U. S. v. (1948). *Arch. int. Pharmacodyn.* **77**, 477.
 EULER, U. S. v. (1950). Estimation of adrenaline and noradrenaline in tissue extracts. In *Methods in Medical Research*, vol. 3, p. 131. Ed., R. W. Gerard. Chicago: Year Book Publishers.
 EULER, U. S. v. (1955). *Noradrenaline*. American Lecture Series, No. 261. Springfield, Ill.: Thomas.
 EULER, U. S. v. & FLODING, I. (1955). *Acta physiol. scand.* **33**, Suppl. 118, pp. 45 and 57.
 EULER, U. S. v., FRANKSSON, C. & HELLSTRÖM, J. (1954 a). *Acta physiol. scand.* **31**, 1.
 EULER, U. S. v. & HAMBERG, U. (1949). *Science*, **110**, 561.
 EULER, U. S. v. & HELLNER, S. (1951). *Acta physiol. scand.* **22**, 161.
 EULER, U. S. v. & HELLNER, S. (1952). *Acta physiol. scand.* **26**, 183.
 EULER, U. S. v., HELLNER, S. & PURKHOLD, A. (1954 b). *Scand. J. clin. Lab. Invest.* **6**, 54.
 EULER, U. S. v., HELLNER-BJÖRKMAN, S. & ORWÉN, I. (1955 a). *Acta physiol. scand.* **33**, Suppl. 118, p. 10.

- EULER, U. S. v. & LUFT, R. (1949). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **3**, 323.
 EULER, U. S. v. & LUFT, R. (1951). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **6**, 286.
 EULER, U. S. v. & LUFT, R. (1952). *Metabolism*, **1**, 528.
 EULER, U. S. v., LUFT, R. & SUNDIN, T. (1955 *b*). *Acta physiol. scand.* **34**, 169.
 EULER, U. S. v., LUND, A., OLSSON, A. & SANDBLOM, PH. (1953). *Scand. J. clin. Lab. Invest.* **5**, 122.
 EULER, U. S. v. & LUNDBERG, U. (1954). *J. appl. Physiol.* **6**, 551.
 EULER, U. S. v. & ZETTERSTRÖM, B. (1955). *Acta physiol. scand.* **33**, Suppl. 118, p. 26.
 FISCHER, P. (1949). *Bull. Soc. chim. Belg.* **58**, 205.
 FORSSMAN, O., HANSSON, G. & JENSEN, C. C. (1952). *Acta med. scand.* **142**, 441.
 FRANKSSON, C., GEMZELL, C. A. & EULER, U. S. v. (1954). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **14**, 608.
 FUNKENSTEIN, D. H., GREENBLATT, M. & SOLOMON, H. C. (1952). *Amer. J. Psychiat.* **108**, 652.
 GADDUM, J. H. (1950). Estimation of substances liberated by adrenergic nerves. In *Methods in Medical Research*, vol. 3, p. 116. Ed., R. W. Gerard. Chicago: Year Book Publishers.
 GADDUM, J. H. & HOLZBAUER, M. (1957). *Vitam. & Horm.* **15**, 151.
 GADDUM, J. H. & LEMBECK, F. (1949). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **4**, 401.
 GADDUM, J. H., PEART, W. S. & VOGT, M. (1949). *J. Physiol.* **108**, 467.
 GADDUM, J. H. & SCHILD, H. (1934). *J. Physiol.* **80**, 9P.
 GOLDENBERG, M. (1951). *Amer. J. Med.* **10**, 627.
 GREER, C. M., PINKSTON, J. O., BAXTER, J. H., Jr. & BRANNON, E. S. (1938). *J. Pharmacol.* **62**, 189.
 HOLTON, P. (1949). *J. Physiol.* **108**, 525.
 HOLTZ, P., CREDNER, K. & KRONEBERG, G. (1947). *Arch. exp. Path. Pharmacol.* **204**, 228.
 HOLZBAUER, M. & VOGT, M. (1954). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **9**, 249.
 JALÓN, P. G. DE, BAYO, J. B. & JALÓN, M. G. DE (1945). *Farmacoter. act.* **2**, 313.
 JAMES, W. O. (1948). *Nature, Lond.* **161**, 851.
 KRONEBERG, G. & SCHUMANN, H. J. (1950). *Arch. exp. Path. Pharmacol.* **209**, 350.
 LECOMTE, J. & FISCHER, P. (1949). *C. R. Soc. Biol., Paris*, **143**, 1294.
 LUDUENA, F. P., ANANENKO, E., SIEGMUND, O. H. & MILLER, L. C. (1949). *J. Pharmacol.* **95**, 155.
 LUFT, R. & EULER, U. S. v. (1952). *Metabolism*, **1**, 179.
 LUFT, R. & EULER, U. S. v. (1953). *J. clin. Invest.* **32**, 1065.
 LUND, A. (1949 *a*). *Acta pharm. tox., Kbh.* **5**, 75.
 LUND, A. (1949 *b*). *Acta pharm. tox., Kbh.* **5**, 121.
 LUND, A. (1949 *c*). *Acta pharm. tox., Kbh.* **5**, 231.
 LUND, A. (1950). *Acta pharm. tox., Kbh.* **6**, 137.
 LUND, A. & MØLLER, K. (1951). *Ugeskr. Laeg.* **113**, 1068.
 MANN, M. & WEST, G. B. (1950). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **5**, 173.
 NELSON, D. H. & SAMUELS, L. T. (1952). *J. clin. Endocrin. Metab.* **12**, 519.
 NUZUM, F. R. & BISCHOFF, F. (1953). *Circulation*, **7**, 96.
 PAGET, M. (1930). *Bull. Sci. pharm.* **37**, 537.
 PEKKARINEN, A. (1954). *Pharmacol. Rev.* **6**, 35.
 PEKKARINEN, A. & PITKÄNEN, M. E. (1955). *Scand. J. clin. Lab. Invest.* **7**, 1.
 ROBSON, J. M. & KEELE, C. A. (1956). *Recent Advances in Pharmacology*, 2nd ed., p. 1. London: Churchill.
 ROSENHEIM, M. L. (1954). *Brit. med. J.* **2**, 1181.
 SHAW, F. H. (1938). *Biochem. J.* **32**, 19.
 SUZUKI, T. & OZAKI, T. (1951). *Tohoku, J. exp. Med.* **54**, 332.
 TULLAR, B. F. (1948). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **70**, 2067.
 VOGT, M. (1952). *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* **7**, 325.
 VOGT, M. (1954). *J. Physiol.* **123**, 451.
 WEIL-MALHERBE, H. & BONE, A. D. (1952). *Biochem. J.* **51**, 311.
 WEST, G. B. (1954). *Pharmacol. Rev.* **6**, 29.
 WEST, G. B. (1955). *J. Pharm. Pharmacol.* **7**, 81.
 WEST, G. B. & TAYLOR, N. R. W. (1955). *Glasg. med. J.* **36**, 123.
 WHITEHORN, J. C. (1935). *J. biol. Chem.* **108**, 633.

CHAPTER XIV

Insulin

INTRODUCTION

THIS is the hormone which is secreted by the islet tissue of the pancreas. In 1889 Mering and Minkowski showed that the pancreas played an important role in carbohydrate metabolism, but it was not until 1922 that Banting and Best succeeded in preparing a pancreatic extract which was capable of relieving the symptoms of diabetes mellitus in man and animals. The term 'insulin' was given to the active principle present in pancreatic extracts.

1. Chemical Nature of Insulin.

This subject has been recently investigated by Sanger and his colleagues in Cambridge and by Craig and his associates in the United States (Sanger, 1949 *a, b*; Craig *et al.*, 1950; Harfenist and Craig, 1952; Ryle *et al.*, 1955). Ox insulin is a protein with a molecular weight of approximately 6,000. The molecule is composed of two polypeptide chains joined together by the disulphide bridges of three cystine residues. The sequence of the amino acids in the two polypeptide chains has now been determined for ox, sheep and pig insulins (Ryle *et al.*, 1955; Brown *et al.*, 1955).

Some years ago insulin was isolated in crystalline form. According to Cohn *et al.* (1941) the zinc content of insulin varies from 0.3 to 0.6 per cent., depending on the pH of crystallisation. Insulin has a high sulphur content mainly in the form of cystine. The hormone is soluble in water; it is rapidly destroyed by pepsin and trypsin.

2. The International Standard for Insulin.

The standardisation of insulin has been studied in great detail. Accurate standardisation of the hormone is of great importance in the treatment of diabetic patients. The present

international standard was established in 1936 by the Health Organisation of the League of Nations. The international unit was defined as the amount of activity present in $\frac{1}{22}$ mg. of this preparation.

METHODS OF ASSAY OF INSULIN

Until now only biological methods of assay have proved satisfactory for the estimation of insulin. Various chemical procedures have been proposed from time to time, but these have been found to be relatively non-specific.

The two bio-assays which have been most widely used for comparing the relative potency of samples of insulin have been those depending on the ability of the hormone to produce convulsions in mice and to cause hypoglycæmia in rabbits. Unfortunately neither of these procedures is sufficiently sensitive to detect the very small quantities of insulin present in body fluids, and for this reason the techniques will not be discussed in this chapter. For details regarding the selection and preparation of the animals and the design and performance of these tests, the reader is referred to articles by Marks and Pak (1936), Hemmingsen (1939), Fieller (1940), Burn *et al.* (1950) and Smith (1950).

Within recent years more sensitive assay methods for insulin have been developed and by use of such techniques attempts have been made to measure the concentration of the hormone in blood in health and disease. Consideration will be given to the following three methods, the first two of which resemble one another very closely:—

1. The test depending on the fall in blood sugar in adrenalectomised, alloxan-diabetic, hypophysectomised rats (Anderson *et al.*, 1947). The originators of this test refer to animals prepared in this way as 'ADH' rats.
2. The test depending on the fall in blood sugar in alloxan-diabetic, hypophysectomised, adrenalectomised rats (Bornstein, 1950). These animals have been termed 'ADHA' rats.
3. The test depending on the increase in glucose uptake by the isolated rat diaphragm (Groen *et al.*, 1952; Randle, 1954 *a, b*).

1. Tests in 'ADH' Rats.

In the method described by Anderson *et al.* (1947) adrenal demedullation was performed just after weaning. When the animals had reached a body weight of from 225 to 250 g. they were rendered diabetic by the intraperitoneal administration of alloxan. The diabetes was controlled by protamine zinc insulin. Hypophysectomy was performed when the weight of the animals had returned to the pre-diabetic level. In test animals so prepared a dose of as little as 0.125 milliunits of insulin produced a significant fall in blood sugar. Over a relatively wide dosage range there was a linear relationship between the logarithm of the dose of insulin and the effect on blood sugar. Anderson and Long (1948) have used this technique to study the effects of growth hormone, thyroxine and adrenocortical hormones on the blood insulin concentration in rats.

2. Tests in 'ADHA' Rats.

The method of Bornstein (1950) is a modification of that of Anderson *et al.* (1947). Adult rats were made diabetic by the intravenous injection of alloxan; subsequently they were subjected first to hypophysectomy and then to bilateral adrenalectomy. The end point of the test again depended on the reduction in blood sugar. Bornstein (1950) has claimed that the technique will detect 0.05 milliunits of insulin. Bornstein and Lawrence (1951 *a, b*) have used this assay method to measure the blood insulin concentration in diabetics. Their results will be discussed later in this chapter.

It must be emphasised that tests in 'ADHA' rats present numerous technical problems. Such animals are difficult to prepare and difficult to maintain. Various workers including Best (1953) and Peden (1955) have been unable to use them for the quantitative determination of insulin in blood. Randle (1955) considers that assays conducted in 'ADH' and 'ADHA' rats are not completely specific for insulin and probably do not give a true estimate of the insulin content of blood plasma.

3. Rat Diaphragm Test.

This method was described by Groen *et al.* (1952) and was applied to clinical problems in man by its originators and by

Randle (1954 *a, b*; 1955). The technique depends on the fact that the glucose uptake of the isolated diaphragm of the normal rat is increased when insulin is added to the fluid in which the diaphragm is suspended.

The advantages and limitations of the rat diaphragm assay have been carefully studied by Randle (1955). This worker found that the method could detect as little as 0.125 milliunits of insulin. Over a range of insulin concentration of 0.125 to 32 milliunits per millilitre there was a linear relationship between the glucose uptake of the diaphragm and the log concentration of insulin added *in vitro* to the incubation medium. The method was shown to have a moderate degree of precision as indicated by a mean figure for λ of 0.36. Randle (1955) has wisely emphasised that the test when applied to blood is not entirely specific for insulin. It is probable that plasma contains substances other than insulin which affect the glucose uptake of the isolated rat diaphragm and that the final estimate obtained is a resultant of these various interacting factors. Accordingly, Randle (1955) and Randle and Young (1956) have suggested that the method determines 'plasma insulin activity' rather than plasma insulin itself.

INSULIN ASSAYS IN HUMAN BLOOD IN HEALTH AND DISEASE

Insulin activity has not yet been detected in human *urine*. The few assays which have so far been reported in patients have been conducted on untreated serum or plasma.

1. Normal Subjects.

Very little information is at present available in the literature regarding the blood concentration of insulin in normal individuals. Groen *et al* (1952), using the rat diaphragm test, detected insulin activity in the serum of a small number of normal subjects. Unfortunately, however, these workers did not express their results on a quantitative basis. In a more comprehensive study with the same assay method, Randle (1955) found that the insulin activity of normal plasma ranged from 8.3 to 15.8 milliunits per millilitre and that the mean figure was 11.5 milliunits per millilitre.

2. Disease States.

(a) DIABETES MELLITUS.—Bornstein and Lawrence (1951 *a, b*) have used the assay method depending on the fall in blood sugar in 'ADHA' rats to investigate the plasma insulin levels in diabetics. These workers have claimed that such assays can be used to divide diabetics into two groups and that this classification may be important from the point of view of therapy of the disease.

The first group consists predominantly of young diabetics in whom the disease is relatively severe. Such individuals generally show marked hyperglycæmia, appreciable ketosis and rapid weight loss; they require insulin in order to survive. Bornstein and Lawrence (1951 *b*) conducted plasma insulin assays in fifteen patients of this type and were unable to demonstrate any activity by the method used.

The second group consists mainly of middle-aged obese female subjects. In such patients ketosis is usually absent and weight loss does not occur; the diabetic state is easily controlled by dietetic means and insulin is generally not required. In thirteen patients in this group studied by Bornstein and Lawrence (1951 *b*) insulin activity was demonstrated in the plasma in all cases.

The findings of Bornstein and Lawrence are obviously of interest in relation to the ætiology and therapy of diabetes mellitus in man. Final confirmation of their claims will only be possible when more reliable assay methods for blood insulin become available.

(b) HYPERINSULINISM.—At the time of writing there is little or no information on blood insulin levels in patients with this disease. In one case of hyperinsulinism reported by Groen *et al.* (1952) the serum insulin activity, as measured by the rat diaphragm test, was abnormally high. This patient was subsequently found to have an islet cell tumour of the pancreas.

(c) ACROMEGALY AND GIGANTISM.—Randle (1954 *a, b*), using the rat diaphragm method, found that the plasma insulin activity of patients with acromegaly and gigantism was significantly greater than that of normal subjects. In both conditions a reduction in plasma insulin levels was noted after pituitary irradiation. Three patients with acromegaly and diabetes showed levels above the normal range.

(d) HYPOPITUITARISM.—In seven cases of this disease

studied by Randle (1954 *b*, 1955) the insulin activity of plasma was significantly lower than that in normal subjects.

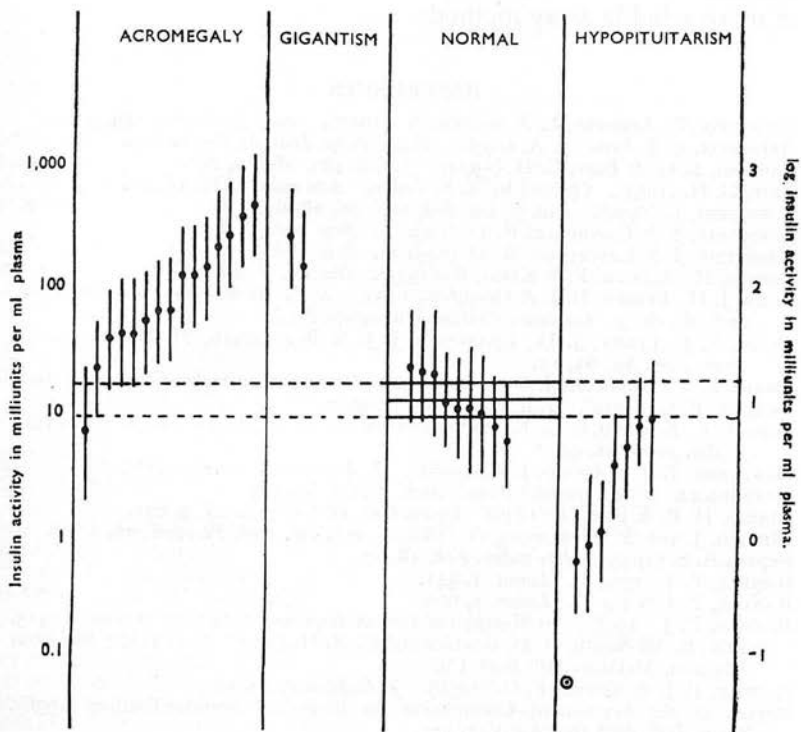


FIG. 66

The insulin activity of plasma from normal subjects, from acromegalic patients and from cases of hypopituitarism. The assay method depended on the glucose uptake of the isolated rat diaphragm. (From Randle, 1955.)

Fig. 66, which is taken from a paper by Randle (1955), shows the plasma insulin activity in normal subjects and in various pathological conditions.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Insulin assays in blood have been conducted by the rat diaphragm test and by methods depending on the fall in blood sugar in 'ADH' and 'ADHA' rats. None of the methods so far described is suitable for routine use in the clinical field.

It has been claimed that plasma insulin assays may be of

value in the classification of patients with diabetes mellitus. Proof of this interesting suggestion must await the development of more reliable assay methods.

REFERENCES

- ANDERSON, E., LINDNER, E. & SUTTON, V. (1947). *Amer. J. Physiol.* **149**, 350.
 ANDERSON, E. & LONG, J. A. (1948). *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* **2**, 209.
 BANTING, F. G. & BEST, C. H. (1922). *J. Lab. clin. Med.* **7**, 251.
 BEST, C. H. (1953). Quoted by A. S. Peden. *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **18**, 67.
 BORNSTEIN, J. (1950). *Aust. J. exp. Biol. med. Sci.* **28**, 87.
 BORNSTEIN, J. & LAWRENCE, R. D. (1951 a). *Brit. med. J.* **1**, 732.
 BORNSTEIN, J. & LAWRENCE, R. D. (1951 b). *Brit. med. J.* **2**, 1541.
 BROWN, H., SANGER, F. & KITAI, R. (1955). *Biochem. J.* **60**, 556.
 BURN, J. H., FINNEY, D. J. & GOODWIN, L. G. (1950). In *Biological Standardisation*, 2nd ed., ch. 5. London: Oxford University Press.
 COHN, E. J., FERRY, J. D., LIVINGOOD, J. J. & BLANCHARD, M. H. (1941). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **63**, 17.
 CRAIG, L. C., GREGORY, J. D. & HAUSMANN, W. (1950). *Analyt. Chem.* **22**, 1462.
 FIELLER, E. C. (1940). *J. R. statist. Soc. suppl.* 7.
 GROEN, J., KAMMINGA, C. E., WILLEBRANDS, A. F. & BLICKMANN, J. R. (1952). *J. clin. Invest.* **31**, 97.
 HARFENIST, E. J. & CRAIG, L. C. (1952). *J. Amer. chem. Soc.* **74**, 3087.
 HEMMINGSEN, A. M. (1939). *Skand. Arch. Physiol.* **82**, 105.
 MARKS, H. P. & PAK, G. (1936). *Quart. Bull. Hlth Org. L.o.N.* **5**, 631.
 MERING, J. VON & MINKOWSKI, O. (1889). *Arch. exp. Path. Pharmac.* **26**, 371.
 PEDEN, A. S. (1955). *Acta endocr. Kbh.* **18**, 67.
 RANDLE, P. J. (1954 a). *Lancet*, **1**, 441.
 RANDLE, P. J. (1954 b). *Lancet*, **1**, 809.
 RANDLE, P. J. (1955). In *Hypophyseal Growth Hormone, Nature and Actions*, p. 413. Eds., R. W. Smith, O. H. Gaebler and C. N. H. Long. New York: Blakiston Division, McGraw Hill Book Co.
 RANDLE, P. J. & YOUNG, F. G. (1956). *J. Endocrinol.* **13**, 335.
 Report of the Permanent Commission on Biological Standardisation (1936). *Quart. Bull. Hlth Org. L.o.N.* **5**, 571.
 RYLE, A. P., SANGER, F., SMITH, L. F. & KITAI, R. (1955). *Biochem. J.* **60**, 541.
 SANGER, F. (1949 a). *Biochem. J.* **44**, 126.
 SANGER, F. (1949 b). *Biochem. J.* **45**, 563.
 SMITH, K. L. (1950). In *Hormone Assay*, ch. 2. Ed., C. W. Emmens. New York: Academic Press.

Index of Authors

A

- Acher, R., 142, 152
 Adair, F. L., 70, 71, 81, 98
 Adams, D. D., 102, 109
 Adamsons, K. Jr., 141, 143, 144, 146,
 152, 153
 Aitken, E. H., 167, 202, 204
 Ainger, L. E., 279, 284
 Albert, A., 6, 7, 14, 16, 41, 54, 61, 64, 67,
 75, 91, 92, 96, 97, 98, 119, 120, 121,
 124
 Albricux, A. S., 161, 202
 Albright, F., 27, 29, 42, 46, 48, 49, 50,
 51, 61, 62, 63, 137, 139, 158, 203,
 249, 284, 295, 300, 303, 304, 305,
 306, 307, 318, 319, 320
 Allen, E., 160, 202
 Allen, W. M., 164, 202, 205, 241, 260,
 283
 Ames, R. G., 144, 145, 152
 Ananenko, E., 323, 337
 Anderson, E., 339, 340, 344
 Anselmino, K. J., 84, 96, 151, 152
 Appleby, J. I., 253, 257, 258, 273, 274,
 283
 Armin, J., 324, 327, 336
 Asboe-Hansen, G., 104, 106, 108, 109
 Aschheim, S., 65, 77, 96
 Ashworth, J. N., 106, 109, 125, 130, 131
 Astwood, E. B., 110, 111, 119, 123, 124,
 134, 136, 139, 161, 202, 215, 217,
 226, 227, 241
 Atherden, S. M., 237, 239, 242
 Aub, J. C., 40, 63, 173, 204
 Austin, J. H., 143, 145, 148, 152
 Axelrad, B. J., 281, 285
 Ayres, P. J., 6, 14, 246, 261, 265, 280,
 283, 284

B

- Bachman, C., 65, 66, 97, 224, 241
 Bagnoli, E., 262, 285
 Bahn, R. C., 41, 61, 136, 138, 139
 de la Balze, F. A., 49, 62
 Banting, F. G., 338, 344
 de Barbieri, A., 121, 123
 Barnett, J., 292, 295, 318
 Barns, H. H. F., 131
 Bartczak, E., 292, 319
 Barton, R. C., 23, 63
 Bartter, F. C., 280, 281, 284, 285

- Bassett, R. B., 99, 109
 Bates, R. W., 114, 123, 135, 136, 138,
 139, 140
 Bauld, W. S., 155, 163, 164, 165, 167,
 201, 202, 203
 Baxter, J. H. Jr., 326, 337
 Bayliss, M. J., 114, 117, 124
 Bayliss, R. I. S., 264, 276, 277, 278, 284
 Bayo, J. B., 326, 337
 Beall, D., 154, 202, 209, 241
 Beck, J. C., 25, 63
 Bécclère, C., 187, 202
 Beer, C. T., 172, 202
 Bell, J. C., 248, 249, 286
 Bell, P. H., 110, 112, 123
 Benditt, E. P., 300, 320
 Bennett, W. A., 41, 61
 Bercu, B. A., 149, 152
 Bergstrand, C. G., 221, 241
 Bergström, S., 325, 336
 Berkson, J., 7, 14, 67, 75, 96
 Berman, R. A., 215, 234, 243, 291, 293,
 320
 Bernhard, W. G., 276, 285
 Berthrong, M., 158, 202
 Best, C. H., 338, 340, 344
 Bibile, S. W., 249, 284
 Bierwaltes, W. H., 55, 61
 Birke, G., 248, 252, 253, 257, 258, 266,
 267, 271, 284, 294, 295, 304, 306,
 308, 310, 311, 318, 319, 320
 Birnie, J. H., 145, 148, 150, 152
 Bischoff, F., 38, 63, 334, 337
 Bishop, P. M. F., 48, 61, 193, 202, 301,
 319
 Bishop, R. C., 55, 61
 Bissett, N. G., 214, 241
 Black, R., 67, 98
 Blackmore, K. E., 142, 143, 152
 Blanchard, M. H., 338, 344
 Blickmann, J. R., 339, 340, 341, 342, 344
 Bluemle, L. W. Jr., 306, 319
 Blyth, J. S. S., 313, 314, 320
 Bocklage, B. C., 220, 241
 Bone, A. D., 325, 328, 329, 337
 Bongiovanni, A. M., 234, 241, 246, 255,
 263, 284
 Borhardt, H., 316, 319
 Bornstein, J., 118, 120, 123, 339, 340,
 342, 344
 Borth, R., 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 14, 43, 62, 67, 97,
 217, 221, 226, 228, 230, 231, 241,
 244, 273, 274, 284, 296, 319
 Bowman, D. E., 38, 62

Bradbury, J. T., 31, 62
 Bradley, T. R., 137, 139
 Bradshaw, J. G., 234, 242
 Bradshaw, T. E. T., 181, 202, 226, 241
 Brannon, E. S., 326, 337
 Braunsberg, H., 166, 202
 Brooksbank, B. W. L., 214, 241
 Brown, E., 31, 62
 Brown, H., 119, 120, 124
 Brown, H., 338, 344
 Brown, J. B., 2, 4, 7, 8, 14, 17, 18, 19, 20, 24, 25, 27, 32, 33, 34, 36, 37, 38, 39, 41, 42, 43, 63, 163, 164, 165, 170, 171, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 185, 189, 190, 196, 201, 202, 204, 209, 216, 217, 218, 221, 222, 224, 227, 228, 235, 236, 240, 242, 243
 Brown, P. S., 23, 62
 Brown, W. E., 31, 62
 Browne, J. C. M., 276, 277, 278, 284
 Browne, J. S. L., 70, 97, 155, 163, 197, 198, 202, 204, 208, 224, 232, 238, 241, 243, 303, 304, 306, 321
 Bruce, H. M., 114, 116, 118, 123
 Bruce, J., 196, 204, 235, 243
 Bruger, M., 306, 319
 Bruner, J. A., 70, 97
 Van Buchem, F. S. P., 282, 284
 Bülbring, E., 129, 131, 161, 202, 315, 319, 329, 336
 Bulbrook, R. D., 2, 4, 14, 165, 196, 202
 Burn, G. P., 323, 334, 336
 Burn, J. H., 6, 14, 143, 144, 152, 161, 202, 315, 319, 326, 329, 336, 339, 344
 Burns, E. L., 194, 202
 Burns, T. W., 122, 124
 Burton, R. B., 260, 286
 Bush, I. E., 246, 260, 263, 284, 285
 Butenandt, A., 205, 241, 287, 319
 Butler, A. M., 234, 243, 295, 304, 321
 Butt, W. R., 35, 36, 39, 62, 211, 241, 292, 319
 Buttle, G. A. H., 114, 115, 117, 118, 123

C

Cahill, C. F., 334, 336
 Cain, C. K., 35, 63, 66, 97
 Calchi Novati, C., 121, 123
 Callow, N. H., 292, 295, 302, 309, 319
 Callow, R. K., 292, 295, 302, 309, 313, 314, 315, 319, 320
 Cameron, C. B., 200, 202
 Campbell, A. M., 268, 269, 270, 286
 Cannon, W. B., 326, 336
 Cantarow, A., 103, 104, 106, 107, 108, 109, 154, 204
 Cara, J., 234, 241, 255, 284
 Carabasi, R., 16, 51, 52, 64, 138, 140

Carter, P., 166, 203
 del Castillo, E. B., 49, 62
 Catchpole, H. R., 40, 62
 Cerceo, E., 209, 242
 Chalmers, T. M., 282, 284
 Chambers, G. H., 143, 146, 152
 Chandler, R. E., 191, 203
 Charipper, H. A., 103, 109
 Chart, J. J., 280, 281, 282, 284, 285
 Chauvet, J., 142, 152
 Chen, C., 253, 284
 Chosson, J., 80, 97
 Chow, B. F., 15, 24, 25, 62, 64
 Christo, E., 268, 269, 270, 286, 294, 321
 Ciaramelli, L. C., 54, 63, 114, 124
 Ciereszko, L. S., 99, 109
 Clark, L. C. Jr., 300, 320
 Clarke, D., 147, 148, 153
 Clarke, P. M., 135, 137, 139
 Clayton, B. E., 114, 117, 123, 186, 202, 240, 242
 Clayton, G., 246, 263, 284
 Cohen, H., 122, 123
 Cohen, M. R., 230, 242
 Cohen, S. L., 156, 181, 184, 186, 202, 204
 Cohn, C., 306, 321
 Cohn, E. J., 106, 109, 125, 130, 131, 338, 344
 Cole, R. D., 111, 124
 Conn, J. W., 282, 284
 del Conte, E., 102, 109
 Cook, C. D., 304, 319
 Cook, L. R., 209, 234, 235, 242
 Cooke, D. S., 118, 123
 Cope, C. L., 231, 241, 281, 284
 Coppedge, R. L., 5, 14, 135, 137, 138, 139
 Corcoran, A. C., 253, 254, 269, 284, 285
 Corner, G. W., 205, 241
 Cowie, A. T., 73, 97
 Cox, R. I., 253, 255, 284
 Cox, W., 41, 63
 Coyle, M. G., 217, 227, 241
 Crabbé, J., 260, 285
 Craig, L. C., 338, 344
 Crawford, T. B. B., 325, 326, 336
 Credner, K., 323, 337
 Crépy, O., 174, 203, 214, 242
 Crigler, J. R., 302, 321
 Crismer, R., 214, 241
 Crooke, A. C., 35, 36, 37, 39, 62, 102, 109
 Cuyler, W. K., 313, 314, 320

D

D'Amour, F. E., 26, 41, 62, 173, 203
 D'Amour, M. C., 26, 62
 D'Angelo, S. A., 103, 104, 106, 107, 108, 109
 Dao, T. L.-Y., 157, 202
 Darignon, A., 281, 285

Darup, E., 224, 242
 Daughaday, W. H., 254, 269, 270, 284
 Davenport, H. W., 122, 124
 Davies, C. D., 51, 62
 Davies, D. S., 110, 123
 Davies, R. E., 157, 204
 Davis, M. E., 240, 241, 298, 319
 Dean, A. L., 304, 319
 Deanesly, R., 313, 315, 319
 Dekanski, J., 30, 31, 62
 Delea, C., 280, 284
 Delfs, E., 69, 70, 74, 77, 97, 224, 226, 242
 Demers, R., 239, 242
 Deming, Q. B., 250, 279, 280, 284, 285
 Dennison, M., 315, 320
 Desmarais, M. H. L., 306, 319
 Devis, R., 269, 284
 Dicker, S. E., 143, 145, 152
 Diczfalusy, E., 9, 11, 14, 23, 25, 62, 66,
 67, 69, 70, 71, 74, 92, 97, 157, 165,
 173, 199, 202, 204, 209, 241, 248, 252,
 253, 257, 258, 266, 267, 271, 284
 Dimauro, S., 254, 285
 Dingemanse, E., 128, 129, 132, 154, 202,
 294, 295, 300, 308, 316, 319, 320
 Dixon, J. S., 111, 124
 Dobriner, K., 248, 258, 274, 284, 293,
 294, 295, 302, 310, 319
 Dobyms, B. M., 99, 109
 Dochios, M., 149, 152
 Dohan, F. C., 157, 199, 202, 306, 319
 Doisy, E. A., 31, 35, 63, 66, 97, 154, 156,
 160, 202, 203, 204, 220, 241
 Doisy, E. A. Jr., 220, 241
 Donaldson, E. C., 295, 307, 319
 Done, A. K., 279, 284
 Donnet, V., 80, 97
 Doorenbos, H., 282, 284
 Dorfman, A. S., 121, 124, 161, 203
 Dorfman, R. I., 69, 70, 74, 97, 121, 124,
 161, 173, 197, 203, 204, 205, 243,
 248, 250, 262, 284, 285, 287, 288,
 291, 294, 295, 302, 304, 305, 307,
 308, 313, 314, 316, 319, 320, 321
 Douglas, M., 52, 63, 196, 204, 235, 243
 Dreifus, L. S., 149, 152
 Drekter, I. J., 292, 319
 Drill, V. A., 149, 152
 Duckert-Maulbetsch, A., 260, 285
 Duncan, L. E., 280, 281, 284, 285
 Dunham, M., 258, 274, 284
 Duthie, J. J. R., 238, 239, 242, 243
 Dykshorn, S. W., 135, 140
 Dyrenfurth, I., 280, 282, 286

E

Easterling, W. S., 51, 62
 Eberlein, W. R., 234, 241, 246, 255, 263,
 284
 Effkemann, G., 151, 153

Eggleston, N. M., 248, 284
 Ehrlén, I., 328, 336
 Eichenberger, E., 198, 203
 Eigher, E. A., 110, 123
 Eik-Nes, K., 264, 284
 Eiman, J. W., 157, 199, 202
 Eisenmann, A. J., 307, 319
 Eitingon, I. V., 253, 286
 Elings, H. S., 282, 284
 Elliott, W. H., 220, 241
 Elmadjian, F., 331, 332, 333, 336
 Elman, R., 264, 283, 286
 Ely, R. S., 121, 124, 279, 284
 Emmens, C. W., 6, 14, 66, 69, 97, 160,
 161, 162, 203, 292, 295, 302, 309,
 313, 314, 319
 Engel, A., 334, 336
 Engel, L. L., 166, 203, 209, 241, 287,
 294, 319
 Engel, S. L., 141, 143, 144, 146, 152, 153
 Engstrom, W. W., 295, 300, 301, 303,
 304, 308, 319, 320
 Erspamer, V., 144, 152
 Escamilla, R. F., 300, 303, 319
 Esselborn, V. M., 300, 320
 Euler, U. S. v., 276, 284, 323, 324, 325,
 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332,
 333, 334, 335, 336, 337
 von Euw, J., 251, 280, 286
 Evans, H. M., 15, 16, 22, 24, 25, 37, 42,
 54, 62, 63, 64, 67, 97, 110, 114, 115,
 118, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129,
 131, 132, 133, 134, 139
 Evans, J. S., 161, 203
 Evelyn, K. A., 163, 204
 Eversole, W. J., 145, 148, 150, 152

F

Fairbanks, R., 253, 286
 Farney, J. P., 41, 62
 Farr, L. E., 149, 153
 Farris, E. J., 26, 28, 62
 Feemster, L. C., 131, 132
 Feil, M. L., 250, 284
 Fellner, O. O., 157, 203
 Fels, E., 205, 242
 Felshin, G., 44, 62
 Ferguson, R. S., 80, 97
 Fernholz, E., 205, 241
 Ferry, J. D., 338, 344
 Fevold, H. L., 16, 26, 62
 Fieller, E. C., 339, 344
 Fieser, L. F., 287, 292, 319, 321
 Fieser, M., 287, 319
 Finney, D. J., 6, 11, 14, 20, 62, 339, 344
 Fischer, P., 325, 328, 337
 Fischer, R. H., 230, 236, 241
 Fishman, J. B., 125, 132
 Fitzgerald, M. G., 282, 284
 Flemion, F., 26, 63

Floding, I., 328, 329, 336
 Fluhmann, C. F., 44, 46, 62, 180, 191, 203
 Folley, S. J., 133, 135, 139
 Fønss-Bech, P., 127, 128, 129, 132
 Forbes, A. P., 249, 284, 295, 300, 303, 306, 307, 319
 Forbes, T. R., 210, 241, 242
 Forsham, P. H., 114, 124, 267, 278, 279, 285
 Forssman, O., 334, 337
 Fosco, A. L., 77, 97
 Fraenkel-Conrat, H., 42, 62
 Frame, B., 149, 152
 Frank, R. T., 44, 62, 314, 319, 320
 Franksson, C., 276, 284, 304, 311, 319, 332, 333, 336, 337
 Fraser, H. F., 307, 319
 Fraser, R. W., 295, 300, 303, 305, 306, 318
 Fraser, T. R., 101, 109
 Fredericks, J., 234, 242
 Freeman, H., 331, 333, 336
 Freud, J., 128, 129, 132
 Friedgood, H. B., 304, 319
 Fromagedt, P., 142, 152
 Fugo, N. W., 240, 241
 Funkenstein, D. H., 332, 337
 Furuhielm, M., 80, 97, 188, 203
 Fyles, T. W., 148, 149, 153

G

Gaddum, J. H., 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 20, 21, 28, 62, 101, 109, 323, 324, 326, 327, 328, 329, 337
 Gallagher, T. F., 172, 202, 291, 313, 316, 319, 320
 Galli-Mainini, C., 73, 97
 Garcia-Llaurado, J. G., 281, 284
 Gardner, L. I., 199, 204, 302, 312, 320, 321
 Gardner, W. U., 133, 139, 193, 203
 Garrod, O., 6, 14, 246, 261, 265, 283, 284
 Gastineau, C. F., 14, 91, 92, 97
 Gaunt, R., 145, 148, 150, 152, 280, 284
 Gemzell, C. A., 129, 130, 132, 221, 241, 275, 276, 277, 284, 332, 337
 Genest, J., 281, 285
 Geschickter, C. F., 195, 203
 Geschwind, I. I., 111, 124
 Gey, G. O., 65, 97
 Gey, M. K., 65, 97
 Gibson, G., 253, 257, 283
 Gilliland, J. C., 101, 109
 Gilman, A., 145, 152
 Ginsburg, M., 145, 152
 Giroud, C. J. P., 280, 286
 Gish, D. T., 142, 153
 Glass, S. J., 161, 192, 203
 Glenn, E. M., 259, 285
 Godfrid, M., 35, 63, 66, 97
 Godtfredsen, E., 50, 62

Goldberger, M., 44, 62
 Golden, J. B., 161, 203
 Goldenberg, M., 334, 337
 Goldzieher, J. W., 157, 203
 Gomez, E. T., 133, 139
 Goodman, J. R., 34, 63
 Goodman, L., 145, 152
 Goodwin, L. G., 6, 14, 339, 344
 Goodwin, W. E., 158, 202
 Gorbman, A., 35, 62, 147, 152
 Gordon, A. S., 103, 104, 106, 107, 108, 109
 Gordon, D., 16, 51, 52, 64, 138, 140
 Gordon, E. S., 282, 285
 Gordon, S., 142, 153
 Gornall, A. G., 253, 285
 Gough, N., 214, 216, 240, 242
 Grady, A. B., 119, 123
 Grady, H. J., 220, 241
 Graetzer, E., 118, 123
 Grant, R. T., 324, 327, 336
 Gray, C. H., 5, 14, 118, 120, 123
 Gray, S. H., 131, 132
 Greenblatt, M., 332, 337
 Greenblatt, R. B., 72, 97
 Greene, R. R., 48, 62
 Greenspan, F. S., 115, 118, 123, 127, 128, 129, 132
 Greenwood, A. W., 307, 313, 314, 320
 Greenwood, F. C., 2, 4, 14, 165, 196, 202
 Greep, R. O., 15, 24, 25, 62, 64
 Greer, C. M., 326, 337
 Gregory, J. D., 338, 344
 Greulich, W. W., 40, 62, 173, 203, 316, 319
 Griswold, G. C., 27, 29, 42, 51, 63, 137, 139, 249, 284
 Groen, J., 339, 340, 341, 342, 344
 Grollman, A., 155, 203
 Gross, E. R., 304, 319
 Grubin, H., 276, 285
 Grumbach, M. M., 246, 263, 284
 Gsell, M., 217, 221, 226, 228
 Gurin, S., 65, 66, 97
 Gustavson, R. G., 173, 203
 Guterman, H. S., 216, 227, 231, 238, 241, 242, 306, 321
 György, P., 306, 319

H

Hadfield, G., 136, 138, 139, 140
 Hagedorn, D., 282, 285
 Hain, A. M., 48, 62
 Hall, C. A., 149, 152
 Halvorsen, K., 316, 320
 Ham, G. C., 143, 145, 152
 Hamberg, U., 327, 329, 336
 Hamburger, C., 50, 62, 78, 79, 97, 198, 203, 292, 295, 296, 297, 298, 315, 316, 317, 320

Hamblen, E. C., 51, 62
 Hamilton, J. B., 315, 320
 Hansen, K., 68, 98
 Hansson, G., 326, 334, 336, 337
 Hare, K., 143, 145, 146, 152
 Hare, R. S., 143, 145, 146, 152
 Harfenist, E. J., 338, 344
 Hariton, L., 310, 319
 Harkness, E. V., 163, 204
 Harris, J. I., 110, 111, 123, 124
 Hartmann, C. G., 161, 203
 Hartmann, M., 205, 242
 Hartogh-Katz, S. L., 295, 308, 319
 Hartop, W. L. Jr., 220, 242
 Harwood, C. T., 264, 285
 Hasenbein, G., 37, 62
 Haskins, A. L. Jr., 68, 73, 97, 211, 242
 Hausmann, W., 338, 344
 Hawker, R. W., 145, 148, 150, 151, 152
 Hays, E. E., 173, 203
 Hazelwood, G. A. D., 214, 241
 Heard, R. D. H., 70, 97, 253, 254, 269, 285
 Heijkenskjöld, F., 129, 130, 132
 Heisler, A., 292, 319
 Hellbaum, A. A., 87, 97, 233, 242
 Heller, A. L., 42, 62
 Heller, C. G., 26, 29, 30, 35, 41, 49, 54, 62, 161, 191, 203
 Heller, E. J., 29, 30, 62
 Heller, H., 142, 143, 144, 152
 Hellner, S., 323, 331, 334, 336
 Hellner-Björkman, S., 330, 336
 Hellström, J., 333, 336
 Hemmingsen, A. M., 339, 344
 Hench, P. S., 54, 64
 Henly, A. A., 292, 295
 Henriques, O. B., 314, 321
 Henriques, S. B., 314, 321
 Henry, J. S., 197, 198, 202, 224, 232, 241
 Hershberg, E. B., 292, 321
 Hertoghe, J., 260, 285
 Heyl, J. G., 100, 109
 Hickey, R. C., 145, 152
 Hill, R., 157, 204
 Hill, R. T., 26, 62, 133, 139
 Hills, A. G., 114, 124
 Hines, L., 161, 203
 Hinglais, H., 198, 203
 Hinglais, M., 198, 203
 Hirschmann, F. B., 302, 320
 Hirschmann, H., 224, 241, 302, 320
 Hisaw, F. L., 193, 203, 211, 242
 Hoagland, C. L., 147, 148, 153
 Hoagland, H., 307, 320
 Hobson, B. M., 26, 29, 62, 68, 73, 75, 78, 97
 Hodges, J. R., 114, 115, 117, 118, 123
 Hoffman, F., 84, 96, 151, 152
 Hoffman, M. M., 304, 321
 Högborg, B., 70, 97, 111, 123

Hohlweg, W., 205, 241
 Hollander, F., 314, 319, 320
 Hollander, V. P., 254, 285
 Holmstrom, E. G., 23, 63
 Holton, P., 335, 337
 Holtorff, A. F., 292, 295, 320
 Holtz, P., 323, 337
 Holzbauer, M., 324, 329, 337
 Hooker, C. W., 210, 242
 Horwitt, B. A., 16, 51, 52, 64, 138, 140
 Howard, K. S., 110, 123
 Howard, R. P., 48, 50, 62, 158, 203
 Hruby, F. J., 54, 63
 Huber, D., 217, 242
 Hudson, P. B., 246, 247, 285
 Huffman, M. N., 154, 155, 203
 Huggins, C., 158, 203
 Hughes, E. C., 17, 26, 28, 63
 Hughes, W. L. Jr., 106, 109, 125, 130, 131
 Huis in't Veld, L. G., 294, 295, 300, 308, 319, 320
 Hume, D. M., 114, 116, 124
 Hunt, H., 86, 98, 233, 243
 Hunt, H. D., 306, 321
 Hunter, W. F., 47, 63
 Hurwitz, D., 239, 240, 242
 Hutcheon, D. E., 326, 329, 336

I

Ingram, J. D., 36, 38, 62
 Isbell, H. N., 307, 319
 Iseri, L. T., 282, 285
 Island, D., 267, 278, 279, 285
 Iversen, K., 104, 106, 108, 109

J

Jaffe, H., 254, 269, 270, 284
 Jager, B. V., 122, 124
 Jailer, J. W., 122, 123, 166, 199, 203
 Jalón, M. G. de., 326, 337
 Jalón, P. G. de., 326, 337
 James, A. H., 282, 284
 James, W. O., 326, 337
 Janssen, S., 26, 62
 Jayle, M. F., 174, 198, 203, 214, 242
 Jeffers, W. A., 143, 145, 148, 152
 Jenkins, D., 259, 260, 265, 278, 285
 Jenkins, R., 145, 148, 150, 152
 Jensen, C. C., 334, 337
 Jensen, H., 22, 24, 62
 Jessop, W. J. E., 181, 202, 226, 241
 Johnson, S. G., 35, 62, 294, 295, 308, 309, 310, 320
 Johnson, B. B., 280, 281, 285
 Johnssen, S., 111, 123
 Johnston, B. J., 248, 284
 Joll, C. A., 157, 199, 204
 Jones, G. E. S., 39, 64, 65, 69, 74, 77, 97, 215, 217, 224, 226, 227, 241, 242

Jones, J., 234, 242
 Jones, M. S., 105, 109
 de Jongh, S. E., 22, 23, 63
 Judas, O., 214, 242
 Jungck, E. C., 35, 62
 Junkmann, K., 100, 109

K

Kamminga, C. E., 339, 340, 341, 342,
 344
 Kannas, O., 102, 109
 Käser, O., 187, 198, 203
 Kassenaar, A. A. H., 103, 106, 109
 Katsoyannis, P. G., 142, 153
 Katzman, P. A., 31, 35, 63, 66, 97
 Kauppinen, M., 304, 320
 Kazmin, V. E., 248, 249, 268, 270, 286
 Keaty, E. C., 87, 97, 233, 242
 Keele, C. A., 324, 337
 Kellar, R. J., 192, 204, 216, 226, 227,
 231, 242, 243
 Kelley, V. C., 121, 124, 279, 284
 Kellie, A. E., 293, 320
 Keltz, B. F., 87, 97, 233, 242
 Kemp, T., 128, 132
 Kendall, E. C., 54, 64
 Kennedy, W. P., 151, 152
 Kenyon, A. T., 316, 320
 Kepler, E. J., 300, 302, 320
 Kestranek, W., 143, 152
 Keutmann, E. H., 260, 286
 Kibrick, E., 128, 132
 Kilvington, T. B., 150, 151, 152
 King, N. B., 269, 270, 285
 Kinnunen, O., 304, 320
 Kinsell, L. W., 130, 132, 302, 320
 Kitai, R., 338, 344
 Kittinger, G. W., 220, 242
 Klein, R., 302, 321
 Kleinberg, W., 122, 123
 Klempner, E., 314, 319, 320
 Klinefelter, H. F. Jr., 27, 29, 42, 49, 51,
 63, 137, 139, 304, 320
 Klopper, A., 196, 204, 209, 216, 217, 218,
 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 227, 228,
 229, 230, 234, 235, 236, 237, 240,
 242, 243
 Knowlton, A. J., 122, 123
 Knutsen, K. O. H., 165, 204
 Kober, S., 163, 203
 Koch, F. C., 29, 30, 31, 64, 161, 203,
 292, 295, 313, 316, 319, 320
 Kochakian, C. D., 294, 320
 Kohls, C. I., 67, 97
 Koiv, E., 281, 285
 Korenchevsky, J., 315, 320
 Krichesky, B., 161, 203
 Krieger, V. L., 150, 151, 152
 Kriss, B., 314, 319, 320

Kroneberg, G., 323, 337
 Kubin, R., 157, 204
 Kuether, C. A., 114, 124
 Kupperman, H. S., 72, 97

L

de Laat, B. M., 294, 319
 Labby, D. H., 149, 152
 Lacassagne, A., 194, 203
 Laidlaw, J. C., 278, 285
 Lamberg, B. A., 101, 102, 109
 Lameijer, L. D. F., 103, 106, 109
 Lamson, E. T., 331, 332, 333, 336
 Landgrebe, F. W., 26, 29, 62, 112, 124
 Landing, B. H., 304, 319
 Landis, E. M., 143, 145, 152
 Laqueur, E., 100, 109, 154, 202, 316, 319
 Larsen, W. E., 130, 132
 Lauson, H. D., 161, 203
 Lawson, H., 26, 62
 Lawrence, R. D., 340, 342, 344
 Leach, R. B., 54, 64, 74, 97
 Leatham, J. H., 42, 63
 Lecomte, J., 325, 337
 Lee, C. M. Jr., 300, 320
 Leekley, D., 224, 241
 Lembeck, F., 327, 329, 337
 Lemieux, G., 281, 285
 Lendrum, F. C., 193, 203
 Lennox, B., 47, 63
 Lerman, R., 55, 64, 303, 320
 Leventhal, M. L., 230, 242
 Levin, L., 26, 30, 42, 63, 77, 97, 154, 203
 Levine, R., 306, 321
 Levitt, G., 151, 152
 Lewis, A. A. G., 146, 147, 148, 152
 Lewis, R. A., 302, 321
 Lewis, R. P., 209, 241
 Li, C. H., 15, 16, 25, 26, 39, 42, 54, 62,
 63, 64, 110, 111, 114, 115, 118, 123,
 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130,
 131, 132, 133, 134, 139
 Libert, O., 214, 242
 Liddle, G. W., 267, 279, 280, 281, 284,
 285
 Lieberman, S., 213, 242, 258, 274, 284,
 291, 293, 294, 295, 302, 310, 319, 320
 Linder, A., 273, 274, 284
 Lindkvist, P., 157, 202
 Lindner, E., 339, 340, 344
 Lipschutz, A., 193, 203
 Lisser, H., 302, 320
 Littrell, J. L., 161, 203
 Livermore, A. H., 142, 152
 Livezey, M. M., 143, 145, 148, 152
 Livingood, J. J., 338, 344
 Lloyd, C. W., 17, 26, 28, 63, 148, 153,
 234, 242
 Loback, C. R., 72, 97

Lobotsky, J., 17, 26, 28, 63, 148, 513,
234, 242
Loeb, L., 99, 109
Loeser, A., 26, 62
Loke, K. H., 155, 167, 169, 203
Lombardo, M. E., 246, 285
Long, C. N. H., 110, 114, 117, 122, 124
Long, J. A., 340, 344
Lorraine, J. A., 1, 3, 7, 8, 9, 14, 16, 17, 18,
19, 20, 21, 24, 25, 27, 30, 31, 32, 33,
34, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 52,
53, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 62, 63, 66, 67,
69, 70, 71, 74, 75, 76, 77, 81, 82, 83,
84, 85, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94,
95, 97, 101, 109, 115, 118, 120, 122,
124, 155, 168, 169, 196, 203, 204,
235, 242, 243, 248, 285
Lorenz, N., 41, 61
Lowenstein, B. E., 253, 254, 285, 306,
319
Luduenia, F. P., 323, 337
Luetscher, J. A. Jr., 250, 279, 280, 281,
284, 285
Luft, R., 199, 202, 323, 331, 332, 333,
337
Lund, A., 325, 328, 335, 337
Lundberg, U., 333, 337
Lunenfeld, B., 7, 14, 43, 62, 67, 97, 273,
284, 298, 319
Lundgren, H. P., 65, 97
Lyon, R., 37, 63
Lyons, W. R., 118, 124, 133, 135, 138, 139

M

McArthur, J. W., 24, 25, 32, 41, 63
McColgan, S. P., 236, 241
MacCorquodale, D. W., 154, 156, 203,
204
McCullagh, D. R., 313, 314, 320
McCullagh, E. P., 24, 25, 54, 63
MacDonald, M. P., 253, 285
McGavack, T. H., 292, 319
Mackay, M. A., 155, 168, 169, 203
McKelvey, J. L., 230, 242
McKennon, B. J., 192, 203
MacLaughlan, E. A., 215, 243, 291, 295,
320, 321
McLellan, F., 220, 242
McPhail, M. K., 211, 242
McPhee, I. M., 307, 320
McShan, W. H., 135, 139
Maddock, W. O., 35, 54, 62, 64, 74, 97
Mader, I. J., 282, 285
Main, R., 41, 63
Malburg, R. F., 34, 63
Malley, K., 234, 242
Mann, M., 329, 337
Margraf, H. W., 263, 264, 283, 286
Marks, H. P., 339, 344

Marrian, G. F., 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12, 14, 155,
160, 163, 165, 167, 168, 169, 181,
184, 186, 202, 203, 204, 208, 214,
216, 226, 227, 237, 238, 239, 240,
242, 243, 251, 255, 261, 262, 285
Marti, M., 310, 320
Martin, J. D., 282, 285
Marx, W., 127, 128, 129, 132
Mason, H. L., 54, 63, 64, 114, 124, 269,
270, 285, 295, 300, 301, 302, 303,
304, 308, 319, 320
Mason, J. W., 264, 285
Mason, L. W., 173, 203
Mathieson, D. R., 54, 64
Matthew, G. D., 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 87,
93, 94, 95, 97, 192, 204, 242
Matthews, J. D., 102, 109
Maxwell, L. C., 38, 63
May, J. A., 199, 200, 201, 204
Mayer, C., 189, 198, 204
Meites, J., 134, 138, 139
Melin, M., 106, 109, 125, 130, 131
Melville, E. V., 143, 146, 152
Mering, J. von, 338, 344
Meslin, F., 214, 242
Meyer, R. K., 248, 249, 286
Michaels, G. D., 130, 132
Michie, E. A., 209, 216, 217, 218, 221, 222,
224, 227, 228, 233, 236, 237, 240, 242
Migeon, C. J., 199, 204, 302, 312, 320, 321
Miller, L. C., 323, 337
Miller, M., 197, 204
Miller, R. A., 114, 123
Mills, I. H., 282, 285
Minkowski, O., 338, 344
Mitchell, F. L., 157, 204, 217, 227, 241
Molitor, H., 143, 152
Møller, K., 335, 337
Montgomery, T. L., 65, 98
Moolenaar, A. J., 261, 285
Moon, H. D., 114, 124, 131, 132
Morgan, P. N., 41, 62
Morgans, M. E., 131
Morley, M., 17, 26, 28, 63
Morris, C. J. O. R., 16, 63, 110, 112, 115,
124, 211, 241, 246, 263, 285, 292,
295, 318, 319
Morris, P., 110, 124, 211, 241
Morrow, K., 17, 26, 28, 63
Moulder, P. V., 158, 203
Moulton, F. R., 291, 320
Moxham, A., 271, 273, 279, 285
Mühlbock, O., 154, 202
Mulford, D. J., 106, 109, 125, 130, 131
Muller, A. F., 260, 285
Munson, P., 115, 124
Murison, P. J., 16, 51, 52, 64, 138, 140
Murphy, C. H., 305, 320
Murphy, K. M., 180, 203
Mussie, E., 149, 152
Mussett, M. V., 100, 109
Myers, G. B., 41, 62, 191, 203

N

- Nabarro, J. D. N., 271, 272, 273, 279, 285
 Nathanson, I. T., 40, 63, 166, 173, 203,
 204
 Neal, L. M., 23, 163
 Neher, G. M., 211, 243
 Neher, R., 251, 261, 280, 281, 285, 286
 Neil, J. P., 306, 321
 Nelson, D. H., 114, 116, 124, 259, 263,
 264, 275, 276, 284, 285, 332, 337
 Nelson, E. E., 143, 153
 Nelson, W. O., 48, 49, 54, 62, 63
 Neri, R., 331, 332, 333, 336
 Newns, C. H., 304, 320
 Noall, M. W., 209, 242
 Noble, R. L., 147, 153
 Norymberski, J. K., 253, 256, 257, 258,
 271, 272, 273, 274, 283, 285
 Nowoczynski, W., 281, 285
 Nuzum, F. R., 334, 337

O

- O'Connor, W. J., 145, 153
 Olsen, A. G., 211, 242
 Olsson, A., 335, 337
 O'Neal, R., 41, 63
 Oneson, I. B., 156, 204
 Opsahl, J. C., 114, 117, 122, 124
 Orwén, I., 330, 336
 Outschoorn, A. S., 325, 326
 Ozaki, T., 327, 337

P

- Paesi, F. J. A., 22, 23, 63
 Page, E., 135, 138, 139
 Page, E. W., 151, 153
 Page, I. H., 253, 254, 269, 284, 285
 Paget, M., 328, 337
 Pak, G., 339, 344
 Panattoni, T., 155, 167, 169, 203
 Pankow, O., 229, 242
 Paris, J., 120, 124
 Parker, F., 73, 98
 Parker, R. H. O., 326, 329, 336
 Parkes, A. S., 26, 62, 114, 116, 118, 123,
 160, 203, 313, 319
 Parrott, D. M. V., 5, 9, 14, 118, 119, 120,
 123, 124
 Parviainen, S., 269, 285
 Paschkis, K. E., 103, 104, 106, 107, 108,
 109, 154, 204
 Patterson, J., 246, 284, 307, 320
 Payne, F. L., 198, 204
 Payne, R. W., 28, 63, 68, 97, 110, 111,
 119, 123, 124
 Pearlman, W. H., 154, 204, 209, 242,
 246, 283

- Pearson, O. H., 254, 285
 Pearson, S., 292, 319
 Peart, W. S., 323, 326, 327, 337
 Pechet, M. M., 281, 285
 Peden, A. S., 340, 344
 Pedersen-Bjergaard, K., 30, 41, 44, 45,
 63, 162, 173, 187, 189, 204
 Pedersen, J., 316, 320
 Pederson, J., 305, 320
 Pekkarinen, A., 324, 334, 337
 Perry, W. F., 148, 149, 153
 Perry, W. L. M., 10, 14, 28, 63, 100, 109,
 114, 116, 118, 123
 Peterson, D. H., 316, 320
 Pfeiffer, C. A., 193, 203
 Pick, E. P., 143, 152
 Pickford, M., 142, 144, 151, 153
 Pierce, J. G., 142, 153
 Pincus, G., 173, 204, 246, 247, 285, 292,
 294, 295, 307, 308, 320
 Pinkston, J. O., 326, 337
 Pitkänen, M. E., 334, 337
 Plager, J. E., 312, 320
 Plantin, L.-O., 248, 252, 253, 257, 258,
 266, 267, 271, 284, 294, 295, 304,
 308, 310, 311, 319, 320
 Plantureux, C., 198, 203
 Plotz, E. J., 298, 319
 Plotz, J., 224, 242
 Pohley, F. M., 22, 23, 64
 Polani, P. E., 47, 63
 Polley, H. F., 54, 64
 Pond, M. H., 294, 295, 308, 309, 310,
 320
 Porter, C. C., 253, 259, 285
 Potts, A. M., 250, 284
 Power, M. H., 54, 63, 64, 114, 124
 Preedy, J. R. K., 167, 202, 204
 Prunty, F. T. G., 114, 117, 123, 124, 271,
 272, 273, 285
 Purkhold, A., 334, 336
 Purves, H. D., 102, 109

Q

- Querido, A., 103, 106, 109

R

- Raacke, I. D., 111, 124
 Raben, M. S., 110, 111, 119, 123, 124
 Raile, R. B., 121, 124
 Rakoff, A. E., 80, 84, 97, 154, 197, 204
 Ralli, E. P., 147, 148, 153
 Randall, L. M., 14, 75, 91, 92, 97, 98
 Randle, P. J., 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344
 Rasch, G., 292, 320
 Rawson, R. W., 101, 102, 109
 Read, C. H., 269, 270, 285
 Reddy, W. J., 259, 260, 265, 278, 285

- Reichstein, T., 209, 241, 244, 251, 280, 285, 286
 Reid, D. E., 150, 151, 153
 Reid, E., 112, 124
 Reifstein, E. C. Jr., 49, 63, 295, 300, 303, 304, 305, 307, 319, 320
 Reiss, M., 118, 123
 Renzi, A. A., 280, 284
 Ressler, C., 142, 153
 Rhoads, C. P., 258, 274, 284, 293, 294, 295, 302, 310, 319
 Richardson, E. M., 157, 199, 202, 306, 319
 Riddle, O., 26, 63, 114, 123, 135, 139, 140
 Riegel, B., 220, 242
 Riley, C. L., 230, 241, 305, 320
 Rinderknecht, H., 147, 153
 Rinfrett, A. P., 267, 278, 279, 285
 Riondel, A., 273, 274, 284
 Ripstein, M. P., 268, 269, 270, 285, 286
 Robbins, S. L., 73, 98
 de Robertis, E., 102, 109
 Roberts, C. W., 142, 153
 Roberts, I. S., 157, 203
 Robertson, H. A., 7, 14, 115, 118, 122, 124
 Robinson, A. M., 292, 319
 Robinson, F. H. Jr., 149, 153
 Robinson, H. J., 276, 285
 Robson, J. M., 324, 337
 Robson, J. S., 147, 148, 153
 Roe, J. H., 114, 124
 Rogers, J., 220, 242
 Rokaw, S. N., 149, 152
 Romanchuck, L. E., 36, 38, 62
 Romanoff, E. B., 246, 247, 285
 Rose, E., 157, 199, 202
 Rosemberg, E., 302, 321
 Rosenberg, E. F., 306, 321
 Rosenblueth, A., 326, 336
 Rosenheim, M. L., 334, 337
 Rosenkratz, J. A., 306, 319
 Ross, E., 248, 284
 Rothchild, I., 237, 242
 Rothen, A., 15, 64
 Round, B. P., 276, 277, 278, 284
 Roy, A. B., 262, 285
 Roy, L. M. H., 239, 242
 Rubin, B. L., 69, 70, 74, 97, 121, 124, 197, 204, 294, 295, 308, 320
 Ruschig, H., 205, 242
 Russell, J. A., 125, 132
 Russell, C. S., 217, 227, 241
 Russell, M. E., 237, 242
 Ryle, A. P., 338, 344
 Ryncarson, E. H., 54, 63, 114, 124
 Salassa, R. M., 120, 124
 Salhanick, H. A., 23, 63, 209, 211, 242
 Salmon, A. A., 51, 62
 Salmon, U. J., 44, 62
 Salter, W. T., 101, 109
 Saltzman, A. H., 252, 253, 286
 Salvatore, C., 192, 204
 Samuels, L. T., 122, 124, 209, 213, 230, 242, 259, 263, 264, 275, 276, 284, 285, 332, 337
 Sano, M. E., 65, 98
 Sandberg, A. A., 263, 284
 Sandblom, Ph., 335, 337
 Sanger, F., 338, 344
 Sarett, L. H., 310, 319
 Savard, K., 262, 285, 294, 320
 Sayers, G., 3, 7, 14, 110, 113, 114, 115, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 124, 248, 285, 308, 320
 Sayers, M. A., 7, 14, 113, 114, 115, 118, 124
 Scadron, E. N., 80, 91, 98
 Scandrett, F. J., 272, 285
 Scarborough, H., 282, 284
 Schaffenburg, C. A., 24, 25, 63
 Schally, A. V., 118, 124
 Schenken, J. R., 194, 202
 Schenker, V., 248, 285
 Schild, H., 328, 337
 Schindler, O., 251, 286
 Schlosser, J. V., 16, 51, 52, 64, 138, 140
 Schmidt, J., 205, 241
 Schmidt-Nielsen, B., 146, 152
 Schmidt-Nielsen, K., 146, 152
 Schoeller, W., 100, 109
 Schoeneck, F. J., 84, 98
 Schumann, H. J., 323, 337
 Schwartz, J., 306, 321
 Schou, H. I., 42, 63
 Schroeder, M. S., 216, 242
 Schwartz, T. B., 122, 124
 Scism, G. R., 292, 319
 Scott, L. D., 31, 63
 Scott, W. W., 158, 202, 300, 304, 320
 Scowen, E. F., 136, 140
 Sealy, J. L., 67, 70, 98
 Seckel, H. P. G., 193, 204, 300, 320
 Seely, J. R., 279, 284
 Segaloff, A., 5, 14, 16, 25, 51, 52, 63, 64, 135, 137, 138, 139, 140
 Seitchik, J., 240, 242
 Selye, H., 248, 285
 Senekow, W., 276, 285
 Severinghaus, E. L., 26, 62, 161, 203
 Shaw, F. H., 325, 327, 337
 Shedlovsky, T., 15, 64
 Sheinfeld, S., 54, 64
 Shepherd, R. G., 110, 123
 Sherman, A. I., 68, 73, 97
 Shimkin, M. B., 194, 204
 Shipley, E. G., 281, 284, 285

S

Saffran, M., 114, 117, 118, 124
 Sala, G., 144, 152

- Shipley, R. A., 42, 62, 248, 284, 287, 288, 291, 302, 304, 305, 307, 313, 314, 316, 319
 Shippel, S., 230, 242
 Siegmund, O. H., 323, 337
 Silber, R. H., 253, 259, 276, 285
 Simmer, H., 211, 243
 Simonnet, H., 187, 202
 Simmons, F. A., 48, 50, 62, 158, 203
 Simpson, M. E., 15, 22, 24, 25, 37, 42, 62, 63, 64, 110, 114, 115, 118, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132
 Simpson, S. A., 6, 14, 246, 248, 250, 251, 261, 263, 265, 280, 283, 284, 285, 286
 Simpson, S. L., 157, 199, 204, 315, 320
 Sinclair, R. J. G., 238, 239, 242, 243
 Singer, B., 281, 286
 Sjögren, B., 199, 203
 Slaunwhite, W. R. Jr., 166, 203
 Slessor, A., 147, 149, 150, 153
 Sloan, J., 307, 319
 Slocumb, C. H., 54, 64
 Slotta, K. H., 205, 242
 Smelser, G. K., 101, 109
 Smith, E. K., 28, 64, 68, 98
 Smith, E. L., 122, 124
 Smith, G. V., 41, 64, 66, 80, 91, 92, 98, 154, 173, 197, 198, 203, 204, 232, 233, 239, 240, 242
 Smith, J. T., 198, 204
 Smith, K. L., 339, 344
 Smith, L. F., 338, 344
 Smith, O. W., 41, 64, 66, 80, 91, 92, 98, 154, 173, 197, 198, 203, 204, 232, 233, 239, 240, 242
 Smith, P. H., 305, 318
 Sniffen, R. C., 48, 50, 62, 158, 203
 Sobel, E. H., 300, 320
 Sobel, H., 253, 254, 269, 285
 Soffer, L. J., 55, 64
 Sohval, A. R., 55, 64
 Soiva, K., 269, 285
 Sollenberger, R. T., 40, 62
 Solomon, C. I., 173, 203, 316, 319
 Solomon, H. C., 332, 337
 Sommerville, I. F., 212, 216, 226, 227, 237, 238, 239, 240, 242, 243, 258, 274, 284
 Sondern, C. W., 67, 70, 98
 Speirs, R. S., 114, 117, 118, 124, 248, 249, 251, 286
 Spencer, A. G., 250, 286
 Sprague, R. G., 54, 64, 119, 120, 121, 124, 300, 321
 Sprechler, M., 269, 286, 306, 320
 Stack-Dunne, M. P., 111, 124
 Starr, P., 102, 109
 Statland, H., 55, 64, 303, 320
 Stecher, R. M., 205, 243
 Steelman, S. L., 22, 23, 64, 99, 109
 Steinbeck, A. W., 264, 276, 277, 278, 284
 Stern, M. I., 166, 202
 Stern, S., 292, 319
 Stevenson, M. F., 163, 204
 Stewart, H. L. Jr., 65, 98
 Steyermark, P., 281, 285
 Stidworthy, G., 294, 320
 Stimmel, B. F., 181, 199, 200, 201, 204
 Støa, K. F., 165, 204
 Stoeckel, J., 41, 63
 Stohr, G., 192, 204
 Stran, H. M., 39, 64, 69, 74, 77, 97, 224, 226, 242
 Ström, L., 130, 132
 Strong, J. A., 52, 63, 196, 204, 209, 234, 235, 242, 243
 Strong, L. E., 106, 109, 125, 130, 131
 Stubbs, R. D., 253, 256, 257, 258, 271, 272, 283, 285
 Sulkowitch, H., 295, 300, 303, 305, 319
 Sulman, F., 67, 98, 112, 124
 Sundin, T., 331, 337
 Sutherland, E. S., 214, 243
 Sutton, V., 339, 340, 344
 Suzuki, T., 327, 337
 Swale, J., 246, 284
 Swan, J. M., 142, 153
 Sweat, M. L., 246, 286
 Swyer, G. I. M., 45, 64, 166, 202, 231, 243
 Sydnor, K. L., 3, 14, 119, 120, 121, 124

T

- Tait, J. F., 6, 14, 246, 248, 250, 251, 261, 263, 265, 280, 283, 284, 285, 286
 Tala, P., 101, 102, 109
 Talbot, N. B., 215, 234, 243, 252, 253, 268, 269, 270, 286, 291, 293, 294, 295, 304, 320, 321
 Taylor, A. B., 119, 120, 121, 124
 Taylor, H. C. Jr., 80, 91, 98
 Taylor, H. L., 106, 109, 125, 130, 131
 Taylor, N. R. W., 7, 14, 115, 118, 122, 124, 334, 337
 Teel, H. M., 150, 151, 153
 Teich, S., 213, 242, 291, 230
 Tewell, H. E. Jr., 253, 284
 Thayer, S. A., 6, 14, 66, 98, 154, 156, 202, 203, 204
 Theobald, G. W., 151, 153
 Thing, E., 112, 124
 Thomas, M., 209, 242
 Thomopoulou, H., 26, 64
 Thorborg, J. V., 68, 69, 73, 98
 Thorn, G. W., 114, 124, 209, 241, 259, 260, 265, 278, 285

Thorp, R. H., 142, 153
 Tillinger, K.-G., 173, 204
 Tobian, L. Jr., 270, 286
 Tokuyama, I., 54, 64, 74, 97
 Tolksdorf, S., 22, 24, 62
 Tom, J., 161, 203
 Tonnesen, M., 41, 44, 45, 63, 173, 187,
 189, 204
 Törnblom, N., 317, 321
 Towne, L. E., 40, 63, 173, 204
 Trabucco, A., 49, 62
 Trentin, J. J., 193, 203
 Trevan, J. W., 8, 14, 17, 64
 Trehella, P., 118, 120, 123
 Tullar, B. F., 323, 337
 Tuppy, H., 142, 153
 Turner, C. W., 101, 109, 133, 134, 135,
 138, 139, 140
 Turner, H. H., 47, 64
 Turner, R. A., 142, 153
 Twombly, G. H., 79, 98, 304, 319
 Tyler, F. H., 119, 120, 122, 124, 275,
 276, 285
 Tyndale, H. H., 26, 30, 63

U

Ungar, F., 205, 243, 291, 319, 321
 Uotila, U., 102, 109
 Upson, M. Jr., 120, 124
 Uylert, I. E., 128, 129, 132

V

Vallé, J. R., 314, 321
 Van Dyke, H. B., 15, 24, 25, 26, 62, 64,
 141, 143, 144, 145, 146, 152, 153
 Van Gilse, H. A., 35, 64
 Van Wyk, J. J., 246, 263, 284
 Varjabedian, L., 331, 333, 336
 Varney, R. F., 29, 30, 31, 64, 161, 203
 Vartiainen, S., 269, 285
 Vehrs, H., 157, 204
 Veler, C. D., 154, 202
 Venning, E. H., 70, 97, 98, 163, 181, 197,
 198, 202, 204, 208, 213, 221, 224,
 225, 226, 227, 228, 232, 238, 239,
 241, 243, 248, 249, 268, 269, 270,
 280, 282, 285, 286, 292, 298, 303,
 304, 306, 321
 Vermeulen, C., 304, 320
 Vestergaard, P., 292, 321
 Viergiver, E., 214, 241
 Vigdoff, B., 157, 204
 du Vigneaud, V., 142, 152, 153
 Vignos, P. J. Jr., 205, 243
 Vogt, M., 248, 249, 286, 323, 326, 327,
 329, 337

W

Wade, A. P., 293, 320
 Wahlberg, P., 101, 109
 Walker, A. M., 143, 153
 Walker, G., 246, 283
 Wallen-Lawrence, Z., 26, 64
 Walters, W., 300, 321
 Wannan, J. S., 73, 98
 Wanner, H., 276, 285
 Warren, F. L., 292, 295, 304, 307, 318,
 319, 321
 Waring, H., 112, 124
 Warter, J., 306, 321
 Watson, E. J. D., 155, 167, 168, 169, 203,
 204
 Watson, M., 181, 184, 186, 202
 de Watteville, H., 6, 7, 14, 43, 62, 67,
 97, 217, 221, 222, 226, 228, 230,
 231, 232, 241, 243, 273, 284, 298,
 319
 Watts, R. M., 70, 71, 81, 98
 Wener, J., 281, 286
 Werle, E., 151, 153
 Weichselbaum, T. E., 263, 264, 283,
 286
 Weil-Malherbe, H., 325, 328, 329, 337
 Werner, S. C., 298, 321
 Werthessen, N. T., 198, 204
 West, C. D., 213, 242
 West, G. B., 329, 334, 335, 337
 West, H. F., 256, 258, 271, 272, 285
 Westerfeld, W. W., 154, 156, 204
 Westman, A., 70, 97, 165, 173, 202, 204,
 257, 258, 271, 284
 Westphal, U., 205, 209, 214, 241, 243
 Wettstein, A., 205, 242, 251, 261, 280,
 281, 285, 286
 White, A., 99, 109, 110, 124
 White, P., 67, 86, 98, 233, 243
 White, W. E., 26, 62
 Whitehorn, J. C., 327, 337
 Wichmann, R., 104, 106, 108, 109
 Wigzell, F. W., 239, 242
 Wijnans, M., 22, 23, 63
 Wilhelmi, A. E., 125, 132
 Wilkins, L., 301, 302, 321
 Willardson, D. G., 275, 276, 285
 Willebrands, A. F., 339, 340, 341, 342,
 344
 Williams, D. C., 211, 241, 246, 263,
 285
 Williams, P. C., 147, 153, 165
 Williams, R. H., 254, 269, 270, 284
 Wilson, D. W., 65, 66, 97
 Wilson, H., 253, 258, 274, 284
 Wilson, R. B., 74, 98
 Wintersteiner, O., 205, 241
 Winton, S. S., 70, 97
 Wixom, R. L., 252, 253, 286
 Wohlzogen, F. X., 67, 68, 98

Wolf, P., 214, 242
 Wolfe, J. K., 215, 243, 252, 253, 286,
 292, 321
 Wolfson, W. Q., 306, 321
 Wolstenholme, J. T., 193, 203
 Wonder, D. H., 67, 97
 Wood, M. S., 268, 269, 270, 286, 294,
 321
 Wood, T. R., 173, 203
 Woodard, H. Q., 304, 319
 Woodbury, L. A., 7, 14, 113, 114, 115,
 124
 Woods, G. G., 143, 153
 Worcester, S., 268, 269, 270, 286
 Wyatt, T. C., 234, 242
 Wyman, R. S., 194, 204

Y

Young, F. G., 111, 124, 126, 132, 341,
 344
 Young, J. S., 136, 139

Z

Zaffaroni, A., 253, 260, 286
 Zamboni, A., 121, 123
 Zander, J., 211, 212, 219, 243
 Zarrow, M. X., 209, 211, 242, 243
 Zetterström, B., 333, 337
 Zimmermann, W., 291, 321
 Zintel, H., 157, 199, 202
 Zondek, B., 29, 46, 64, 65, 67, 77, 96, 98
 Zygmuntowicz, A. S., 268, 269, 270, 286,
 294, 304, 319, 321

SUBJECT INDEX

Subject Index

A

Abortion,

- oestrogen excretion in, 198
- pregnanediol excretion in, 230

Accuracy, definition of, 2

Acetaldehydogenic steroids, methods of assay of, 255

Acromegaly,

- blood insulin concentration in, 342
- gonadotrophin excretion in, 51
- growth hormone assays in, 130
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 303
- thyrotrophin levels in blood in, 107

ACTH. See under *Adrenocorticotrophin*

ADA. See under *Antidiuretic activity*

Addison's disease,

- ACTH in blood in, 120
- ADS assays in, 149
- androgen excretion in, 317
- blood levels of corticosteroids in, 276
- corticosteroid excretion in, 266, 268, 269, 270, 272, 279, 281
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 303

ADH. See under *Antidiuretic hormone*

Adrenalectomy, effect of, on ACTH

- content of blood, 121
- on catecholamine excretion, 333
- on gonadotrophin excretion, 54
- on oestrogen excretion, 196
- on pregnanediol excretion, 235

Adrenaline, 322

- chemical nature of, 322
- estimation of, by biological methods, 326
 - by chemical methods, 327
- excretion of, after ACTH, 333
 - after adrenalectomy, 333
 - after cortisone, 333
 - after mechoilin, 333
 - after muscular work, 331
 - after surgical operations, 332
 - after vascular reflexes, 331
 - in coronary thrombosis, 334
 - in emotional stress, 333
 - in essential hypertension, 334
 - in hypoglycæmia, 332
 - in normal subjects, 330
 - in phæochromocytoma, 334
 - in postural hypotension, 331
- extraction of, from body fluids, 325

Adrenaline, *continued*

- occurrence of, in adrenal medulla, 323
 - in blood, 323
 - in phæochrome tumours, 335
 - in urine, 323
- separation of, from noradrenaline, 329
- structural formula of, 322

Adrenocortical hyperplasia,

- androgen excretion in, 317
- corticosteroid excretion in, 266, 269
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 299, 302
- oestrogen excretion in, 198
- pregnanediol excretion in, 234

Adrenocortical tumours,

- androgen excretion in, 317
- corticosteroid excretion in, 266, 269
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 299, 302
- oestrogen excretion in, 198
- pregnanediol excretion in, 234

Adrenocortical steroids. See under *Corticosteroids*

Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH). See under *Adrenocorticotrophin*

Adrenocorticotrophin, 110

- assay of, 113
 - in hypophysectomised animals, 113
 - by adrenal ascorbic acid depletion, 113
 - by adrenal maintenance test, 115
 - by adrenal repair test, 115
 - by corticosteroid release, 116
 - in intact animals, 116
 - by adrenal ascorbic acid depletion in rats pre-treated by DCA, 116
 - by corticosteroid production in isolated adrenals, 117
 - by eosinophil depression test, 117
 - by hyaluronidase inhibition test, 117
 - by thymus weight test, 116
 - by ulcer healing test, 117
- chemical nature of, 110
- estimation of, following bilateral adrenalectomy, 121
 - in congenital adrenal hyperplasia, 121
 - in Cushing's syndrome, 121
 - in human pituitary tissue, 122
 - in human placental tissue, 122
 - in normal subjects, 119

- Adrenocorticotrophin**, *continued*
 estimation of, in 'stress' conditions, 121
 in urine, 121
 extraction of, from blood, 118
 by acid-acetone, 118
 by oxycellulose, 119
 international standard for, 112
 number of hormones, 111
 precision of various assay methods for, 118
 relationship of, to intermedin, 111
- Adrenogenital syndrome**,
 definition of, 299
 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 299, 309
- ADS**. See under *Antidiuretic substances*
- Ætiocholanolone** (5 β -androstanolone)
 biological activity of, 290
 excretion of, after castration, 309
 after major surgery, 311
 in adrenogenital syndrome, 309
 in Cushing's syndrome, 309
 in liver disease, 310
 in male hypogonadism, 309
 in normal subjects, 308
 in prostatic carcinoma, 311
 in '3 α -hydroxy fraction,' 288
 structural formula of, 288
- Aldosterone**,
 biological activity of, 250
 estimation of, by biological methods, 250
 by chemical methods, 261
 excretion of, in Addison's disease, 281
 in cardiac failure with œdema, 281
 in cirrhosis of the liver, 281
 in essential hypertension, 281
 in nephrotic syndrome, 281
 in normal non-pregnant subjects, 280
 in normal pregnancy, 282
 in panhypopituitarism, 281
 in pre-eclamptic toxæmia, 282
 in 'primary aldosteronism,' 282
 structural formula of, 245
- Amenorrhœa**,
 gonadotrophin excretion in, 44
 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 305
 œstrogen excretion in, 186
 pregnanediol excretion in, 229
 types of, 186
- Androgens**, 312
 estimation of, in blood in clinical conditions, 317
 excretion of, in normal subjects, 316
 in pathological conditions, 316
 methods of assay of, 313
 in birds, 313
 in mammals, 314
- Androsterone** (5 α -androstanolone),
 biological activity of, 288, 313
 excretion of, after castration, 309
- Androsterone**, *continued*
 excretion of, after major surgery, 311
 in adrenogenital syndrome, 309
 in Cushing's syndrome, 309
 in liver disease, 310
 in male hypogonadism, 309
 in normal subjects, 308
 in panhypopituitarism, 310
 in prostatic carcinoma, 311
 in '3 α -hydroxy fraction,' 288
 structural formula of, 289
- Ankylosing spondylitis**, corticosteroid excretion in, 272
- Anorexia nervosa**,
 corticosteroid excretion in, 268
 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 306
- Anovular menstruation**,
 œstrogen excretion in, 189
 pregnanediol excretion in, 228
- Antidiuretic activity**, 141
 assay of, 142
 in dogs, 145
 in rats, 144
 definition of, 141
- Antidiuretic hormone**, 141. See also under *Antidiuretic activity* (ADA) and *Antidiuretic substances* (ADS)
 assay of, 142
 clinical application of assays of, 147.
 See also under *Antidiuretic substances* (ADS)
 definition of, 141
 extraction of, from body fluids, 146
 international standard for, 142
 relationship of, to oxytocin, 141
 relationship of, to vasopressin, 141
- Antidiuretic substances**, 142. See also under *Antidiuretic activity* (ADA)
 assay of, 142
 clinical application of assays of, 147
 definition of, 141
 estimation of, in Addison's disease, 149
 in congestive cardiac failure, 149
 in liver disease, 148
 in nephrotic syndrome, 149
 in normal non-pregnant subjects, 148
 in normal pregnancy, 150
 in placental extracts, 151
 in pre-eclamptic toxæmia, 151
 extraction of, from body fluids, 146
- Arrhenoblastoma**,
 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 305
- Arterenol**. See under *Noradrenaline*
- Aschheim-Zondek test** for pregnancy, 72

C

Cardiac failure,

- ADS assays in, 149
- aldosterone excretion in, 281

Castration, effect of, on androgen excretion, 317

- on gonadotrophin excretion, 55
- on 17-ketosteroid excretion, 304, 309, 311

Catecholamines. See under *Adrenaline* and *Noradrenaline***Chorionepithelioma,** gonadotrophin excretion in, 79

- oestrogen excretion in, 198

Chorionic gonadotrophin. See under *Gonadotrophin, human chorionic***Chromaffinoma.** See under *Phæochromocytoma***Compound A of Kendall.** See under *11-dehydrocorticosterone***Compound B of Kendall.** See under *Corticosterone***Compound E of Kendall.** See under *Cortisone***Compound F of Kendall.** See under *Cortisol***Congenital adrenal hyperplasia,**

- ACTH in blood in, 121
- corticosteroid excretion in, 266
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 301

Coronary thrombosis,

- catecholamine excretion in, 334

Cortexone. See under *Deoxycorticosterone***Corticosteroids,** 244. See also under individual compounds and groups of compounds

- application of assay methods for, to clinical conditions, 266
- definition of, 244
- estimation of, in blood, 263
- in urine by biological methods, 247
- cold protection test, 249
- electrolyte excretion tests, 250
- glycogen deposition test, 248
- mouse eosinophil test, 249
- by chemical methods, 251
- hydrolysis of, 261

Corticosterone in human blood, 247

- secretion of, by human adrenal cortex, 246
- structural formula of, 245

Corticotrophin. See under *Adrenocorticotrophin***Cortisol,** biological activity of, 248, 249, 250

- in human blood, 247
- secretion of, by human adrenal cortex, 246
- structural formula of, 245

- Cortisone,** biological activity of, 248, 249, 250
- in human blood, 246
- structural formula of, 245

Cushing's syndrome, ACTH in blood in, 121

- blood levels of corticosteroids in, 276
- corticosteroid excretion in, 266, 268, 269, 270, 272, 279
- definition of, 299
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 299, 309

D

11-dehydrocorticosterone, 245**Dehydroepiandrosterone,** biological activity of, 288

- blood concentration of, in Cushing's syndrome, 312
- in congenital adrenal hyperplasia, 312
- excretion of, after major surgery, 311
- in liver disease, 310
- methods for estimation of, in blood, 312
- in 3 β -hydroxy fraction, 288, 293, 302
- structural formula of, 289

Deoxycorticosterone, biological activity of, 250

- structural formula of, 245

'21-deoxyketols,' method of assay of, 258

- estimation of, in clinical conditions, 274

Design of bio-assays, 10**Diabetes mellitus,** blood insulin concentration in, 342

- relationship of growth hormone to, 126

Diabetic pregnancy,

- effect of stilboestrol on gonadotrophin excretion in, 88
- gonadotrophin levels in, 86
- growth hormone assays in, 131
- oestrogen excretion in, 197
- pregnanediol excretion in, 233

Diabetogenic hormone, relationship of, to growth hormone, 125**17 : 21-dihydroxy-20-keto-corticosteroids,**

- estimation of, after surgical operations, 276
- in disease states, 276, 279
- in normal non-pregnant subjects, 275, 278
- in normal pregnancy, 276
- methods of assay of, in blood, 264
- methods of assay of, in urine, 259

Dwarfism, 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 303**Dysfunctional uterine hæmorrhage,** 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 305

- oestrogen excretion in, 188

Dysgerminoma, gonadotrophin excretion in, 48

Dysmenorrhœa, œstrogen excretion in, 190

E

Electrocortin. See under *Aldosterone*

Endometriosis, œstrogen excretion in, 196

Epiandrosterone, 288, 289

Epinephrine. See under *Adrenaline*

16-epiœstriol. See also under *Estrogens*
biological activity of, 155, 168
isolation of, 155

Essential hypertension, catecholamine excretion in, 334

corticosteroid excretion in, 269, 281

17-ketosteroid excretion in, 306

Eunuchoidism, androgen excretion in, 317

corticosteroid excretion in, 269

gonadotrophin excretion in, 48

17-ketosteroid excretion in, 304

Exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia,
thyrotrophin level in blood in, 108

Exophthalmos-producing substance, 99

F

Fibromyoma of the uterus, œstrogen excretion in, 193

Fœtal death, gonadotrophin excretion in, 80

Follicle-stimulating hormone. See also under *Gonadotrophins*, *pituitary*
action of, on ovary, HCG and, 23
assay of, specific methods for, 22
human urinary, in pregnancy, 37
separation of, from urinary ICSH, 37
'unit' of, 8

Formaldehydogenic steroids,
estimation of, in clinical conditions, 269
methods of assay of, 254

Friedman test for pregnancy, 72

FSH. See under *Follicle-stimulating hormone*

G

Galactin. See under *Prolactin*

Galli-Mainini test for pregnancy, 72

Genital carcinoma in women,
œstrogen excretion in, 193

Gigantism,
blood insulin concentration in, 342
growth hormone assays in, 130
17-ketosteroid excretion in, 303

β -glucuronidase, hydrolysis of corticosteroids by, 262

Glycogenic corticosteroids,

methods of assay of, 248

estimation of, in clinical conditions, 268

Gonadotrophin, *human chorionic* (HCG), 65

assay of, 66

by corpora lutea test in rats, 66, 80, 86, 88

by expulsion of spermatozoa in amphibia, 10, 68

by ovarian hyperœmia in rats, 6, 10, 67, 72, 91, 96

by prostatic weight in rats, 71, 73, 74, 81, 87, 91, 96

by seminal vesicle weight in rats, 71, 74

by uterine weight in rats, 69, 73, 74

by vaginal smears in rats, 70, 73

by weight of total accessory reproductive organs in rats, 71

assays of, in human serum, 74

chemical nature of, 65

estimation of, in chorionepithelioma of the testis, 79

in chorionepithelioma of the uterus, 79

in diabetic pregnancy, 86

in fœtal death, 80

in hydatidiform mole, 77

in hyperemesis gravidarum, 84

in normal pregnancy, 74

in pre-eclamptic toxœmia, 80

extraction of, from urine, 73
international standard for, 66

placental concentration of, in normal and abnormal pregnancy, 92

precision of various assay methods for, 67, 70

renal clearance of, in normal and abnormal pregnancy, 91

Gonadotrophin, *human menopausal* (HMG), as standard preparation, 8, 17, 39

separation of, from HCG, 35

Gonadotrophins, *pituitary*, 15

assay of, 16

by expulsion of spermatozoa in *Xenopus levis*, 29

by follicular growth, 22

by increase in activity of prostatic alkaline phosphatase, 25

by interstitial cell repair, 24

by mouse uterus test, 27

by ovarian hyperœmia test, 28

by ovarian weight increase, 23

by prostatic weight increase, 24

by seminal vesicle weight increase, 25

by testicular weight increase, 23

Gonadotrophins, pituitary, continued

- chemical estimation of, 38
- chemical nature of, 15
- effect of ACTH on excretion of, 54
- effect of adrenalectomy on excretion of, 54
- effect of androgens on excretion of, 54
- effect of castration on excretion of, 55
- effect of cortisone on excretion of, 54
- effect of hypophysectomy on excretion of, 56
- effect of oestrogens on excretion of, 52
- effect of ovarian irradiation on excretion of, 56
- effect of thyroid hormone on excretion of, 55
- excretion of, in acromegaly, 51
 - in amenorrhœa, 44
 - in children, 40
 - in dysmenorrhœa, 45
 - in eunuchoidism, 48
 - in Klinefelter's syndrome, 49
 - in male climacteric, 50
 - in mammary carcinoma, 51
 - in menopausal syndrome, 45
 - in menstrual disorders, 43
 - in metropathia hæmorrhagica, 44
 - in normal men, 42
 - in normally menstruating women, 41
 - in ovarian deficiency, 47
 - in ovarian tumours, 48
 - in panhypopituitarism, 51
 - in post-menopausal women, 42
 - in testicular deficiency, 48
 - in testicular tumours, 50
 - in Turner's syndrome, 47
- extraction of, from urine, 29
 - by acetone precipitation, 30
 - by alcohol precipitation, 29
 - by aluminium hydroxide adsorption, 34
 - by benzoic acid adsorption, 31
 - by kaolin-acetone method, 17, 31, 58, 60
 - by permutit adsorption, 35
 - by tannic acid precipitation, 30
 - by ultrafiltration, 35
- non-specific tests for, 27
- parallel assays of, 56
- quantitative determination of, in urine, 39
- separation of, from HCG by tricalcium phosphate, 35
- relationship of, to menopausal symptoms, 46

Gout, 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 306

Granulosa cell tumour,

- gonadotrophin excretion in, 48
- oestrogen excretion in, 192

Growth hormone, 125

- assay of, 126
 - by dwarf mice weight test, 128
 - by hypophysectomised rat weight test, 127
 - by 'plateaued' rat weight test, 127
 - by tail length test, 128
 - by tibial test, 128
- chemical nature of, 125
- clinical application of assay of, 130
- estimation of, in acromegaly, 130
 - in diabetic pregnancy, 131
 - in gigantism, 130
 - in malignant disease, 131
 - in retroplacental blood, 130
- extraction of, from blood, 130
- from urine, 130
- international standard preparation for, 126
- possible relationship to carcinogenesis, 131
- precision of various assay methods for, 129
- relationship of, to diabetogenic hormone, 125

H

HCG. See under *Gonadotrophin, human chorionic*

Hirsutism,

- corticosteroid excretion in, 269
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 306

HMG. See under *Gonadotrophin, human menopausal*

Hogben test for pregnancy, 72

Hydatidiform mole,

- gonadotrophin excretion in, 77
- oestrogen excretion in, 198

Hydrocortisone. See under *Cortisol*

11 β -hydroxyætiocolanalone, 289, 310, 311

17-hydroxy-20-keto-21-deoxy-steroids. See under *21-deoxyketols*

16 α -hydroxyæstrone. See also under *Æstrogens*

- biological activity of, 155, 169
- isolation of, 155

17 α -hydroxy-pregnanolone, 258, 274

17-hydroxysteroids. See under *Total 17-hydroxysteroids*

Hyperemesis gravidarum,

- gonadotrophin levels in, 84

Hyperinsulinism, blood insulin concentration in, 342

Hypoglycæmia, catecholamine excretion in, 332

Hypophysectomy,

- effect of, on gonadotrophin excretion, 56
- on prolactin excretion, 139
- on oestrogen excretion, 196

I

ICSH. See under *Interstitial cell-stimulating hormone*

Index of discrimination, 21

Index of precision (λ), 12, 27, 40, 67, 70, 118, 129, 135, 249, 250, 314

Infective hepatitis, ADS assays in, 149

Insulin, 338

- blood estimations of, in acromegaly, 342
- in diabetes mellitus, 342
- in gigantism, 342
- in hyperinsulinism, 342
- in normal subjects, 341
- in panhypopituitarism, 342
- chemical nature of, 338
- international standard for, 338
- methods of assay of, 339
 - in 'ADH' rats, 340
 - in 'ADHA' rats, 340
 - by rat diaphragm test, 340

Intermedin, relationship of, to ACTH,

111

Interstitial cell-stimulating hormone. See also under *Gonadotrophins, pituitary*

- action of, on prostate, prolactin and, 25
- assay of, in normal subjects, 41
 - specific methods for, 24
- separation of, from urinary FSH, 37

Interstitial cell tumour of testis,

- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 304

'Irregular shedding of the endometrium,' pregnanediol excretion in, 229

K

17-ketogenic steroids, estimation of,

- after surgical operations, 272
- as a test of adrenocortical function, 272
- in ankylosing spondylitis, 272
- in 'basal hypo-adrenal corticalism,' 273
- in endocrine diseases, 272
- in normal non-pregnant subjects, 271
- in normal pregnancy, 272
- in pre-eclamptic toxæmia, 272
- in rheumatoid arthritis, 272
- method of assay of, 256

17-ketosteroids. See also under *individual compounds*

- biological activity of, 288

17-ketosteroids, *continued*

- estimation of, in urine, 290
 - by colorimetric methods, 291
 - by micro methods, 292
 - by polarographic methods, 292
- excretion of, after castration, 304, 309
 - after major surgery, 307, 311
 - after oöphorectomy, 305
 - in acromegaly, 303
 - in Addison's disease, 303
 - in adrenocortical hyperplasia, 300, 302
 - in adrenocortical tumour, 299, 302
 - in amenorrhœa, 305
 - in anorexia nervosa, 306
 - in arrhenoblastoma, 305
 - in children, 299
 - in congenital adrenal hyperplasia, 301
 - in Cushing's syndrome, 300
 - in dysfunctional uterine hæmorrhage, 305
 - in eunuchoidism, 304
 - in gout, 306
 - in hirsutism, 306
 - in hypertension, 306
 - in interstitial cell tumour of testis, 304
 - in Klinefelter's syndrome, 304
 - in liver disease, 306, 310
 - in macrogenitosomia præcox, 301
 - in malignant disease, 305, 310
 - in morphine addiction, 307
 - in myxœdema, 303
 - in normal men, 295
 - in normal non-pregnant women, 297
 - in normal pregnancy, 298
 - in panhypopituitarism, 303, 310
 - in pituitary dwarfism, 303
 - in pituitary gigantism, 303
 - in prostatic carcinoma, 311
 - in rheumatoid arthritis, 306, 310
 - in seminoma of the testis, 304
 - in Stein-Leventhal syndrome, 305, 307
 - in 'stress' conditions, 307
 - in teratoma, 304
 - in thyrotoxicosis, 304
 - in Turner's syndrome, 305
- fractionation of, 293
 - by chromatography, 294
 - by digitonin, 293
 - by Girard's reagent, 293
- isolation of, 287
- mode of excretion of, in urine, 290
- sources of, in body, 290
- structural formulæ of, 289

Klinefelter's syndrome,

- clinical features of, 49
- gonadotrophin excretion in, 49
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 304

Kober reaction for oestrogens, 4, 163, 164, 165, 167

Kuppersman test for pregnancy, 72

L

Labour, oestrogen excretion in, 181
pregnanediol excretion in, 224

Lactation,

oestrogen excretion in, 181
prolactin excretion in, 138

Lactogenic hormone. See under *Prolactin*

Liver disease,

ADS assays in, 148
17-ketosteroid excretion in, 306, 310
oestrogen excretion in, 200
pregnanediol excretion in, 239

'Luteal maximum,' 174

Luteinising hormone (LH). See under *Interstitial cell-stimulating hormone (ICSH)*

Luteotrophin, 15, 133
relationship of, to prolactin, 134

M

Macrogenitosomia præcox,
17-ketosteroid excretion in, 301

Male climacteric,

gonadotrophin excretion in, 50

Malignant disease,

growth hormone assays in, 131
17-ketosteroid excretion in, 305, 310

Mammary carcinoma,

gonadotrophin excretion in, 51
oestrogen excretion in, 194
prolactin excretion in, 138

'Mammogen' theory, 133

Mammothrophin. See under *Prolactin*

Melanophore-expanding hormone,
relationship of, to ACTH, 111

Menopausal syndrome,

gonadotrophin excretion in, 45
oestrogen excretion in, 191

Menstrual cycle,

corticosteroid excretion in, 273
gonadotrophin excretion in, 41
17-ketosteroid excretion in, 298
oestrogen excretion in, 173
pregnanediol excretion in, 221

Metropathia hæmorrhagica,

gonadotrophin excretion in, 44
oestrogen excretion in, 188

Morphine addiction, effect of, on
17-ketosteroid excretion, 307

Myxœdema, corticosteroid excretion in,
269, 270

gonadotrophin excretion in, 55
17-ketosteroid excretion in, 303
thyrotrophin level in blood in, 108

N

Nephrotic syndrome, ADS assays in,
149

aldosterone excretion in, 281

Noradrenaline,

chemical nature of, 322

estimation of, by biological methods,
326

by chemical methods, 327

excretion of, after ACTH, 333

after adrenalectomy, 333

after cortisone, 333

after mecholol, 333

after muscular work, 331

after surgical operations, 332

after vascular reflexes, 331

in coronary thrombosis, 334

in emotional stress, 333

in essential hypertension, 334

in hypoglycæmia, 332

in normal subjects, 330

in phæochromocytoma, 334

in postural hypotension, 331

extraction of, from body fluids, 325

occurrence of, in adrenal medulla, 323

in blood, 323

in phæochrome tumours, 335

in urine, 323

separation of, from adrenaline, 329

structural formula of, 322

Norepinephrine. See under *Noradrenaline*

Normal pregnancy,

blood levels of corticosteroids in, 276,
277, 278

corticosteroid excretion in, 268, 269,

270, 272, 273, 275, 282

gonadotrophin levels in, 74

17-ketosteroid excretion in, 298

oestrogen excretion in, 181

pregnanediol excretion in, 224

pregnanolone excretion in, 206

O

Œstradiol-17β. See also under *Œstrogens*

biological activity of, 154, 161

isolation of, 154, 156, 157

international standard for, 159

secretion of, by human ovary, 171, 179,

180

Œstriol. See also under *Œstrogens*

biological activity of, 155, 160, 161

isolation of, 154, 157

Œstrogens, 154. See also under
individual compounds

adrenal, 157

biological activity of, 155, 159, 168, 169

clinical significance of urinary estimations of, 169

Œstrogens, continued

- estimation of, by biological methods, 159
- by chemical methods, depending on colorimetry, 163
- by chemical methods, depending on fluorimetry, 166
- by method of Bauld, 165
- by method of Brown, 164
- by uterine weight test, 161
- by vaginal smear test, 160
- excretion of, in abortion, 198
 - in adrenocortical hyperplasia, 198
 - in adrenocortical tumours, 198
 - in amenorrhœa, 186
 - in anovular menstruation, 189
 - in Brenner tumour, 193
 - in carcinoma of the body of the uterus, 194
 - in carcinoma of the cervix, 194
 - in children, 173
 - in chorionepithelioma of the ovary, 193
 - in chorionepithelioma of the testis, 198
 - in chorionepithelioma of the uterus, 198
 - in diabetic pregnancy, 197
 - in dysmenorrhœa, 190
 - in endometriosis, 196
 - in fibroma of the ovary, 193
 - in fibromyoma of the uterus, 193
 - in granulosa cell tumour of the ovary, 192
 - in hydatidiform mole, 198
 - in labour, 181
 - in lactation, 181
 - in Leydig cell tumours, 198
 - in liver disease, 200
 - in mammary carcinoma, 195, 196
 - in menopausal syndrome, 191
 - in menopausal women, 180
 - in metropathia hemorrhagica, 188
 - in normal men, 180
 - in normally menstruating women, 173
 - in normal pregnancy, 181, 182
 - in post-menopausal women, 180
 - in pre-eclamptic toxæmia, 197
 - in pre-menstrual tension, 190
 - in prostatic carcinoma, 199
 - in puerperium, 181
 - in seminoma of the testis, 198
 - in 'senile' vaginitis, 197
 - in thecoma, 193
- international standard preparations for, 159
- isolation of, 154, 155
- metabolism of, 170, 171, 172
- ovarian, 156, 178
- placental, 157

Œstrogens, continued

- relationship of 'free' to 'combined' in pregnancy urine, 184
- relationship of, to genital carcinoma in women, 193, 194
- relationship of, to mammary carcinoma, 194
- sources of, in body, 156
- structural formulæ of, 155
- testicular, 157
- Œstrone.** See also under *Œstrogens*
 - biological activity of, 154, 160, 161
 - international standard for, 159
 - isolation of, 154, 156, 157
 - secretion of, by human ovary, 171, 179, 180
- Oöphorectomy,**
 - effect of, on gonadotrophin excretion, 55
 - on 17-ketosteroid excretion, 305
 - on Œstrogen excretion, 196
- Ovarian agenesis.** See under *Turner's syndrome*
- Ovarian irradiation,** effect of, on gonadotrophin excretion, 56
- Ovarian tumours,**
 - corticosteroid excretion in, 266
 - gonadotrophin excretion in, 48
 - Œstrogen excretion in, 191
- 'Ovulation peak,'** 174
- Oxytocin,** 141
 - chemical nature of, 142
 - relationship of, to ADH, 141

P**Panhypopituitarism,**

- blood insulin concentration in, 342
- corticosteroid excretion in, 267, 268, 269, 270, 272, 281
- gonadotrophin excretion in, 51
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 303, 310
- thyrotrophin level in blood in, 108

Paper chromatographic methods

- for corticosteroid assays, 260

Parathyroid hormone, 1, 8**Persistent corpus luteum,**

- pregnenediol excretion in, 229

Phæochromocytoma, excretion of

- catecholamines in, 334

Pituitary tissue, ACTH estimations in,

122

Placental extracts, ACTH estimations

in, 122

ADS assays in, 151

HCG estimations in, 92

Portal cirrhosis, aldosterone excretion

in, 281

Porter-Silber chromogens, 259, 275

Porter-Silber reaction for corticosteroids, 4, 259, 264

Practicability of hormone assays, 5

Precision, definition of, 3

Pre-eclamptic toxæmia,
 ADS assays in, 151
 corticosteroid excretion in, 269, 270, 272, 282
 gonadotrophin levels in, 80
 œstrogen excretion in, 197
 pregnanediol excretion in, 232

Pregnancy, hormone excretion in. See under *Normal pregnancy*, *Pre-eclamptic toxæmia*, etc.

Pregnancy diagnosis tests, 71

Pregnanediol,
 (5β -pregnane- 3α : 20α -diol)
 adrenal, 209
 assay of, in blood, 212
 assay of, in urine, 213
 as a test of adrenocortical function, 234
 in 'conjugated' form, 213
 in 'free' form, 215
 chromatographic methods, 217
 precipitation methods, 215
 in relation to pregnancy diagnosis, 227
 clinical significance of urinary estimations of, 218
 excretion of, after ACTH, 235
 after adrenalectomy, 235
 after progesterone administration, 236
 after stilbœstrol, 239
 in abortion, 230
 in adrenal disease, 234
 in amenorrhœa, 229
 in anovular menstruation, 228
 in children, 221
 in diabetic pregnancy, 233, 239, 240
 in 'irregular shedding of the endometrium', 229
 in labour, 224
 in liver disease, 239
 in normally menstruating women, 221
 in normal men, 224
 in normal pregnancy, 224
 in persistent corpus luteum, 229
 in post-menopausal women, 224
 in pre-eclamptic toxæmia, 232
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 238
 in Stein-Leventhal syndrome, 230
 mode of excretion of, 208
 ovarian, 208
 structural formula of, 207

Pregnanediones, 206

Pregnanetriol (5β -pregnane- 3α : 17α : 20α -triol), 234, 255

Pregnanolone (5β -pregnan- 3α -ol-20-one), excretion of, in normal pregnancy, 206
 structural formula of, 207

Pre-menstrual tension, œstrogen excretion in, 190

'Primary aldosteronism', aldosterone excretion in, 282

Progesterone, 205
 assay of, by biological methods, 210
 by chemical methods, 211
 effect of liver slices on metabolism of, 220
 estimation of, in blood, 210
 in normal menstrual cycle, 212
 in normal pregnancy, 212
 in urine, 205
 isolation of, from adrenal cortex, 209
 from ovary, 205
 from placenta, 209
 sources of, in body, 208
 structural formula of, 207

Progesterone 'priming', 237

Prolactin, 133
 assay of, 134
 by crop weight method in pigeons, 135
 by local intradermal method in pigeons, 136
 by methods in mice, 136
 by methods in rabbits, 137
 by methods in rats, 136
 by 'minimum stimulation' method in pigeons, 135
 chemical nature of, 133
 clinical application of assays of, 138
 excretion of, in normal subjects, 138
 excretion of, in mammary carcinoma, 138
 extraction of, from body fluids, 137
 international standard for, 134
 'mammogen' theory and, 133
 relationship of, to luteotrophin, 134

Prostatic carcinoma,
 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 311
 œstrogen excretion in, 199

R

Reducing steroids,
 estimation of, in clinical conditions, 268
 methods of assay of, 252

Reliability, definition of, 2

'Reliability criteria' for hormone assays, 2
 accuracy, 2
 precision, 3
 sensitivity, 5
 specificity, 4

Rheumatic fever, corticosteroid excretion in, 269, 279

Rheumatoid arthritis,

- corticosteroid excretion in, 272, 274
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 306, 310
- pregnenediol excretion in, 238

S

Sayers test for assay of ACTH, 7, 113, 119

Sclerosing tubular degeneration. See under *Klinefelter's syndrome*

Seminoma of testis, gonadotrophin excretion in, 50

17-ketosteroid excretion in, 304

'Senile' vaginitis, oestrogen excretion in, 197

Sensitivity, definition of, 5

Simmonds' disease. See under *Panhypopituitarism*

Somatotrophic hormone. See under *Growth hormone*

Somatotrophin. See under *Growth hormone*

Specificity, definition of, 4

Standard preparations, use of, in bio-assays, 8, 17, 66, 100, 112, 134, 159, 313

Stein-Leventhal syndrome,

- clinical features of, 230
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 305
- pregnenediol excretion in, 230

Strain of animal, importance of, in bio-assays, 6

Structural formulæ,

- of catecholamines, 322
- of corticosteroids, 245
- of 17-ketosteroids, 289
- of oestrogens, 155
- of progesterone and its metabolites, 207

Sulphatases, hydrolysis of corticosteroids by, 262

Surgery, effect of, on catecholamine excretion, 332

on 17-ketosteroid excretion, 307

T

Teratoma of testis, 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 304

Testicular tumours,

- corticosteroid excretion in, 266
- gonadotrophin excretion in, 50, 79
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 304
- oestrogen excretion in, 198

Thyroid hormones, 1

- effect of, on gonadotrophin excretion, 55
- on 17-ketosteroid excretion, 303

Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)
See under *Thyrotrophin*

Thyrototoxicosis,

- corticosteroid excretion in, 270
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 304
- thyrotrophin levels in blood in, 108

Thyrotrophic hormone. See under *Thyrotrophin*

Thyrotrophin, 99

- assay of, 100
- in chicks, 101
- by acinar cell height, 101
- by iodine content of thyroid, 101
- by phosphorus uptake of thyroid, 102
- by thyroid weight, 101
- in guinea-pigs, 102
- by acinar cell height, 102
- by intracellular colloid droplets, 102
- by percentage of epithelium, 102
- by radio-active iodine discharge from thyroid, 102

in mice, 103

in rats, 103

in tadpoles, 103

chemical nature of, 99

concentration of, in blood, 107

in acromegaly, 107

in exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia, 108

in myxœdema, 108

in normal subjects, 107

in panhypopituitarism, 108

in thyrototoxicosis, 108

excretion of, in urine, 106

extraction of, from blood, 106

from urine, 105

international standard for, 100

relationship of, to exophthalmos-producing substance (EPS), 99

Total 17-hydroxysteroids,

- estimation of, in clinical conditions, 273
- method of assay of, 257

TSH. See under *Thyrotrophin*

Turner's syndrome,

- clinical features of, 47
- corticosteroid excretion in, 269
- gonadotrophin excretion in, 47
- 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 305

Types of bio-assay, 9

graded effects, 10

quantal effects, 10

V

Vasopressin, 141

chemical nature of, 142

relationship of, to ADH, 141

Z

Zimmermann reaction for 17-ketosteroids, 291, 292, 312